



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



W. H. HIPPLE & SON  
SALEM

Educ T 918.41.148



3 2044 097 067 169

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

*Sh...*

1440

24  
260  
1440

58/4  
2218

Γροὺς σε καὶ τὸν. know thyself

Nil desperandi: don't give up the ship

Rebourned Sept 13<sup>th</sup> 1848

Sept 14<sup>th</sup> 1848

W P Lee William P Lee  
Salem

Salem  
Mass

Francis H. Lee No 14 Chestnut

Mass

Deligentia Plurimum Valet  
hoc

Præcipue et Sempus Adhibenda

Uti sed non abuti  
to use but not abuse

W P Lee



363

6

~~1000~~

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

*William P. Lee*

*Salem*

A  
 $\frac{1}{2}$

# GRAMMAR

OF THE

*Chenut H. H.*

# LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

E. A. ANDREWS

AND

S. STODDARD.

Eighth Edition.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

47 Washington Street.

For sale by the Booksellers in New York, Philadelphia,  
Baltimore, and other Cities.

1841.

Edw T 918.41.148  
✓

LIBRARY

OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

JANUARY 26, 1924

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1836,  
By CROCKER AND BREWSTER,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

---

STEREOTYPED AT THE  
BOSTON TYPE AND STEREOTYPE FOUNDRY.

William Peck

September 14<sup>th</sup> 1845

PREFACE.

W. PECK

THE Grammar here presented to the public originated in a design, formed several years since, of preparing a new edition of Adam's Latin Grammar, with such additions and corrections as the existing state of classical learning plainly demanded. We had not proceeded far in the execution of this purpose, before we were impressed with the conviction, which our subsequent researches continually confirmed, that the defects in that manual were so numerous, and of so fundamental a character, that they could not be removed without a radical change in the plan of the work.

Since the first publication of that Grammar, rapid advances have been made in the science of philology, both in Great Britain and upon the continent of Europe. In the mean time, no corresponding change has been made in that work, and, after the lapse of half a century, it still continues, in its original form, to occupy its place in most of the public and private schools in this country. For this continuance of public favor it has been indebted, partly to a greater fulness of detail than was found in the small grammars which it has superseded, partly to the reluctance so commonly felt to lay aside a manual with which all are familiar; but, principally, to the acknowledged fact, that the grammars which have been proposed as substitutes, not excepting even those translated from the German, though often replete with philosophical views of the highest interest, have still been destitute of many of the essential requisites of a complete introduction to the Latin language.

Instead, therefore, of prosecuting our original purpose, we at length determined to mould our materials into a form corre-

sponding with the advanced state of Latin and Greek philology. With this view, we have devoted much time to a careful examination of such works as promised to afford us the most material assistance. From every source, to which we could gain access, we have drawn whatever principles appeared to us most important. These we have sometimes expressed in the words of the author from whom they were derived ; but, in general, we have preferred to exhibit them in our own language. The whole, with the exception of three or four pages only, has been sent to the compositor in manuscript.

The limits of a preface will allow us to notice but a few of the more prominent peculiarities of the following work.

To insure a correct and uniform pronunciation of the Latin language, our experience had satisfied us, that rules more copious and exact than any now in use were greatly needed. In presenting the rules of orthoëpy contained in this Grammar, it is not our object to introduce innovation, but to produce uniformity. This we have endeavored to effect by exhibiting, in as clear a light as possible, the principles of pronunciation adopted in the schools and universities of England, and in the principal colleges of this country. If these rules are regarded, the student can seldom be at a loss respecting the pronunciation of any Latin word.

As an incorrect pronunciation may generally be referred to the errors into which the student is permitted to fall while learning the paradigms of the grammar, we have endeavored to prevent the possibility of mistake in these, by dividing the words according to their pronunciation, and marking the accented syllable. If the instructor will see that the words are at first pronounced as they are set down in the paradigms, he will not afterwards be compelled to submit to the mortifying labor of correcting bad habits, when they have become nearly inveterate. Wherever a Latin word is introduced, its quantity is carefully marked, except in those cases in which it may be determined by the general rules in the thirteenth section. As the paradigms are divided and accented, it may not, in general, be expe-

dient for the student to learn the rules of pronunciation at his entrance upon the study of the Grammar. It will be sufficient for him, at first, to understand the principles of accentuation in the fourteenth and fifteenth sections. The remaining rules he can gradually acquire as he proceeds in his study of the language.

The materials for the subsequent departments of the Grammar have been drawn from various sources, most of which need not be particularly specified. It is proper, however, that, in this place, we should, once for all, acknowledge our obligations to the Grammars of Scheller, Zumpt, and Grant, and to the Dictionaries of Gesner and Facciolatus.

The paradigms of Adam's Grammar, as being generally known, have been retained, excepting a few, which were liable to valid objections. *Penna* was rejected, because, in the sense assigned to it of a *pen*, it is totally destitute of classical authority. Instead of this, *musa*, which is found in the older grammars, has been restored. In the third declension, several additional examples have been introduced.

Under adjectives, the different kinds of comparison, and the mode of forming each, have been explained. The terminations of the comparative and superlative are referred, like every other species of inflection, to the root of the word.

In treating of the pronouns, we have aimed so to arrange the several classes, as to exhibit their peculiar characteristics in a clear and intelligible manner.

The compounds of *sum* are given in connection with that verb. In the second conjugation, *monéo* has been substituted for *doceo*, as the latter is irregular in its third root. In the third conjugation, also, *rego* has been taken instead of *lego*, as the latter is irregular in its second root, and, from its peculiar signification, cannot properly be used in the first and second persons of the passive voice.

In every conjugation except the first, the active and passive voices have been so arranged as to show the relation of their corresponding tenses.

The derivation of the several parts of the verb from the root is exhibited in a peculiar manner, and such as we have found in practice to render the varieties of termination, both in regular and irregular verbs, peculiarly easy to be retained in memory. Every part of the verb is shown to be naturally derived, either immediately or mediately, from its primary root. The mode of forming the secondary roots, and the terminations to be added to them and to the primary root respectively, in order to form the various tenses, are fully exhibited.

In each conjugation, those verbs whose second and third roots are either irregular or wanting, are arranged alphabetically, in order to render a reference to them as easy as possible.

In constructing the tables of verbs, and occasionally in other parts of etymology, we have derived essential aid from Hickie's Grammar, and we trust that the information resulting from his researches, in relation to the parts of verbs in actual use, will be esteemed not only curious but important. To a considerable extent, we have verified his statements by our own investigations; in consequence of which, however, some changes have been made in the parts of certain verbs as exhibited by him.

The rules of syntax contained in this work result directly from the analysis of propositions, and of compound sentences; and for this reason the student should make himself perfectly familiar with the sections relating to *subject* and *predicate*, and should be able readily to analyze sentences, whether simple or compound, and to explain their structure and connection. For this purpose, it is generally expedient to begin with simple English sentences, and to proceed gradually to such as are more complex. When in some degree familiar with these, he will be able to enter upon the analysis of Latin sentences. This exercise should always precede the more minute and subsidiary labor of parsing. If the latter be conducted, as it often is, independently of previous analysis, the principal advantage to be derived from the study of language, as an intellectual exercise, will inevitably be lost. The practice which we would respectfully recommend is that which we have presented at the close of

**Syntax under the head "Analysis."** When language is studied in this way, it ceases to be a tiresome and mechanical employment, and not only affords one of the most perfect exercises of the intellectual faculties, but, in a short time, becomes a most agreeable recreation.

In the syntax of this Grammar, it is hoped that nothing essential which is contained in larger grammars, has been omitted. Our object has been in this, as in other parts of the work, to unite the comprehensive views and philosophical arrangement of the German philologists with the fulness and minuteness of the English grammarians. In no German grammar that we have seen, is the language well adapted to the capacity of the younger classes of students, or such as to be conveniently quoted in the recitation-room. These defects we have endeavored to remedy, by expressing the rules of syntax in as simple and precise language as possible. In the arrangement of the syntax, we have followed the order of the various cases and moods, so that whatever relates to each subject will be found under its appropriate head, and the connection of different subjects is pointed out by references from one part to another. In the distribution of the subordinate parts, we have endeavored to exhibit in the clearest manner their mutual relation and dependence.

The sections relating to the use of moods have received particular attention, as it is in this part, perhaps, more than in any other, that the common grammars are deficient. Upon this subject, in addition to the sources before enumerated, we have derived important aid from Carson's treatise on the relative, and from Crombie's *Gymnasium*.

The foundation of the prosody which is here presented, is to be found in the more extended treatises of Carey and Grant, and in that contained in Rees's *Cyclopædiæ*. From various other sources, also, occasional assistance has been derived; but in this, as in every other part of the Grammar, we have given to the materials such a form as seemed best adapted to our purpose.

Extended discussions of grammatical principles we have



every where omitted, as foreign to the design of our work, but have endeavored to present the results of such discussions in the manner most likely to serve the practical purposes of the student.

A prominent object in the composition of this Grammar, and one which we have endeavored to keep constantly before our minds, was the introduction of greater precision in rules and definitions, than is usually to be found in works of this kind. To this feature of our work we would respectfully invite the reader's attention. It will be found, if we mistake not, that, in the language of many of the grammars in common use, there is such inaccuracy, as well as indefiniteness, that many parts, if taken independently of examples, and of the explanations of the teacher, would be wholly unintelligible. This is especially the case in the rules of syntax. Take, for example, the common rule, "A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person." Whether the nominative intended is that which, in construction, precedes, or that which follows, the verb, or in other words, whether it is the subject-nominative, or the predicate-nominative, is left undetermined.

So in the rule, "One substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the genitive," there is no intimation that the two substantives have any relation whatever to each other; it is not even required that they shall stand in the same proposition. The only condition is, that they shall signify different things. Any one substantive, therefore, governs any other substantive in the genitive, whenever and however used, and, in its turn, is governed in like manner by that other, provided they signify different things.

In like manner the rule, "One verb governs another in the infinitive," contains no limitation or restriction of any kind. The least that the student can be expected to infer from it is, that any verb may, in certain circumstances, govern an infinitive; and this inference we know has actually been made by some respectable teachers. One who has formed such a conclusion may well be surprised to find that the number of

verbs followed by the infinitive without a subject-accusative, is very small, and that no inconsiderable portion of the verbs of the language cannot, under any circumstances whatever, govern an infinitive, either with or without such accusative.

Rules of this kind appear to have been intended not to lead the student to a knowledge of the structure of the language, but to be repeated by him after the construction has been fully explained by his teacher. Of themselves, therefore, they may be said to teach nothing. Similar remarks might be made respecting a very large proportion of the common rules of syntax, as will be obvious to any one who will take the trouble of subjecting them to a rigid scrutiny. As the object of syntax is to exhibit the relations of words and propositions, no rule can be considered as otherwise than imperfect, which leaves the nature and even the existence of those relations wholly indeterminate. An active verb, for example, may, in general, be followed by at least three different cases, in order to express what are sometimes called its immediate and its remote objects, and also some attendant circumstance of time, place, instrument, &c. To say, then, that "A verb signifying actively governs the accusative," can give no precise information, unless we specify which of its relations is denoted by this case.

The fault to which we have now alluded, seems, in many cases, to have arisen from an excessive desire of brevity, and to have been perpetuated by the aversion so commonly felt to change a form of phraseology to which, however defective in its original, custom has at length attached a definite meaning. In cases of this kind, we have not scrupled to make such changes, both in rules and definitions, as the nature of the case seemed to us to demand; but, in doing this, we have not forgotten the importance of uniting brevity with precision.

In regard to the manner in which this work was composed, we would merely remark, that the labor has been in every respect a mutual one. The hand and mind of each have been repeatedly employed upon every part, until it has at length become impossible even for ourselves to recollect the share

which each has had in bringing the work to its present state. Of each and every part, therefore, it may be safely said that we are the joint authors ; and hence, whatever of praise or blame may attach to any part, must be shared equally by each.

In commending to the patronage of the public a work on which so large a portion of our thoughts has been for several years employed, we will not pretend indifference to its fate. It was begun under a conviction, derived from the experience of many years in teaching the ancient languages, that a Latin grammar, different in many respects from any with which we were acquainted, was greatly needed in our schools and colleges. Had we contemplated the amount of labor which its execution would impose upon us, we might probably have shrunk from the attempt, encumbered as we were with other employments. At every step, however, our labor has been cheered by the greater familiarity which we have acquired with the best of the Roman writers, and by the hope that the result might be of service to others in forming an acquaintance with the same immortal authors. Should the verdict of an enlightened public decide, that, in this respect, we have been successful, we shall feel ourselves fully recompensed for our labor, in the satisfaction of having contributed, in however humble a degree, to promote the cause of classical literature, and consequently of sound learning, among our countrymen.

*Boston, April 8, 1836.*

# CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
<b>ORTHOGRAPHY.</b>		<b>Irregular comparison</b> ..... 69	
Division of letters .....	2	<b>Defective comparison</b> ..... 70	
Diphthongs .....	2	<b>Derivation of adjectives</b> ..... 72	
Punctuation.....	2	<b>Composition of adjectives</b> .... 74	
<b>ORTHOËPY.</b>		<b>PRONOUNS</b> .....	
Sounds of the letters .....	3	Substantive pronouns..... 76	
—— of the vowels .....	3	Adjective pronouns .....	
—— of the diphthongs.....	4	Demonstrative pronouns... 77	
—— of the consonants.....	5	Intensive pronouns..... 79	
Quantity of penultimate and final		Relative pronouns .....	
syllables.....	6	Interrogative pronouns ... 80	
Accentuation.....	7	Indefinite pronouns .....	
Division of words into syllables..	8	Possessive pronouns .....	
<b>ETYMOLOGY.</b>		Paternal pronouns..... 83	
<b>NOUNS</b> .....	10	<b>VERBS</b> .....	
Gender.....	11	Moods.....	
Number .....	14	Tenses .....	
Cases .....	14	Numbers .....	
Declensions.....	14	Persons.....	
First declension .....	16	Participles, gerunds, and su-	
Greek nouns.....	17	pines .....	
Second declension .....	18	Conjugation .....	
Greek nouns.....	21	Table of terminations.....	
Third declension.....	21	<i>Sum</i> .....	
Rules for the gender .....	24	First conjugation.....	
oblique cases. 27		Second conjugation.....	
Greek nouns.....	36	Third conjugation.....	
Fourth declension .....	37	Fourth conjugation.....	
Fifth declension.....	38	Deponent verbs .....	
Declension of compound nouns	39	Remarks on the conjugations	
Irregular nouns .....	39	Periphrastic conjugations... 117	
Variable nouns.....	40	General rules of conjugation	
Defective nouns.....	41	Formation of second and third	
Redundant nouns.....	47	roots .....	
Derivation of nouns.....	49	First conjugation .....	
Composition of nouns.....	53	Second conjugation .....	
<b>ADJECTIVES</b> .....	54	Third conjugation .....	
Adjectives of the first and sec-		Fourth conjugation .....	
ond declension.....	55	Irregular verbs .....	
Adjectives of the third declen-		Defective verbs .....	
sion.....	57	Impersonal verbs .....	
Rules for the oblique cases.	60	Redundant verbs .....	
Irregular adjectives.....	61	Derivation of verbs .....	
Defective adjectives.....	61	Composition of verbs.....	
Redundant adjectives .....	62	<b>ADVERBS</b> .....	
Numeral adjectives .....	63	Derivation of adverbs .....	
Comparison of adjectives ....	67	Composition of adverbs.....	
		Comparison of adverbs.....	
		<b>PREPOSITIONS</b> .....	
		Prepositions in composition . 155	



# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** teaches the principles of the Latin Language.

These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of a language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

The letters of the Latin language are twenty-four. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

*I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

*W* is not found in Latin words, and the same is true of *k*, except at the beginning of a few words whose second letter is *a*; and, even in these, most writers make use of *c*.

*Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

The vowels are . . . . .		<i>a, e, i, o, u, y, . .</i>	6
The consonants are divided into	{	Liquids, . . . . .	<i>l, m, n, r, . . . .</i> 4
		Labials, . . . . .	<i>p, b, f, v, . .</i>
		Palatics, . . . . .	<i>c, g, q, j, . .</i>
		Linguals, . . . . .	<i>t, d, . . . .</i>
	Mutes, {		. . . . 10
	{		
		Hissing letter, . . . . .	<i>s, . . . . .</i> 1
		Double letters, . . . . .	<i>x, z, . . . . .</i> 2
		Aspirate, . . . . .	<i>h, . . . . .</i> 1
			<hr/> 24

*X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double letter is always written, instead of the letters which it represents.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, xu*, and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

The following marks, also, are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

~ ~ ~ The first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful.

^ This is called the circumflex accent. It denotes a contraction, and the vowel over which it stands is always long.

` This is the grave accent, and is sometimes written over particles, to distinguish them from other words containing the same letters; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which.

.. The diæresis denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aēr*, the air.

## ORTHOËPY.

## § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing the words of the Latin language, we have endeavored to conform to English analogy, and to the settled principles of Latin accent. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

## OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

## I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. 1. An accented vowel, at the end of a syllable, has always its *long* English sound; as,

*pa'-ter, de'-dit, vi'-vus, to'-tus, tu'-ba, Ty'-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal, metre, vital, total, tutor, tyrant*.

*E, o, and u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and more obscure; as, *re'-te, vo'-lo, ac'-u-o*.

*'A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has the sound of *a* in *father*, or in *ah*; as, *mu'-sa, e-pis'-tō-la*; pronounced *mu'-sah, &c.*

*I*, at the end of a word, has always its long sound.

So also in the first syllable of a word, the second of which is accented, when either the *i* stands alone before a consonant, or ends the syllable before a vowel; as, *i-do'-ne-us, fi-ē'-bam, di-ur'-nus*.



In other cases, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, it has an obscure sound, like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us*, *phi-los'-o-phus*; pronounced *Fa'-be-us*, &c.

REMARK 1. The final *i* of *tib'-i* and *sib'-i* also sounds like short *e*  
2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. 2. When a syllable ends with a consonant, its vowel has the short English sound; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* in an accented syllable, before *dr* and *rt*, has the same sound as in *quadrant* and *quart*: as, *qua'-dro*, *quad'-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *case*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trê'-mus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas*, *œs'-tas*, *cæt'-ë-ra*, *pæ'-na*, *œs'-trum*.

*Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troius*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Ma'-ya*, *Pom-pe'-yus*, *Tro'-yus*, *Har-py'-ya*.

*Ei*, when a diphthong, and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like long *i*; as in *hei*.

*Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum*, pronounced *laws*, &c.

In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lâ'-us*.

*Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Or'-pheus*.

*Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, &c.; as, *lin'-gua*, *que'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quo'-tus*, *e'-quus*. They

are always diphthongs after *q*, and usually after *g* and *s*. In *su'-us*, *ar'-gu-o*, and some other words, they are not diphthongs.

*Ui* in *cui* and *huic* is pronounced like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*; as, *ce'-do*, *Cæ'-sar*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *lac*.

*Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta*, *machīna*, pronounced *kar'-ta*, *mak'-i-na*.

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia*, *caduceus*, pronounced *so'-she-a*, *ca-du'-she-us*.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*; as, *ge'-nus*, *re-gi'-na*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g*, in an accented syllable, comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger*, *exaggēro*, pronounced *aj'-er*, &c.

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. *S*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the sound of *sh*; as, *Persia*, *censui*, pronounced *Per'-she-a*, *cen'-shu-i*. But, in such case, *s*, if preceded by a vowel, has the sound of *zh*; as, *Aspasia*, *Mæsia*, *posui*, pronounced *As-pa'-zhe-a*, *Mæ'-zhe-a*, *pozh'-u-i*.

NOTE. In compound words, whose second part begins with *su*, *s* retains its hissing sound; as, *in'-sū-per*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-sū'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *mu'-sa*, *re-sid'-u-um*, *cau'-su*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-rē'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound.

## T.

§ 12. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio*, *Sulpitius*, pronounced *ra'-she-o*, *Sul-pish'-e-us*. But in such case, *t*, if preceded by *s* or *x*, has the sound of *ch* in *child*; as, *mixtio*, *Sallustius*, pronounced *mix'-che-o*, *Sal-lus'-che-us*.

Exc. Proper names in *tion*, and old infinitives in *er*, preserve the hard sound of *t*; as, *Am-phic'-ty-on*, *flec'-ti-er* for *flecti*.

## X.

*X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as *Xenöphon*, *axis*, pronounced *Zen'-o-phon*, *ak'-sis*.

Exc. 1. In words beginning with *ex*, followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *examino*, *exemplum*, pronounced *eg-zam'-i-no*, *eg-zem'-plum*.

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius*, *perui*, pronounced *nok'-she-us*, *pek'-shu-i*.

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent, as *Chthonia*, *Phthia*, pronounced *Tho'-ni-a*, *Thi'-a*. Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-vus*, *tmö'-sis*, *Cle'-ei-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one.

The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantities of syllables are, in general, to be learned from the "Rules of Prosody;" but the following very general rules may be here inserted:—

A vowel before another vowel is short.

Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

A vowel before *x*, *z*, *j*, or any two consonants, except a mute and liquid, is long, by *position*, as it is called.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a vowel.

### OF ACCENTUATION.

§ 14. Accent is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words.

When a word has more than one accent, that which is nearest to the termination is called the *primary* or *principal* accent.

The *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary.

A *third* and a *fourth* accent, in some long words, precede the secondary, and are subject, in all respects, to the same rules.

In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pá-ter, má-ter, pen'-na*.

In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long*, it is accented; but if it is *short*, the accent is on the *antepenult*; as, *a-mí'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

Exc. The penult of vocatives, from proper names in *ius*, is accented, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gíl'-i*.

§ 15. If the penult is *common*, the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult*; as, *vol'-u-cris, phar'-e-tra, íb'-i-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *u-ni'-us, is-ti'-us*.

The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum, sub'-e-o*.

In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent

---

\* These are *te, me, te, ce, cine, and dem*; as, *tute, egomet, meapte, hiece, hieeine, idem*.

parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta*, *it'-ā-que*; *vi'-rum*, *vi-rum'-que*.

If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rā'-tus*, *tol''-e-rab'-i-lis*.

§ 16. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur*, *ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra''-ti-ō'-nis*, *tol'''-e-ra-hil''-i-ō'-rem*, *ex-er'''-ci-ta''-ti-ō'-nis*. In some combinations there are four accents; as, *ex-er'''-ci-ta'''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que*.

## RULES FOR THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

§ 17. The only purpose of the following rules for the division of words, is, to lead to a correct pronunciation.

When liquids are mentioned, *l* and *r* only are intended.

Words of one syllable are called *monosyllables*; of two, *dissyllables*; and of more than two, *polysyllables*.

### 1. Simple Words.

1. In every word there are as many syllables as there are separate vowels and diphthongs. A word, therefore, will be divided correctly, when its consonants are united with the proper vowels and diphthongs.

§ 18. 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, coming between the vowels of the penultimate and final syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *pa'-ter*, *a'-cris*, *vol'-u-cris*, *Hi-er'-ō-cles*.

*Tib'-i* and *sib'-i* are excepted.

3. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming between the penultimate and final syllables, are separated; as, *cor'-pus*, *il'-le*, *ad-o-les'-cens*.

§ 19. 4. A single consonant, either before or after the vowel of any accented syllable, except after the vowel of a penult, is joined to the accented syllable; as, *i-tin'-ē-ra*, *dom'-i-nus*.

5. A mute and a liquid, coming *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, are joined to such vowel; as, *a-gres'-tis*, *la-trā'-tor*, *Eu-phrā'-nor*, *Her-a-clē'-a*.

Exc. to rules 2 and 5. *Gl* and *tl*, either after the vowel of the penult,

or before the vowel of an accented syllable, are separated; as, *Æg'le*, *At'-las*; *Ag-lā'-us*, *At-lan'-ti-des*.

§ 20. 6. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, and any two consonants whatever, coming *after* such vowel, unless it is the vowel of the penult (2), are separated; as, *ger-mā'-nus*, *formī'-do*, *ca-ter'-va*, *co-lum'-ba*, *ref'-lu-o*.

Exc. to rules 4 and 6. (a.) A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, following *a*, *e*, or *o*, in an accented syllable, and followed by two vowels, of which the first is *e* or *i*, must be joined to the latter; as, *ra'-di-us*, *fa'-ci-o*, *me'-di-us*, *do'-ce-o*, *tæ'-di-um*, *hæ'-re-o*, *Mæ'-si-a*, *Sue'-vi-a*, *pa'-tri-us*, *E-re'-tri-a*, *Æ-no'-tri-a*.

Exc. (b.) A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *u*, in an accented syllable, must be joined to the vowel which follows; as, *lu'-rī-dus*, *au'-re-us*, *Eu'-rj-tus*, *sa-lu'-brī-tas*, *Eu'-crī-tus*.

Exc. (c.) If the second of two consonants coming after the vowel of an accented syllable is *t* or *d*, they are often united, as in English, when followed by *u*, ending a syllable not final; as, *mortuus*, *arduus*, pronounced *mort'-yu-us*, *ard'-yu-us*.

§ 21. 7. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter syllable; otherwise, the last only; as, *pis-trī'-na*, *fe-nes'-tra*, *emp-tō'-ris*, *Lamp'-sā-cus*.

8. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, coming between the vowels of two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*, *ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a*, *per''-e-gri-na''-ti-ō'-nis*.

9. When *x*, with no other consonant, comes between two vowels, in *writing* syllables, it is united to the former; but in *pronouncing* them, it is divided; as, *sax'-um*, *ax-il'-la*, pronounced *sac'-sum*, *ac-sil'-la*.

§ 22. 10. When *h* alone comes between two vowels, it is joined to the latter; but if it follows *c*, *p*, or *t*, it is never separated from them, and is not considered as a letter; as, *mi'-hi*, *tra'-hē-re*, *mach'-i-na*, *Pa'-phos*, *At'-hos*.

11. Four consonants rarely meet in words uncompounded, as in *trans'-trum*. In such case, two of them are a mute and a liquid, and these are joined to the latter syllable.

## 2. Compound Words.

§ 23. 12. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts, if the former part ends with a consonant; but if that ends with a vowel, the compound is divided like a simple word; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir-cum'-ā-go*, *su'-pēr-est*, *sub'-i-it*, *præ-ter'-e-a*; *-def'-ē-ro*, *dil'-i-go*, *be-nev'-ō-lus*, *præs'-to*,

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and various inflections.

The different classes, into which words are divided, are called *Parts of Speech*.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

The first four are *inflected*; the last four are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

Substantives and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

*Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

Nouns are either *proper*, *common*, or *abstract*.

A proper noun is the name of an *individual* object; as, *Cæsar*; *Roma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

A common noun denotes a *class* of objects, to any one of which it is equally applicable; as, *homo*, a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *lapis*, a stone.

A common noun, when, in the singular number, it signifies many, is called a *collective* noun; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

An abstract noun is the name of a *quality*, or of a *mode* of being or action ; as, *bonitas*, goodness ; *gaudium*, joy ; *festinatio*, haste.

Abstract nouns, by varying their meaning, may become common. Thus, *studium*, zeal, a state of the mind, is an abstract ; when it signifies a pursuit, it is a common noun. Proper nouns also may be used to designate a class, and then they become common ; as, *duodécim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars. The infinitive mood is often substituted for an abstract noun.

↳ To nouns belong *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

## GENDER.

§ 27. Nouns have three genders—*masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

Those words are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes.

Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though they denote objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes : thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male ; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because it takes an adjective of that form which is annexed to nouns denoting males.

The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur : these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names and appellations of all male beings are masculine ; as, *Homērus*, Homer ; *pater*, a father ; *consul*, a consul ; *equus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended ; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine ; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber ; *Aquilo*, the north wind ; *Aprilis*, April.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine ; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly ; but



they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic*\* *Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names and appellations of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *mater*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *navis*, *fabula*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Samos*, the name of an island; *Eunuchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *parens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.✓

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, a youth.	Dux, a leader.	Parens, a parent.
Affinis, a relation by marriage.	Exul, an exile.	Præes, a surety.
Antistes, a chief priest.	Hospes, a guest, a host.	Præses, a president.
Auctor, an author.	Hostis, an enemy.	Præsul, a chief priest.
Augur, an augur.	Infans, an infant.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
Bos, an ox or cow.	Interpres, an interpreter.	Sacerdos, a priest or priestess.
Canis, a dog.	Judex, a judge.	Satelles, a life-guard.
Civis, a citizen.	Juvenis, a youth.	Sus, a swine.
Comes, a companion.	Miles, a soldier.	Sus, a swine.
Conjux, a spouse.	Municeps, a burgess.	Testis, a witness.
Consors, a consort.	Nemo, nobody.	Vates, a prophet.
Conviva, a guest.	Par, a peer.	Verna, a slave.
Custos, a keeper.	Patruelis, a cousin-german.	Vindex, an avenger.

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

*Conjux, atque parens, princeps, patruelis, et infans,*  
*Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et hostis,*  
*Augur, et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,*  
*Muni-que-ceps, vates, adolescens, civis, et auctor,*  
*Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bos-que, canis-que,*  
*Pro consorte tori par, præsul, verna, satelles,*  
*Præs jungas, consors, interpres, et exul, et hospes.*

\* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ 31. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective ; when they denote females, a feminine.

The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction :—

Artifex, an artist.	Fur, a thief.	Obses, a hostage.
Auspex, a soothsayer.	Heres, an heir.	Opifex, a workman.
Cocles, a person having but one eye.	Homo, a man or woman.	Pedes, a footman.
Eques, a horseman.	Index, an informer.	Pugil, a boxer.
Exlex, an outlaw.	Latro, a robber.	Senex, an old person.
	Libéri, children.	

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension ; as, *advēna*, a stranger ; *aurīga*, a charioteer ; *incōla*, an inhabitant : also some gentile nouns ; as, *Persa*, a Persian ; *Arcas*, an Arcadian.

§ 32. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction :—

Copīæ, troops.	Opēræ, laborers.	Vigiliæ, watchmen.
Custodiæ, guards.	Proles, } offspring.	
Excubiæ, sentinels.	Sobōles, }	

Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction ; as,

Acroāma, a jester.	Mancipium, } a slave.
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.	Servitium, }

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but which admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. Such nouns commonly follow the gender of their terminations. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *mus*, a mouse, are masculine ; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine ; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender ; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns ; as, *fas*, *nefas*, *nihil*, *gummi*, *pondo*.

2. Names of letters ; as, *A*, *B*, *C*, &c.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning ; as, *pater est dissyllābum* ; *pater* is a dissyllable.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs,

and other particles, used substantively; as, *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell.

REMARK. Words derived from the Greek retain the same gender which they have in that language.

### NUMBER.

§ 35. Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*,—which are distinguished by their terminations.

The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

### CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

Cases are those terminations of nouns, by means of which their relations to other words are denoted. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

But though there is this number of cases, no noun has so many different terminations in each number.

§ 37. The nominative indicates the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb.

The genitive is used to indicate *origin*, *possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are denoted by the preposition *of*.

The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done.

The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those which are usually expressed in English by the prepositions *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by*.

All the cases, except the nominative, are usually called *oblique* cases.

### DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The change of termination, by which the different cases and numbers of nouns are expressed, is called *declension*.

There are, in Latin, five different modes of declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions. These may be distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *eī*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the five declensions.

## TERMINATIONS.

*Singular.*

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
		M. N.	M. N.	M. N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ă,	us, eī, um,	is,	us,	es,
<i>Gen.</i>	æ,	ī,	is,	ūs,	eī,
<i>Dat.</i>	æ,	ō,	ī,	uī,	eī,
<i>Acc.</i>	am,	um,	em,	um,	em,
<i>Voc.</i>	ă,	ě, er, um,	<del>Wandering</del>	us,	es,
<i>Abl.</i>	ă,	ō,	ě, or ī,	ū,	ē,

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	æ,	ī,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
<i>Gen.</i>	ărūm,	ōrūm,		um, or ium,		uum,		ērūm,
<i>Dat.</i>	is,	is,		ībus,		ībus, or ūbus,		ēbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	as,	os,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
<i>Voc.</i>	æ,	ī,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
<i>Abl.</i>	is.	is.		ībus.		ībus, or ūbus.		ēbus.

*Remarks.*

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous, and are therefore omitted in the table.

2. The accusative singular ends always in *m*, except in some neuters.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural end always alike.

5. The genitive plural ends always in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural end always alike ;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is* ; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural ends always in *s*, except in neuters.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, or *es*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

*Latin* nouns of this declension end only in *a*, and are thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Mu'-sa, <i>a muse</i> ;	<i>Nom.</i>	mu'-sæ, <i>muses</i> ;
<i>Gen.</i>	mu'-sæ, <i>of a muse</i> ;	<i>Gen.</i>	mu-sā'-rum, <i>of muses</i> ;
<i>Dat.</i>	mu'-sæ, <i>to a muse</i> ;	<i>Dat.</i>	mu'-sis, <i>to muses</i> ;
<i>Acc.</i>	mu'-sam, <i>a muse</i> ;	<i>Acc.</i>	mu'-sas, <i>muses</i> ;
<i>Voc.</i>	mu'-sa, <i>O muse</i> ;	<i>Voc.</i>	mu'-sæ, <i>O muses</i> ;
<i>Abl.</i>	mu'-sâ, <i>with a muse</i> .	<i>Abl.</i>	mu'-sis, <i>with muses</i> .

In like manner decline

Au'-la, <i>a hall</i> .	Lus-cin'-i-a, <i>a nightin-</i>	Sa-git'-ta, <i>an arrow</i> .
Cu'-ra, <i>care</i> .	<i>gale</i> .	Stel'-la, <i>a star</i> .
Ga'-le-a, <i>a helmet</i> .	Mach'-i-na, <i>a machine</i> .	To'-ga, <i>a gown</i> .
In'-sû-la, <i>an island</i> .	Pen'-na, <i>a quill, a wing</i> .	Vi'-a, <i>a way</i> .
Lit'-ê-ra, <i>a letter</i> .		

### EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Appellatives of men, and names of rivers in *a*, are masculine, according to § 28, 1 and 2. But the poets have used the following names of rivers as feminine: *Albûla*, *Allia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Matrôna*, *Mosella*. Names of rivers in *e* are also feminine; as, *Lethe*.

*Ossa* and *Œta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, is masculine. *Dama*, a fallow deer, and *talpa*, a mole, are once used as masculine by Virgil.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 43. *Genitive singular.* 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; as, *aula*, a hall; gen. *aulāi*.

2. *Familia*, after *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

*Genitive plural.* The genitive plural is sometimes contracted by omitting *ar*; as, *Cælicōlūm*, for *Cælicolārum*.

*Dative and Ablative plural.* The following nouns have generally *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension:—

Dea, a goddess.	Equa, a mare.
Filia, a daughter.	Mula, a she mule.

The use of a similar termination in *anima*, *asina*, *domina*, *liberta*, *nata*, *serva*, *conserva*, and *socia*, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *e*, *ās*, and *es*, and some also in *a*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *a* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *an* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel'-ō-pe,	N. Æ-ne'-as,	N. An-chi'-ses,
G. Pe-nel'-ō-pes,	G. Æ-ne'-æ,	G. An-chi'-sæ,
D. Pe-nel'-ō-pæ,	D. Æ-ne'-æ,	D. An-chi'-sæ,
Ac. Pe-nel'-ō-pen,	Ac. Æ ne'-am, or an,	Ac. An-chi'-sen,
V. Pe-nel'-ō-pe,	V. Æ-ne'-a,	V. An-chi'-se,
Ab. Pe-nel'-ō-pe.	Ab. Æ-ne'-ā.	Ab. An-chi'-se.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al'-o-e, ulnes.	Ti-a'-ras, a turban.
E-pit'-ō-me, an abridgment.	Co-mē'-tes, a comet.
This'-be.	Dy-nas'-tes, a dynasty.
Bo'-re-as, the north wind.	Pri-am'-i-des, a son of Priam.
Mi'-das.	Py-ri'-tes, a kind of stone.

Patronymics in *des* have sometimes *em* for *en* in the accusative; as, *Priamidem*.

Greek nouns which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrida*, a son of *Atréus*; *Perses*, *Persa*, a Persian; *geometres*, *geometra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitōma*, *epitōma*; *grammatice*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorice*, *rhetorica*, oratory.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

### SINGULAR.

<i>A lord.</i>	<i>A son-in-law.</i>	<i>A field.</i>	<i>A kingdom.</i>
<i>N.</i> Dom'-i-nus,	Ge'-ner,	A'-ger,	Reg'-num,
<i>G.</i> dom'-i-ni,	gen'-ē-ri,	a'-gri,	reg'-ni,
<i>D.</i> dom'-i-no,	gen'-ē-ro,	a'-gro,	reg'-no,
<i>Ac.</i> dom'-i-num,	gen'-ē-rum,	a'-grum,	reg'-num,
<i>V.</i> dom'-i-ne,	ge'-ner,	a'-ger,	reg'-num,
<i>Ab.</i> dom'-i-no.	gen'-ē-ro.	a'-gro.	reg'-no.

### PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> dom'-i-ni,	gen'-ē-ri,	a'-gri,	reg'-na,
<i>G.</i> dom-i-nō'-rum,	gen-e-rō'-rum,	a-grō'-rum,	reg-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> dom'-i-nis,	gen'-ē-ris,	a'-gris,	reg'-nis,
<i>Ac.</i> dom'-i-nos,	gen'-ē-ros,	a'-gros,	reg'-na,
<i>V.</i> dom'-i-ni,	gen'-ē-ri,	a'-gri,	reg'-na,
<i>Ab.</i> dom'-i-nis.	gen'-ē-ris.	a'-gris.	reg'-nis.

Like *dominus* decline

An'-i-mus, <i>the mind.</i>	Fo'-cus, <i>a hearth.</i>	Nu'-mē-rus, <i>a number.</i>
Clyp'-e-us, <i>a shield.</i>	Gla'-di-us, <i>a sword.</i>	O-ce'-ā-nus, <i>the ocean.</i>
Cor'-vus, <i>a raven.</i>	Lu'-cus, <i>a grove.</i>	Tro'-chus, <i>a top.</i>

§ 47. Some nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *armiger*, -ēri, an armor-bearer; *Lucifer*, -ēri, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul'-ter, ēri, <i>an adulterer.</i>	I'-ber, ēri, <i>a Spaniard.</i>	So'-cer, ēri, <i>a father-in-law.</i>
Cel'-ti-ber, ēri, <i>a Celtiberian.</i>	Li'-ber, ēri, <i>Bacchus.</i>	Ves'-per, ēri, <i>the evening.</i>
	Pu'-er, ēri, <i>a boy.</i>	

*Mulciber*, *Vulcan*, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e*, in adding the terminations, and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, a wild boar.	Li'-ber, a book.	Al-ex-an'-der.
Aus'-ter, the south wind.	Ma-gis'-ter, a master.	Teu'-cer.
Fa'-ber, a workman.	On'-ā-ger, a wild ass.	

*Vir*, a man, and its compounds, (the only nouns in *ir*,) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An -trum, a cave.	Ne-go'-ti-um,* a busi-	Præ-sid'-i-um, a defence.
A'-tri-um, a hall.	ness.	Sax'-um, a rock.
Bel'-lum, war.	Ni'-trum, nitre.	Scep'-trum, a sceptre.
Ex-em'-plum, an example.		

### EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine :—

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.	Carbāsūs, a sail.	Miltus, vermilion.
Alvus, the belly.	Dialectus, a dialect.	Pharus, a watch-tower.
Antidōtus, an antidote.	Domus, a house.	Plinthus, the foot of a pillar.
Arctus, the Northern Bear.	Erēmus, a desert.	Vannus, a sieve.
	Humus, the ground.	
	Lecythus, a cruise.	

2. Greek nouns in *plithongus*, *odus*, and *metros*, are likewise feminine; as, *diphthongus*, a diphthong; *synōdus*, an assembly; *diamētros*, a diameter.

§ 50. 3. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, &c. are feminine, according to § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine :—

Acanthus, bear's-foot.	Dumus, a thicket.	Raphānus, a radish.
Asparāgus, asparagus.	Hellebōrus, hellebore.	Rhamnus, black-thorn.
Calāmus, a reed.	Intybus, endive.	Rubus, a bramble.
Carduus, a thistle.	Juncus, a bulrush.	Tribulus, a thistle.

And sometimes

Amarācus, marjoram.	Cytisus, hadder.
Cupressus, cypress.	Lotos, a lote-tree.

Names of trees in *aster* are also masculine; as, *oleaster*, a wild olive.

The following names of gems are also masculine :—

Beryllus, a beryl.	Chrysoprāsus, chryso-	Pyrōpus, pyrope.
Carbunculus, a carbuncle.	prase.	Smaragdus, an emerald.
Chrysolithus, chrysolite.	Opālus, opal.	

\* Pronounced *ne-go'-she-um*. See § 12.



Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter.

These names of countries and towns are masculine: *Canopus*, *Pontus*, and all plurals in *i*. *Abŷdus* and *Lesbos* are either masculine or feminine. *Ilion* is either neuter or feminine.

Names of towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter.

§ 51. 4. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

*Balanus*, a date.

*Grossus*, a green fig.

*Phaselus*, a little ship.

*Barbitus*, a harp.

*Pampinus*, a vine-leaf.

*Atomus*, an atom, and *colus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

5. *Pelagus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the poets sometimes contract it into *i*; as, *ingēnī*, for *ingenīi*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu, populus*; Liv.

Proper names in *ius* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Horāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgīli*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patris and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *De'ius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie*; *Laertius*, *Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some words, especially of those which denote money, measure, and weight, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *orum*.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jugerium*, *modium*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *delum*, *liberum*, *Danuum*, &c.

Deus, a god, is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. De'-us,	N. Di'-i, Di, or De'-i,
G. De'-i,	G. De-ō'-rum,
D. De'-o,	D. Di'-is, Dis, or De'-is,
Ac. De'-um,	Ac. De'-os,
V. De'-us,	V. Di'-i, Di, or De'-i,
Ab. De'-o.	Ab. Di'-is, Dis, or De'-is.

*Jesus*, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

## GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are often changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; as, *Alphēos*, *Alphēus*; *Ilion*, *Ilium*. Those in *ros* are generally changed into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*; *Teucros*, *Teucer*.

Greek nouns are thus declined :—

Singular.		Barbiton, a lyre.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> De'-los,	An-dro'-ge-os,	<i>N.</i> bar'-bī-ton,	bar'-bī-ta,
<i>G.</i> De'-li,	An-dro'-ge-o, or i,	<i>G.</i> bar'-bī-ti,	bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>D.</i> De'-lo,	An-dro'-ge-o,	<i>D.</i> bar'-bī-to,	bar'-bī-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> De'-lon,	An-dro'-ge-o, or on,	<i>Ac.</i> bar'-bī-ton,	bar'-bī-ta,
<i>V.</i> De'-le,	An-dro'-ge-os,	<i>V.</i> bar'-bī-ton,	bar'-bī-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> De'-lo.	An-dro'-ge-o.	<i>Ab.</i> bar'-bī-to.	bar'-bī-tis.

Anciently, some nouns in *os* had the genitive in *u*; as, *Menandru*. Ter.

Greek proper names in *eus* are generally declined like *domīnus*, except in the vocative, which ends in *eu*: in this case, and sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative, they retain the Greek form, and are of the third declension.

*Panthu* occurs in Virgil as the vocative of *Panthus*.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is eleven. Four are vowels—*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*; and seven are consonants—*c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

## Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.

In this declension the oblique cases cannot always be determined from the nominative, nor, on the other hand, the nominative from the oblique cases. To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56. The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* is removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, &c.: so *ars*, gen *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, &c.; *opus*, gen. *operis*, root *oper*, dat. *operi*, &c.

Where two forms are used in the same case, recourse must be had to the rules for the different cases, § 79—85.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension :—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>N.</i> *	*		<i>N.</i> es,	a, or ia,	
<i>G.</i> is,	is,		<i>G.</i> um, or ium,	um, or ium,	
<i>D.</i> i,	i,		<i>D.</i> ĩbus,	ĩbus,	
<i>Ac.</i> em, or im,	*		<i>Ac.</i> es,	a, or ia,	
<i>V.</i> *	*		<i>V.</i> es,	a, or ia,	
<i>Ab.</i> e, or i.	e, or i.		<i>Ab.</i> ĩbus.	ĩbus.	

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Honor, *honor* ; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>G.</i> ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-ĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>V.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-ĩ-bus.

Rupes, *a rock* ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>G.</i> ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
<i>D.</i> ru'-pi,	ru'-pĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
<i>V.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.	ru'-pĩ-bus.

Ars, *art* ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>G.</i> ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> ar'-ti,	ar'-tĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
<i>V.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.	ar'-tĩ-bus.

Serino, *speech* ; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ser'-mo	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>G.</i> ser-mō' nis,	ser-mō'-num,
<i>D.</i> ser-mō' ni,	ser-mon'-ĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>V.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-ĩ-bus.

Turris, *a tower* ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>G.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> tur'-ri,	tur'-rĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> tur'-rem,	tur'-res,
<i>V.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> tur'-re, or ri.	tur'-rĩ-bus.

Nox, *night* ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>G.</i> noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> noc'-ti,	noc'-tĩ-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
<i>V.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.	noc'-tĩ-bus.

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.

**Miles, a soldier ; com. gen.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>G.</i> mil'-i-tis,	mil'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> mil'-i-ti,	mi-lit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> mil'-i-tem,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>V.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> mil'-i-te.	mi-lit'-i-bus.

**Pater, a father ; masc.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>G.</i> pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
<i>D.</i> pa'-tri,	pat'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
<i>V.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.	pat'-ri-bus.

**Sedile, a seat ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>G.</i> se-di'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> se-di'-li,	se-dil'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>V.</i> se-di'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>Ab.</i> se-di'-li.	se-dil'-i-bus.

**Carmen, a verse ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis,	car'-mī-num,
<i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,	car-min'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>V.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne.	car-min'-i-bus.

**Iter, a journey ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris,	i-tin'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,	it-i-ner'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> i'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re.	it-i-ner'-i-bus.

**Lapis, a stone ; masc.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>G.</i> lap'-i-dis,	lap'-i-dum,
<i>D.</i> lap'-i-di,	la-pid'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> lap'-i-dem,	lap'-i-des,
<i>V.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>Ab.</i> lap'-i-de.	la-pid'-i-bus.

**Virgo, a virgin ; fem.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>G.</i> vir'-gī-nis,	vir'-gī-num,
<i>D.</i> vir'-gī-ni,	vir-gin'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> vir'-gī-nem,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>V.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> vir'-gī-ne.	vir-gin'-i-bus.

**Animal, an animal ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
<i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-ma'-li-um,
<i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
<i>V.</i> an'-i-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
<i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-i-bus.

**Opus, a work ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,	op'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,	o-per'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re.	o-per'-i-bus.

**Caput, a head ; neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>G.</i> cap'-i-tis,	cap'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> cap'-i-ti,	ca-pit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>V.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> cap'-i-te.	ca-pit'-i-bus.

Poëma, a poem ; neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ă-ta,
<i>G.</i> po-em'-ă-tis,	po-em'-ă-tum,
<i>D.</i> po-em'-ă-ti,	po-e-mat'-ī-bus, or po-em'-ă-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ă-ta,
<i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ă-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ă-te.	po-e-mat'-ī-bus, or po-em'-ă-tis.

### RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28—34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

#### MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, and *os*, are masculine ; as,

*sermo*, speech ; *dolor*, pain ; *flos*, a flower ; *carcer*, a prison ; *pes*, a foot.

#### Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify things incorporeal ; as, *ratio*, reason.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine ; as, *arundo*, a reed ; *imāgo*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton ; *unēdo*, a kind of fruit ; and *harpāgo*, a hook, are masculine.

*Margo*, the brink of a river, is either masculine or feminine. *Cupido*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Caro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine ; as, *echo*, an echo.

#### Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Tuber*, the tuber-tree, is feminine ; but when it denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is masculine or feminine ; *siser*, a carrot, is masculine or neuter.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter :—

Acer, a maple-tree.  
Cadaver, a dead body.  
Cicer, a vetch.  
Iter, a journey.  
Laser, benzoin.  
Laver, water-cresses.

Papaver, a poppy.  
Piper, pepper.  
Siler, an osier.  
Spinther, a clasp.  
Suber, a cork-tree.

Tuber, a swelling.  
Uter, a teat.  
Ver, the spring.  
Verber, a scourge.  
Zingiber, ginger.

*Exceptions in OR.*

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine : *ador*, fine wheat ; *æquor*, the sea ; *marmor*, marble ; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

*Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.*

1. The following are feminine :—

<i>Compes</i> , a fether.	<i>Quies</i> , and <i>Requies</i> , rest.	<i>Teges</i> , a mat.
<i>Mercēs</i> , a reward.	<i>Inquies</i> , want of rest.	<i>Tudes</i> , a hammer.
<i>Merges</i> , a sheaf of corn.	<i>Seges</i> , growing corn.	

2. *Ates*, a bird, is masculine or feminine. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

*Arbos*, a tree ; *cos*, a whetstone ; *dos*, a dowry ; and *eos*, the morning, are feminine : *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter ; as are also the Greek words *chaos*, chaos ; *epos*, epic poetry ; and *melos*, melody.

## FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine ; as,

*ætās*, age ; *nubes*, a cloud ; *avis*, a bird ; *chlamys*, a cloak ; *trabs*, a beam ; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *As*, a piece of money, or any thing divisible into twelve parts, is masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine ; as, *adāmas*, adamant.

2. *Vas*, a vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ātis*, are neuter ; as, *artocreas*, a pie ; *bucēras*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

*Acināces*, a cimeter, and *coles*, a stalk, are masculine. *Palumbes*, a wood pigeon, and *vepres*, a bramble, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

*Masculine.*

*Crinis*, hair.

*Ignis*, fire.

*Panis*, bread.

*Masculine or Feminine.*

*Amnis*, a river.

*Clunis*, the haunch.

*Funis*, a rope.

*Cinis*, ashes.

*Finis*, an end.

*Fines* (plur.), boundaries, is always masculine.

## 2. The following also are masculine or feminine :—

Anguis, a snake.	Corbis, a basket.	Tigris, a tiger.
Canalis, a conduit pipe.	Pulvis, dust.	Torquis, a chain.
Cenchris, a serpent.	Scrobis, a ditch.	

## 3. The following are masculine :—

Axis, an azletree.	Ensis, a sword.	Postis, a post.
Aqualis, a water-pot.	Fascis, a bundle.	Sanguis, blood.
Callis, a path.	Follis, a pair of bellows.	Semissis, a half of as.
Cassis, a net.	Fustis, a club.	Sentis, a brier.
Caulis, or } a stalk.	Glis, a dormouse.	Sodalis, a companion.
Colis, - }	Lapis, a stone.	Torris, a firebrand.
Centussis, a compound of as.	Mensis, a month.	Unguis, a nail.
Collis, a hill.	Mugilis, a mullet.	Vectis, a lever.
Cossis, a worm.	Orbis, a circle.	Vermis, a worm.
Cucumis, a cucumber.	Piscis, a fish.	Vomis, a ploughshare.
Decussis, a compound of as.	Pollis, fine flour.	

*Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.*

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *chalybs*, steel; *ellops*, a kind of fish; *epops*, a lapwing; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *merops*, a woodpecker; and *seps*, a kind of serpent.

2. Some nouns in *ns*, originally participles, and the compounds of *dens*, which are properly adjectives, are masculine; as, *confluens*, a confluence; *occidens*, the west; *oriens*, the east; *profluens*, a stream; *torrens*, a torrent; *bidens*, a two-pronged hoe; but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine. To these add *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, *dextans*, parts of *as*.

## 3. The following are either masculine or feminine :—

Adeps, fatness.	Rudens, a cable.	Serpens, a serpent.
Forceps, pincers.	Scrobs, a ditch.	Stirps, the trunk of a tree.

*Animans*, an animal, is feminine or neuter, and sometimes masculine.

*Exceptions in X.*

§ 65. 1. AX. *Corax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *dropax*, an ointment; *styrax*, a kind of tree; and *thorax*, a breastplate, are masculine; *limax*, a snail, is masculine or feminine.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *lex*, a law, *nex*, death, and *supellex*, furniture, which are feminine, and *atriplex*, golden-herb, which is neuter.

*Cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *obex*, a bolt; *rumex*, sorrel; and *silex*, a flint, are either masculine or feminine: *grex*, a herd, and *pumex*, pumice-stone, are very rarely found feminine.

3. IX. *Calix*, a cup; *fornix*, an arch; *phoenix*, a kind of bird; and *spadix*, a palm-branch, are masculine.

*Perdix*, a partridge, and *varix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *esox*, names of marine animals, and *volvox*, a vine-fretter, are masculine.

5. UX. *Tradux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. *YX*. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *calyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; and *oryx*, a wild goat, are masculine. *Onyx* and *sardonyx*, names of stones; also, *calx*, the heel; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Calx*, lime, and *bombyx*, when it signifies silk, are feminine.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *decunx*, *deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

#### NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; as,

*diadēma*, a crown; *rete*, a net; *hydromēli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *flumen*, a river; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat, and *pectus*, the breast.

#### Exceptions in L.

*Mugil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it signifies witticisms, and is always masculine.

#### Exceptions in N.

Nouns in *n*, except those in *men*, are masculine; as, *canon*, a rule.

But four in *on* are feminine—*ædon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; *sinclon*, fine linen: and four in *en* are neuter—*gluten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

#### Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *salar*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine. *Baccar* and *robur*, names of plants, are neuter. § 29.

#### Exceptions in US.

*Lepus*, a hare; *mus*, a mouse; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πούς), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagōpus*, a white partridge, is feminine.

Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

*Pecus*, *-ūdis*, a brute animal; *tellus*, the earth; *fraus*, fraud; and *laus*, praise, are feminine.

*Grus*, a crane, is masculine or feminine.

### RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

#### GENITIVE SINGULAR.

##### A.

§ 68. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *di-a-dē-ma*, *di-a-dem'-ā-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.



## E.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *re'-te, re'-tis*, a net; *se-dē'-lē, se-dē'-lis*, a seat.

## I.

Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hy-drom'-ē-li*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-i-tis* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo, ser-mō'-nis*, speech; *pa'-vo, pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis*; except *Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes*.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, form their genitive in *īnis*; as, *a-run'-do, a-run'-dī-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go, i-mag'-i-nis*, an image.

But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unēdo*, a kind of fruit; and *harpāgo*, a hook, have *ōnis*.

*Cardo*, a hinge; *ordo*, order; *grando*, hail; *virgo*, a virgin; and *margo*, the brink of a river, also have *īnis* in the genitive.

Exc. 2. The following, also, have *īnis*:—*Apollo*; *homo*, a man; *nemo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Caro*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Neria*, the wife of Mars, *Nerīēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, *Nerien*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ūs*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didūs*, dat. *Dido*, &c.; *Argo*, -*ūs*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido*, *Didōnis*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *e* are *ha'-lec, ha-lē'-cis*, a pickle, and *lac, lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul, con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *ca'-non, can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *ho'-nor, ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal, an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.

*Vi'-gil, vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.

*Ti'-tan, Ti-tā'-nis*, Titan.

*Si'-ren, si-rē'-nis*, a siren.

*Del'-phin, Del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car, cal-cā'-ris*, a spur

*Car'-cer, car'-cē-ris*, a prison.

*Gut'-tur, gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.

*Mar'-tyr, mar'-tŷ-ris*, a martyr.

## Exceptions in L.

*Fel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*; as, *fellis, mellis*.

*Exceptions in N.*

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *inis*; as, *flu'-men*, *flu'-mī-nis*, a river; *glu'-ten*, *glu'-tī-nis*, glue.

The following, also, form their genitive in *inis*:—*oscen*, a bird which foreboded by singing; *pecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *on* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon*, *Laomedontis*.

*Exceptions in R.*

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tris*, a father. So also *imber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber*, *Octōbris*.

But *crater*, a cup; *soter*, a savior; and *later*, a tile, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, corn, has *farris*; *hepar*, the liver, *hepātis*; *iter*, a journey, *itinēris*; *Jupiter*, *Jovis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ōris* in the genitive:—*ebur*, ivory; *femur*, the thigh; *jecur*, the liver; *robur*, strength.

*Jecur* has also *jecinōris*, and *jocinōris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tā'-tis*, age; *pi'-ē-tas*, *pi-e-tā'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mas*, a male, *maris*; *bas*, a surety, *vadis*; and *vas*, a vessel, *vasis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anātis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *adis* or *ados*, and the neuters in *ātis*; as, *adāmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-adis*, a lamp; *bucēras*, *-ātis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nomas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *adis*. *Melas*, the name of a river, has *Melānis*.

## ES.

§ 73. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *ītis*, or *etis*; as, *ru'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mī'-les*, *mīl'-ī-tis*, a soldier; *se'-ges*, *seg'-ē-tis*, growing corn.

A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *-is*, or *-i*.

Those which make *ītis* are,

<i>Ales</i> , a bird.	<i>Gurges</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Poples</i> , the ham.
<i>Ames</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Hospes</i> , a guest.	<i>Satelles</i> , a lifeguard.
<i>Antistes</i> , a priest.	<i>Limes</i> , a limit.	<i>Stipes</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Cespes</i> , a turf.	<i>Merges</i> , a sheaf of corn.	<i>Termes</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Comes</i> , a companion.	<i>Miles</i> , a soldier.	<i>Trames</i> , a path.
<i>Eques</i> , a horseman.	<i>Palmes</i> , a vine-branch.	<i>Tudes</i> , a hammer. [ <i>dier</i> .
<i>Fomes</i> , fuel.	<i>Pedes</i> , a footman.	<i>Veles</i> , a light armed sol-

The following have *ētis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indīges*, a man deified; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *seges*, growing corn; and *teges*, a mat.

The following have *etis*:—*Cres*, a Cretan; *lebes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; and *tapes*, tapestry. But *requies* is sometimes of the fifth declension.

Some Greek proper names have either *etis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chremes*, *-etis*, or *-is*. *Dares*, *-etis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *idis*.

Exc. 2. *Heres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *edis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *edis*.

Exc. 3. *Ceres* has *Cerëris*; *bes*, *bessis*; and *præs*, a surety, *prædis*. *Æs*, brass, has *aris*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *au'-ris*, the ear; *a'-vīs*, *a'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *etis*:—*cinis*, ashes; *cucūmis*, a cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vomis*, a ploughshare.

Exc. 2. The following have *idis*:—*capis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, the point of a spear; *lapis*, a stone; and *promulsis*, metheglin.

Exc. 3. Two have *inis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glis*, a dormouse, has *gliris*.

Greek nouns in *is* form their genitive,

1. in <i>is</i> , <i>ios</i> , or <i>eos</i> ; as, Basis, the foot of a pillar. Hærësis, heresy. Metropölis, a chief city. Phrasis, a phrase. Phthisis, a consumption. Pœsis, poetry.	2. in <i>idis</i> , or <i>idos</i> ; as, Ægis, a shield. Enëis, the Æneid. Aspis, an asp. Ephemëris, a day-book. Iris, the rainbow. Nerëis, a Nereid. Pyramis, a pyramid. Tigris, a tiger. Tyrannis, tyranny.	3. in <i>inis</i> ; as, Delphis. Eleusis. Salāmis. — 4. in <i>entis</i> ; as, Simöis.
---	--	---

*Tigris* has sometimes the genitive like the nominative.  
*Charis*, one of the graces, has *itis*.

## OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flo'-ris*, a flower; *ne'-pos*, *ne-pō'-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

<i>Flos</i> , a flower.	<i>Labos</i> , labor.	<i>Os</i> , the mouth.
<i>Glos</i> , a husband's sister.	<i>Lepos</i> , wit.	<i>Ros</i> , dew.
<i>Honos</i> , honor.	<i>Mos</i> , a custom.	

*Arbos*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

<i>Cos</i> , a whetstone.	<i>Monocēros</i> , a unicorn.	<i>Nepos</i> , a grandchild.
<i>Dos</i> , a dowry.	<i>Rhinocēros</i> , a rhinoceros.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bovis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek substantives in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *heros*, a hero; *Minos*; *Tros*, a Trojan.

## US.

§ 76. Nouns in *us* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as, *ge'-nus*, *gen'-ē-ris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pō-ris*, time.

Those which make *ōris* are,

*Corpus*, a body.

*Decus*, honor.

*Dedēcus*, disgrace.

*Facinus*, an exploit.

*Fœnus*, interest.

*Frigus*, cold.

*Lepus*, a hare.

*Littus*, a shore.

*Nemus*, a grove.

*Pecus*, cattle.

*Penus*, provisions.

*Pectus*, the breast.

*Pignus*, a pledge.

*Stercus*, dung.

*Tempus*, time.

*Tergus*, a hide.

Exc. 1. These three have *adis*:—*incus*, an anvil; *palus*, a morass; and *subscus*, a dove-tail.

*Pecus*, a brute animal, has *pectūdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *utis*:—*juventus*, youth; *salus*, safety; *senectus*, old age; *servitus*, slavery; *virtus*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* have *aris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *thus*, frankincense; except *grus*, a crane, and *sus*, a swine, which have *gruis*, and *suis*.

*Tellus*, the earth, has *tellūris*; and *Ligus* or *ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pus* (πύς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod; *Œdipus*, *ōdis*, which is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis*; as, *Trapezus*, *Trapezuntis*; *Opus*, *-untis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*.

Exc. 7. Nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ei* or *-t*.

## YS.

§ 77. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and, in the genitive, some have *ysis* or *yos*, some *ŷdis* or *ŷdos*, and some *ŷnis* or *ŷnos*; as, *che'-lys*, *che'-ly-is* or *-os*, a harp; *Ca'-pys*, *Ca'-py-is* or *-os*, *chlal'-mys*, *chlal'-ŷ-dis* or *-dos*, a cloak; *Tra'-chys*, *Tra'-chŷ-nis* or *-nos*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *tra'-bis*, a beam; *hi'-ems*, *hi'-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par'-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron'-tis*, the forehead.

Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *gryphis*.

REMARK. Those in *eps* also change *e* into *i*; as, *princeps*, *principis*, a prince. But *seps* has *sepis*, and *queps*, *auctipis*.

Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, a leaf; *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a Greek proper name, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *itis*. They are, *caput*, the head, gen. *cap'-'i-tis*; and its compounds, *occiput* and *sinciput*.

## X.

Nouns in *x* form their genitive by changing *x* into *cis* or *gis*; as, *vox*, *vo'-cis*, the voice; *con'-jux*, *con'-jū-gis*, a spouse.

So, *for'-nax*, *for-nāf'-cis*, a furnace; *cal'-lix*, *cal'-i-cis*, a cup; *cer'-vix*, *cer-vi'-cis*, the neck.

Those which make *gis* are, *conjux*, a spouse; *grex*, a flock; *lex*, a law; *remex*, *-igis*, a rower; *rex*, a king.

Also the following:—

Allōbrox, -ōgis, an <i>Allo-</i> <i>brogian</i> .	Dumnōrix, -igis.	Phalanx, -gis, a <i>phalanx</i> .
Ambiōrix, -igis.	Eporedōrix, -igis.	Phryx, -gis, a <i>Phrygian</i> .
Aquilex, -ēgis, a <i>spring</i>	Exlex, -ēgis, an <i>outlaw</i> .	Sphinx, -gis, a <i>sphinx</i> .
<i>hunter</i> .	FruX, -gis, <i>fruit</i> .	Strix, -gis, a <i>screech-owl</i> .
Bitūrix, -igis, a <i>Bituri-</i> <i>gian</i> .	Iapyx, -ygis, the <i>north-</i> <i>west wind</i> .	Styx, -gis, the <i>river Styx</i> .
Coccyx, -ygis, a <i>cuckoo</i> .	Orgetōrix, -igis.	Syrinx, -gis, <i>Syrinx</i> .
	Oryx, -ygis, a <i>wild goat</i> .	Vercingetōrix, -igis.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *ex*, of more than one syllable, form their genitive in *icis*; as, *pollex*, *-icis*, the thumb.

Except *fanīsex*, a mower; *narthex*, a shrub; *resex*, a vine-branch; *vervex*, a wether; and *aquilex*, *exlex*, and *remex*.

Exc. 2. *Supellex*, furniture, has *supellectilis*; and *senex*, an old man, has *senis*. *Nix*, snow, has *nivis*; and *nox*, night, *noctis*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek proper names in *ax* form their genitive in *actis*; as, *Hylax*, *actis*. So *Astyānax*, *Bibrax*, *Demōnax*.

Exc. 4. *Onyx* and *sardōnyx* have *yichis* in the genitive; as, *onyx*, *onychis*.

## DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*. Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte datus*. Varr. apud Gell.

## ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

The accusative singular, with the exception of neuters, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin words in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek words have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispālis*, *Tibēris*, *Anūbis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēsis*, *Batis*, *Arāris*, *Bibūlis*, *Apis*, *Ostris*, *Syr̄tis*, &c. These some times, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

Amussis, a mason's rule.	Gummis, gum.	Sitis, thirst.
Buris, a plough-tail.	Mephitis, foul air.	Tussis, a cough.
Cannabis, hemp.	Ravis, hoarseness.	Vis, strength.
Cucumis, a cucumber.	Sinapis, mustard.	

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em*—

Aqualis, a water-pot.	Puppis, the stern.	Securis, an axe.
Febris, a fever.	Restis, a rope.	Turris, a tower.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im*—

Avis, a bird.	Navis, a ship.	Ratis, a raft.
Clavis, a key.	Ovis, a sheep.	Sementis, a sowing.
Lens, a lentil.	Pelvis, a basin.	Sentis, a brier.
Messis, a harvest.	Præsepis, a stall.	Strigilis, a curry-comb.

*Crates*, a hurdle, has also sometimes *cratim*, as if from *cratis*.

The ancients formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

### Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

I. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas* (*lampadis* or *dos*), *lampadem*, or *lampada*; *chlamys*, *chlamydem*, or *-yda*.

In like manner these three, which have *is pure* in the genitive—*Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; and *Minos*, a king of Crete.

*Aër*, the air; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; and *paean*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aëra*, *æthëra*, *delphina*, *paëna*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* *impure*, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; as, *Paris*, *Paridis* or *Paridos*; *Parim*, *Parin* or *Paridem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing *impurely* in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*, seldom *Elim* or *Elin*.

So *Tigris*, signifying a river or a beast, has *tigridem* or *tigrim*; signifying a beast, it has *tigrin* also.

II. Greek nouns in *is* and *ys*, having *is* or *os pure* in the genitive, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, *-eos* or *-ios*; *metamorphōsim*, or *-ōsin*, a change; *Tethys*, *-yis* or *-yos*, *Tethym* or *-yn*.

III. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus* have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Theseus*, *Thesea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

*Demosthēnes* and *Ganymēdes* have sometimes in the accusative besides *em*, the termination *ea*.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the

first declension; as, *Achilles, Achillen; Xerxes, Xerzen; Sophocles, Sophoclen*. Some also, which have either *etis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *etem, eta, or em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chremes, Thales*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

## § 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis, Daphni; Tethys, Tethy; Melampus, Melampu; Orpheus, Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have their vocative in *e*; as, *Socrates, Socrate*.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 82. The ablative singular ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e, al, and ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedile, sedili; animal, animali; calcar, calcari*.

But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *bacchar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hepar*, the liver; *jubar*, a sun-beam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. *Mare*, the sea, has either *e* or *i*.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi; December, Decembri; Aprilis, Aprili*.

But *Bætis, cannabis, and tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Exc. 3. Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre* or *turri*.

But *restis*, and Greek nouns which have *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Paris, -idis, -ide*.

Exc. 4. Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *familiaris, a friend; natalis, a birth-day*.

When such adjectives become proper names, they always have *e*; as, *Juvenalis, Juvenale*. Also, *affinis*, a relation, has generally *e*; as have always *juvenis*, a youth; *rudis*, a rod; and *volucris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but oftener *e*:—

Amnis,	Finis,	Occiput,	Pugil,	Tridens,
Anguis,	Fustis,	Orbis,	Rus,	Unguis,
Civis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Sors,	Vectis,
Classis,	Imber,	Postis,	Supellex,	Vesper.
Collis,	Mugilis,			

So also names of towns, denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have sometimes the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagini*, at Carthage; and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Canalis* has *i* only.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys, Atye, or Aty*.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*;—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* have *ia*; as, *caput*, *capita*; *sedile*, *sedilia*.

Some Greek neuters have *e* in the nominative plural; as, *melos*; nom plural, *mele*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nubes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*; *vis*, *virium*.

Exc. *Strues*, *vates*, *canis*, *juvenis*, *mugilis*, *panis*, *strigilis*, have *um*. Also *sedes* and *mensis* sometimes, and *apis* and *volucris* generally, have *um*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx* and *ops* (obsolete) have *um*.

The following, also, have *ium*:—*mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, *nix*, *nox*, *strix*, *dos*, generally *fraus* and *mus*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*; as, *cliens*, *clientium*; *Arpīnas*, *Arpinatium*.

Other nouns in *as* have sometimes *ium*; as, *ætas*, *ætātium* *Pendēs* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*caro*, *linter*, *uter*, *venter*, *Samnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax*, *lar*, *palus*, and *radix*, have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Thraz*, *Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātōn*; *Metamorphōsis*, *-eōn*.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REMARK 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *manes*, *manium*; *celites*, *celitum*; as if from *manis* and *celes*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturnaliūm*; but these have sometimes *ōrum* after the second declension. *Celites* has sometimes *celituum*.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bobus* and *bubus*, by contraction for *bovibus*; *ans* has *subus* for *subibus*.



Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poemātis*, or *poemafibus*.

The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *herōidis*, *herōisi*, or *herōisin*.

### ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *es*, *a*, or *ia*.

Exc. 1. Masculine and feminine nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, have sometimes in the accusative plural *eis*, or *is*, instead of *es*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis* or *partis*.

Exc. 2. When the accusative singular of nouns not neuter ends in *a*, the accusative plural ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampāda*, *lampādas*.

*Jupiter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> Ju'-pī-ter,	<i>N.</i> vis,	vi'-res,
<i>G.</i> Jo'-vis,	<i>G.</i> vis,	vir'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> Jo'-vi,	<i>D.</i> —	vir'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> Jo'-vem,	<i>Ac.</i> vim,	vi'-res,
<i>V.</i> Ju'-pī-ter,	<i>V.</i> vis,	vi'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> Jo'-ve.	<i>Ab.</i> vi.	vir'-ī-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
<i>S.</i>	Lampas,	{ -ādis, -ādos, }	-ādi,	{ -ādem, -āda, }	-as,	-āde.
<i>Pl.</i>	-ādes,	-ādum,	-adībus,	{ -ādes, -ādas, }	-ādes,	-adībus.
<i>S.</i>	Heros,	-ō,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
<i>Pl.</i>	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oībus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oībus.
	Chelys,	{ -ŷis, -ŷos, }	-ŷi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ŷe or y.
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -īos, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ēa, }	-es,	-e.
	Orpheus,	-ēos,	-ēi,	-ēa,	-eu,	—
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ēri,	-ēra,	-er,	-ēre.
	Dido,	-ūs,	-o,	-o,	-o,	-o.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .		Cornu, <i>a horn</i> .	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> fruc'-tus,	fruc'-tus,	<i>N.</i> cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
<i>G.</i> fruc'-tûs,	fruc'-tu-um,*	<i>G.</i> cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-um,
<i>D.</i> fruc'-tu-i,*	fruc'-tî-bus,	<i>D.</i> cor'-nu,	cor'-nî-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> fruc'-tum,	fruc'-tus,	<i>Ac.</i> cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
<i>V.</i> fruc'-tas,	fruc'-tus,	<i>V.</i> cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
<i>Ab.</i> fruc'-tu.	fruc'-tî-bus.	<i>Ab.</i> cor'-nu.	cor'-nî-bus.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, <i>a song</i> .	Fluc'-tus, <i>a wave</i> .	Se-na'-tus, <i>the senate</i> .
Cur'-rus, <i>a chariot</i> .	Luc'-tus, <i>grief</i> .	Ge'-lu, <i>ice</i> .
Exer'-ci-tus, <i>an army</i> .	Mo'-tus, <i>motion</i> .	Ve'-ru, <i>a spit</i> .

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, <i>a needle</i> .	Ficus, <i>a fig</i> .	Porticus, <i>a gallery</i> .
Domus, <i>a house</i> .	Manus, <i>a hand</i> .	Tribus, <i>a tribe</i> .

The plurals *quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *idus*, the ides, are also feminine.

*Penus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine.

*Specus*, a den, is very rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification. See § 29, 1 and 2.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. 1. *Domus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> Do'-mus,	do'-mus,
<i>G.</i> do'-mûs, or do'-mi,	dom'-u-um, or do-mû'-rîum,
<i>D.</i> dom'-u-i, or do'-mo,	dom'-î-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> do'-mum,	do'-mus, or do'-mos,
<i>V.</i> do'-mus,	do'-mus,
<i>Ab.</i> do'-mo.	dom'-î-bus.

\* Pronounced fruc'-yu-i, or fruc'-tshu-i, &c. § 20. Exc. (c.)

*Domus*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domi* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, in some copies of Livy, and in ancient inscriptions.

*Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *figus*, a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Penus* is sometimes of the third.

Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*.

REMARK. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	Plural.
N. Fructus,	fructues, -us,
G. fructuis, -ūs,	fructuum, -ūm,
D. fructui, -u,	fructuibus, -ūbus, or -ibus,
Ac. fructuem, -um,	fructues, -us,
V. fructus,	fructues, -us,
Ab. fructue, -u.	fructuibus, -ūbus, or -ibus.

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senāti*.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *ūm* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acus, a needle.	Lacus, a lake.	Specus, a den.
Arcus, a bow.	Partus, a birth.	Tribus, a tribe.
Artus, a joint.	Pecu, a flock.	

*Genu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *veru*, a spit, have *ibus* or *ūbus*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

Res, a thing.		Dies, a day.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. res,	res,	N. di'-es,	di'-es,
G. re'-i,	re'-rum,	G. di-ē'-i,	di-ē'-rum,
D. re'-i,	re'-bus,	D. di-ē'-i,	di-ē'-bus,
Ac. rem,	res,	Ac. di'-em,	di'-es,
V. res,	res,	V. di'-es,	di'-es,
Ab. re.	re'-bus.	Ab. di'-e.	di-ē'-bus.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

*Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *e*; as, *die* for *diēt*. The genitive is sometimes also found in *ii* and *es*; as, *perniciēs*, gen. *pernicii* for *perniciēs*; *rabies*, gen. *rabies*, Lucr. *Plebes* has *plebei* or *plebi*.

REMARK 1. There are only fifty-seven nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plebes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, and *quies*, which are of the third declension, and *requies*, which is of the third and fifth.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	res-pub'-li-ca,	res-pub'-li-cæ,	
G.	re-i-pub'-li-cæ,	re-rum-pub-li-ca'-rum,	
D.	re-i-pub'-li-cæ,	re-bus-pub'-li-cis,	
Ac.	rem-pub'-li-cam,	res-pub'-li-cas,	
V.	res-pub'-li-ca,	res-pub'-li-cæ,	
Ab.	re-pub'-li-câ.	re-bus-pub'-li-cis.	

  

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	
G.	ju-ri-ju-ran'-di,		
D.	ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,		
Ac.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	
V.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da.	
Ab.	ju-re-ju-ran'-do.		

  

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,		
G.	ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,		
D.	ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,		
Ac.	ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,		
V.	ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,		
Ab.	ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, &c.		

NOTE. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

## I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender or declension, or in both. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

*Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; such are,

Avernus,	Ismārus,	Mœnālus,	Tænārus,
Dindymus,	Massicus,	Pangæus,	Tartārus,
			Taygētus.

Plural, *Averna*, &c.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as, *jocus*, a jest; plur. *joci*, or *joca*;—*locus*, a place; plur. *loci*, passages in books, topics; *loca*, places;—*sestertius*, a sesterce; plur. *sestertii*, or *sestertia*.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *carbāsus*, a sail; plur. *carbāsa*;—*Hierosolyma*, -æ, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolyma*, -ōrum;—*margarita*, -æ, a pearl; plur. *margarita*, -ōrum;—*ostrea*, -æ, an oyster; plur. *ostrea*, -ōrum;—*Pergāmus*; plur. *Pergāma*.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as, *cælum*, heaven; plur. *cæli*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Arges*; plur. *Argi*.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as, *frænum*, a bridle; plur. *fræni* or *fræna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres*, or *pugillaria*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as, *epulum*, a feast; plur. *epulæ*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balneæ*, rarely *balnea*;—*nundinum*, a market-day; plur. *nundinæ*, a fair.

7. Neuter in the singular, and feminine or neuter in the plural; as, *labium*, a lip; plur. *labiæ*, and *labia*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as, *jugërum*, an acre; gen. *jugëri*, or *jugëris*; abl. *jugëre*; plur., nom., and acc. *jugëra*; gen. *jugërum*; abl. *jugëris* and *jugeribus*, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural;

as, *vas*, a vessel; plur. *vasa*, *orum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliŕum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vasa*, *-orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, *-i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas*, *vasis*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

### § 94. Nouns are defective either in case or number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are nouns in *u* in the singular; as, *cornu*, a horn: most nouns in *i*: foreign words: *semis*, a half: *git*, a seed: *cepe*, an onion: the singular of *mille*, a thousand: words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination: and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*; if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case:—

Abactus, <i>acc. pl.</i> ; a driving away.	Cœlite, <i>abl.</i> ; <i>pl.</i> entire; inhabitants of heaven.
Accŕtu, <i>abl.</i> ; a calling for.	Commutatum, <i>acc.</i> ; an alteration.
Admissu, <i>abl.</i> ; admission.	Compēdis, <i>gen.</i> ; compēde, <i>abl.</i> ; a fetter;— <i>pl.</i> compēdes, <i>-ium, -ibus</i> .
Admonŕtu, <i>abl.</i> ; admonition.	Concessu, <i>abl.</i> ; permission.
<i>Æs</i> , not used in <i>gen. pl.</i>	Condiscipulatu, <i>abl.</i> ; companion-ship at school.
Affatu, <i>abl.</i> ; an addressing;— <i>pl.</i> affatus, <i>-ibus</i> .	Cratim, or <i>-em, acc.</i> ; <i>-e, abl.</i> ; a hur- dle;— <i>pl.</i> crates, <i>-ium, -ibus</i> .
Algu, <i>nom.</i> ; algu, <i>acc.</i> ; algu, or <i>-o, abl.</i> ; cold.	Daps, <i>nom.</i> , scarcely used; dapis, <i>gen. &amp;c.</i> ; a feast.
Ambage, <i>abl.</i> ; a winding story;— <i>pl.</i> ambages, <i>-ibus</i> .	Datu, <i>abl.</i> ; a giving.
Amissum, <i>acc.</i> ; a loss.	Derisui, <i>dat.</i> ; <i>-um, acc.</i> ; <i>-u, abl.</i> ; ridicule.
Aplustre, <i>nom. and acc.</i> ; the flag of a ship;— <i>pl.</i> aplustria, or aplustra.	Despicatui, <i>dat.</i> ; contempt.
Arbitratus, <i>nom.</i> ; <i>-um, acc.</i> ; <i>-u, abl.</i> ; judgment.	Dica, <i>nom.</i> ; dicam, <i>acc.</i> ; a legal process;— <i>dicas, acc. pl.</i>
Arcessitu, <i>abl.</i> ; a sending for.	Dicis, <i>gen.</i> ; as, <i>dicis gratia</i> , for form's sake.
Astu, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; a city.	Ditiŕnis, <i>gen.</i> ; <i>-i, dat.</i> ; <i>-em, acc.</i> ; <i>-e, abl.</i> ; power.
Astus, <i>nom.</i> ; astu, <i>abl.</i> ; craft;— <i>astus, acc. pl.</i>	Diu, <i>abl.</i> ; in the day time.
Cacoethes, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; an evil custom;— <i>cacoethe, nom. pl.</i> ; <i>-e, and -es, acc. pl.</i>	Divisui, <i>dat.</i> ; a dividing.
Cetus, <i>acc.</i> ; a whale;— <i>cete, nom. and acc. pl.</i>	Ebur, ivory;—not used in the <i>gen., dat., and abl. pl.</i>
Chaos, <i>nom., acc.</i> ; chao, <i>abl.</i> ; chaos;—but, signifying a deity, Chaon, <i>acc.</i> [looking around.	Efflagitatu, <i>abl.</i> ; importunity.
Circumspectus, <i>nom.</i> ; <i>-um</i> ; <i>-u</i> ; a Coactu, <i>abl.</i> ; constraint.	Ejectus, <i>nom.</i> ; a throwing out.
	Epos, <i>acc.</i> ; an epic poem.
	Ergo, <i>abl.</i> ; for the sake.

- Evectus, *nom.*; a conveyance.  
 Fœx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*,  
*dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Fas, *nom.*, *acc.*; right.  
 Fauces, *abl.*; the throat;—*pl. fauces*,  
*-ibus*.  
 Fax, a torch, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fēminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; the  
 thigh;—*pl. fēmina*, -*ibus*.  
 Flictus, *abl.*; a striking.  
 Foris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc.*;  
 -e, *abl.*; a door;—*pl. fores*, -*ibus*.  
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*;  
 -te, *abl.*; chance.  
 Frustratui, *abl.*; a deceiving.  
 Frux, fruit, *nom.*, scarcely used;—  
*frugis*, *gen.*, &c.  
 Gausāpe, *nom.*, *acc.*, *abl.*; a rough  
 garment;—*gausāpa*, *acc. pl.*  
 Glos, *nom.*, *voc.*; a husband's sister.  
 Grates, *acc. pl.*;—*gratibus*, *abl.*;  
*thanks*.  
 Hiems, winter, not used in *gen.*,  
*dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Hippomānes, *nom.*  
 Hir, *nom.* and *acc.*; the palm of the  
 hand.  
 Hortatu, *abl.*; an exhorting;—*pl.*  
*hortatibus*.  
 Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a shock;—*pl.*  
*impetibus*.  
 Inconsultu, *abl.*; without advice.  
 Incītas, or -a, *acc. pl.*; as, *ad incītas*  
*redactus*, reduced to a strait.  
 Indultu, *abl.*; indulgence.  
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; sacrifices  
 to the dead.  
 Inficias, *acc. pl.*; a denial; as, *ire*  
*inficias*, to deny.  
 Ingratiis, *abl. pl.*; against one's  
 will.  
 Injussu, *abl.*; without leave.  
 Inquires, *nom.*; disquiet.  
 Instar, *nom.*, *acc.*; a likeness.  
 Interdiu, *abl.*; in the day time.  
 Invitatu, *abl.*; an invitation.  
 Jovis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Joves*.  
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*;  
*derision*.  
 Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; an acre;—*pl.*  
*jugēra*, -um, -*ibus*.  
 Jussu, *abl.*; command.  
 Labes, a spot, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Lucu, *abl.*; light.  
 Ludificatui, *dat.*; a mockery.  
 Lux, light, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Mandatu, *abl.*; a command.  
 Mane, *nom.*, *acc.*; mane, or -i, *abl.*,  
*morning*.  
 Mel, honey, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*,  
 and *abl. pl.*  
 Melos, *acc.*; melody;—*mele*, *nom.*,  
*acc. pl.*  
 Metus, fear, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*,  
 and *abl. pl.*  
 Missu, *abl.*; despatch;—*pl. missus*,  
*-ibus*.  
 Monītu, *abl.*; admonition;—*pl. moni*  
*tus*.  
 Natu, *abl.*; by birth.  
 Nauci, *gen.*; as, *res nauci*, a thing  
 of no value.  
 Nefas, *nom.*, *acc.*; wickedness.  
 Nemo, nobody, wants the *voc.* and  
 the *pl.*  
 Nepenthes, *nom.*; an herb.  
 Nex, death, wants the *voc.*;—*neces*,  
*nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Nihil, or nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*;  
 -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; nothing.  
 Noctu, *abl.*; by night.  
 Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*;  
*marriage*.  
 Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or  
 -jice, *abl.*; a bolt;—*pl. obices*,  
*-jicibus*.  
 Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; an inter-  
 position;—*pl. objectus*.  
 Obtentui, *dat.*; -u, *abl.*; a pretext.  
 Opis, *gen.*; opem, *acc.*; ope, *abl.*;  
*help*;—*pl. entire*.  
 Oppositu, *abl.*; an opposing;—*pl.*  
*oppositus*.  
 Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*; need.  
 Os, the mouth, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Panāces, *nom.*; an herb.  
 Pax, peace, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Peccātu, *abl.*; sinning.  
 Pecūdīs, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*;  
 -e, *abl.*;—*pl. entire*.  
 Pelāge, *nom.*, *acc. pl.* of pelāgus;  
 the sea.  
 Permissu, *abl.*; permission.  
 Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*;  
 -u, *abl.*; a fishing.  
 Pix, pitch, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Pondo, *abl.*; in weight.  
 Preci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*;  
*prayer*;—*pl. entire*.  
 Procērem, *acc.*; a peer;—*pl. entire*.  
 Proles, offspring, wants *gen. pl.*

Relātu, <i>abl.</i> ; a relation.	Thus, not used in the <i>gen.</i> , <i>dat.</i> , and <i>abl.</i> <i>pl.</i>
Repetundarum, <i>gen. pl.</i> ; -is, <i>abl.</i> ; extortion.	Veprem, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; a brier;— <i>pl.</i> entire.
Rogātu, <i>abl.</i> ; a request.	Verbēris, <i>gen.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; a stripe;— <i>pl.</i> verbēra, -um, -ibus.
Rus, the country, wants <i>gen.</i> , <i>dat.</i> , and <i>abl. pl.</i>	Vesper, <i>nom.</i> ; -e or -i, <i>abl.</i> ; the evening.
Satias, <i>nom.</i> ; -atem, <i>acc.</i> ; -ate, <i>abl.</i> ; satiety.	Vespēra, <i>nom.</i> ; -atn, <i>acc.</i> ; -ērā, <i>abl.</i> ; the evening.
Secus, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; sex.	Vespērus, <i>nom.</i> ; -o, <i>dat.</i> ; -um, <i>acc.</i> ; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; the evening.
Situs, <i>nom.</i> ; -um, <i>acc.</i> ; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; situation;—situs, <i>nom.</i> and <i>acc. pl.</i> ; -ibus, <i>abl.</i>	Vicis, <i>gen.</i> ; -i, <i>dat.</i> ; -em, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; change;— <i>pl.</i> entire, except <i>gen.</i>
Situs, <i>nom.</i> ; -ūs, <i>gen.</i> ; -um, <i>acc.</i> ; -u, <i>abl.</i> ; rust;—situs, <i>acc. pl.</i>	Virus, <i>nom.</i> ; -i, <i>gen.</i> ; -us, <i>acc.</i> ; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; poison.
Soboles, offspring, wants <i>gen. pl.</i>	Vis, <i>nom.</i> ; vis, <i>gen.</i> ; vim, <i>acc.</i> ; vi, <i>abl.</i> ; strength;— <i>pl.</i> vires, -ium, &c.
Sol, the sun, wants <i>gen. pl.</i>	Viscus, <i>nom.</i> ; -ēris, <i>gen.</i> ; -ēre, <i>abl.</i> ; an internal organ. <i>pl.</i> viscēra, &c.
Sordis, <i>gen.</i> ; -em, <i>acc.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; filth;— <i>pl.</i> sordes, -ium, &c.	Vocātu, <i>abl.</i> ; a calling;—vocatus, <i>acc. pl.</i>
Spontis, <i>gen.</i> ; -e, <i>abl.</i> ; of one's own accord.	Volūpe, or volup', <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; pleasure.
Suppetiæ, <i>nom. pl.</i> ; -as, <i>acc.</i> ; supplies.	
Tabum, <i>nom.</i> ; -i, <i>gen.</i> ; -o, <i>abl.</i> ; gore.	
Tempe, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> , <i>voc. pl.</i> ; a vale in Thessaly.	

To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire.

For the use of the vocative, also, of many words, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a.) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of virtues, vices, arts, herbs, metals, minerals, liquors, and corn, most abstract nouns, and many others.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconitum, wolfsbane, p.	Argilla, white clay.	Carduus, a thistle.
Adorea, corn.	Avēna, oats, p.	Caro, flesh, p.
Aër, the air, p.	Balsānum, balsam, p.	Cera, wax, p.
Æs, brass, money, p.	Balaustium, the flower of a pomegranate.	Cestus, the girdle of Venus.
Æther, the sky.	Barathrum, a gulf.	Cicuta, hemlock, p.
Ævum, an age, p.	Callum, hardness of skin, p.	Cœnum, mud.
Album, an album.	Calor, heat, p.	Contagium, a contagion, p.
Allium, garlic, p.		
Amicitia, friendship, p.		



Crocum, <i>saffron</i> .	Letum, <i>death</i> .	Sabūlo, <i>gravel</i> .
Crocus, <i>saffron</i> , p.	Lignum, <i>wood</i> , p.	Sabūlum, <i>sand</i> .
Cruor, <i>blood</i> , p.	Limus, <i>mud</i> .	Sal (neut.), <i>salt</i> ; —
Cutis, <i>the skin</i> , p.	Liquor, <i>liquor</i> , p.	( <i>masc.</i> ), p.
Dilucūlum, <i>the dawn</i> .	Lues, <i>a plague</i> .	Salum, <i>the sea</i> .
Ebur, <i>ivory</i> , p.	Lutum, <i>clay</i> .	Salus, <i>safety</i> .
Electrum, <i>amber</i> , p.	Lux, <i>light</i> , p.	Sol, <i>the sun, a day</i> , p
Far, <i>corn</i> , p.	Macellum, <i>the shambles</i> .	Sanguis, <i>blood</i> .
Fel, <i>gall</i> .	Mane, <i>the morning</i> .	Scrupūlum, <i>a scruple</i> .p.
Fervor, <i>heat</i> , p.	Marmor, <i>marble</i> , p.	Senium, <i>old age</i> .
Fides, <i>faith</i> .	Mel, <i>honey</i> , p.	Siler, <i>an osier</i> .
Fimus, <i>dung</i> .	Meridies, <i>mid-day</i> .	Sināpi, <i>mustard</i> .
Fuga, <i>flight</i> , p.	Mors, <i>death</i> , p.	Siser, <i>a carrot</i> , p.
Fumus, <i>smoke</i> , p.	Munditia, <i>neatness</i> , p.	Sitis, <i>thirst</i> .
Furor, <i>madness</i> , p.	Mundus, <i>female orna-</i>	Sopor, <i>sleep</i> , p.
Galla, <i>an oak apple</i> .	ments.	Specimen, <i>an example</i> .
Gelu, <i>frost</i> .	Muscus, <i>moss</i> .	Spuma, <i>foam</i> , p.
Glarea, <i>gravel</i> .	Nectar, <i>nectar</i> .	Sulphur, <i>sulphur</i> , p.
Gloria, <i>glory</i> , p.	Nemo, <i>no man</i> .	Supellex, <i>furniture</i> .
Glastum, <i>wood</i> .	Nequitia, <i>wickedness</i> , p.	Tabes, <i>a consumption</i> .
Gluten, <i>or</i>	Nihil, nil, nihīlum, <i>no-</i>	Tabum, <i>gore</i> .
Glutinum, <i>glue</i> .	thing.	Tellus, <i>the earth</i> .
Gypsum, <i>white plaster</i> .	Nitrum, <i>nitre</i> .	Terror, <i>terror</i> , p.
Hepar, <i>the liver</i> .	Oblivio, <i>forgetfulness</i> , p.	Thymum, <i>thyme</i> , p.
Hesperus, <i>the evening</i>	Omasum, <i>fat tripe</i> .	Tribūlus, <i>a thistle</i> , p.
star.	Opium, <i>opium</i> .	Tristitia, <i>sadness</i> , p.
Hilum, <i>the black speck</i>	Palea, <i>chaff</i> , p.	Ver, <i>spring</i> .
of a bean.	Pax, <i>peace</i> , p.	Verbena, <i>vervain</i> , p.
Hordeum, <i>barley</i> , p.	Penum, <i>and</i>	Vespera, <i>the evening</i> .
Humus, <i>the ground</i> .	Penus, <i>provisions</i> .	Veternum, <i>and</i>
Indoles, <i>the disposition</i> .	Piper, <i>pepper</i> .	Veternus, <i>lethargy</i> .
Ira, <i>anger</i> , p.	Pix, <i>pitch</i> , p.	Vigor, <i>strength</i> , p.
Jubar, <i>a sunbeam</i> .	Pontus, <i>the sea</i> .	Vinum, <i>wine</i> , p.
Jus, <i>justice, law</i> , p.	Prolubium, <i>debauchery</i> .	Virus, <i>poison</i> .
Justitium, <i>a law vaca-</i>	Pubes, <i>the youth</i> .	Viscum, <i>and</i>
tion.	Pulvis, <i>dust</i> , p.	Viscus, <i>birdlime</i> .
Lætitia, <i>joy</i> , p.	Purpura, <i>purple</i> , p.	Vitrum, <i>wood</i> .
Languor, <i>faintness</i> , p.	Quies, <i>rest</i> , p.	Vulgus, <i>the common</i>
Lardum, <i>bacon</i> , p.	Ros, <i>dew</i> , p.	people.
Latex, <i>liquor</i> , p.	Rubor, <i>redness</i> , p.	Zingiber, <i>ginger</i> .

§ 96. (b.) The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acroceraunia,	Ecbatāna,	Gemoniæ scalæ,	Susa,
Amyclæ,	Esquilæ,	Locri,	Syracusæ,
Artaxāta,	Fundi,	Parisiî,	Thermopylæ,
Athēnæ,	Gabii,	Philippi,	Veii,
Baiæ,	Gades,	Puteoli,	Venetis
Ceraunia,			

Those in *i* more properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular, and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number :—

Acta, acts.	Feris, holidays.	Multitia, garments finely wrought.
Adversaria, a memorandum-book.	Fides, a stringed instrument, <i>s</i> .	Munia, offices.
Æstiva, <i>sc.</i> castra, summer quarters.	Flabra, blasts.	Naiades, fountain nymphs, <i>s</i> .
Alpes, the Alps, <i>s</i> .	Fraga, strawberries, <i>s</i> .	Nares, the nostrils, <i>s</i> .
Annales, annals, <i>s</i> .	Fraces, the lees of oil.	Natales, parentage.
Antæ, doorposts, <i>s</i> .	Gemini, twins, <i>s</i> .	Nates, the haunches, <i>s</i> .
Antes, fore ranks.	Genæ, cheeks, <i>s</i> .	Nomæ, corroding sores, <i>s</i> .
Antis, a forelock.	Gerræ, trifles.	Nonæ, the nones of a month.
Apinæ, trifles.	Grates, thanks.	Nugæ, trifles.
Argutis, witticisms, <i>s</i> .	Habonæ, reins, <i>s</i> .	Nundinæ, a fair, a mart.
Arma, arms.	Hyades, the Hyades, <i>s</i> .	Nuptis, a marriage.
Artus, the joints, <i>s</i> .	Hyberna, <i>sc.</i> castra, winter quarters.	Oblivia, forgetfulness, <i>s</i> .
Bellaria, sweetmeats.	Idus, the ides of a month.	Officiæ, cheats, <i>s</i> .
Bigæ, a two-horse chariot, <i>s</i> .	Ilia, the flank.	Optimates, nobles, <i>s</i> .
Braccæ, breeches.	Incunabula, a cradle.	Pandectæ, pandects.
Branchis, the gills of a fish.	Indutiæ, a truce.	Palearia, the dewlap, <i>s</i> .
Brevia, shallow places.	Induviæ, clothes.	Parietinæ, old walls.
Calendæ, Calends.	Ineptis, silly wit, <i>s</i> .	Partes, a party.
Cancelli, balustrades.	Inferi, the gods below.	Pascua, pastures, <i>s</i> .
Cani, gray hairs.	Inferis, sacrifices to the dead.	Penates, household gods, <i>s</i> .
Cassæ, a hunter's net, <i>s</i> .	Insecta, insects.	Phalære, trappings, <i>s</i> .
Caulæ, sheep-folds.	Insidiæ, snares.	Philtra, love potions.
Celæres, light horse.	Iusta, funeral rites.	Pleiades, the seven stars, <i>s</i> .
Cœlites, the gods, <i>s</i> .	Lactes, small entrails.	Posteri, posterity.
Cibaria, victuals.	Lamenta, lamentations.	Præbia, an amulet.
Clitellæ, panniers.	Lapidinæ, a stone-quarry.	Præcordia, the parts about the heart.
Codicilli, writings.	Latebræ, lurking places, <i>s</i> .	Primitis, first fruits.
Crepundia, baubles.	Laurices, young rabbits.	Procères, nobles, <i>s</i> .
Cunabula, and	Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.	Pugillaria, or -ares, a note-book, <i>s</i> .
Cunæ, a cradle.	Lemures, hobgoblins.	Quadrigæ, a four horse chariot, <i>s</i> .
Cyclades, the Cycladian islands, <i>s</i> .	Lendes, nits.	Quirites, citizens of Rome, <i>s</i> .
Decimæ, tithes, <i>s</i> .	Liberi, children, <i>s</i> .	Quisquilis, refuse.
Diræ, the Furies, <i>s</i> .	Lucères, a tribe of the Romans.	Reliquis, a remainder, <i>s</i> .
Divitiæ, riches.	Magalia, cottages.	Salebræ, rugged places, <i>s</i> .
Druides, the Druids.	Majores, ancestors, <i>s</i> .	Salinæ, a salt pit.
Dryades, the Dryads, <i>s</i> .	Manes, the shades, <i>s</i> .	Scalæ, a ladder, <i>s</i> .
Epulæ, a banquet, <i>s</i> .	Manubis, spoils of war.	Scatebræ, a spring, <i>s</i> .
Eumenides, the Furies, <i>s</i> .	Mapalia, huts, <i>s</i> .	
Excubis, watches.	Minaciæ, and	
Exequis, funeral rites.	Minæ, threats.	
Extæ, entrails.	Minores, successors.	
Exuvis, spoils.	Mœnia, the walls of a city.	
Facetis, pleasant sayings, <i>s</i> .		

Scopæ, <i>a broom.</i>	Tenebræ, <i>darkness.</i>	Utensilia, <i>utensils.</i>
Scruta, <i>old clothes.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>	Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>
Sentes, <i>thorns, s.</i>	Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>	Vepres, <i>brambles, s.</i>
Sponsalia, <i>espousals.</i>	Tormina, <i>colic pains.</i>	Vergiliæ, <i>the seven stars.</i>
Stativa, sc. castra, <i>a pitched camp.</i>	Transtra, <i>seats for rowers, s.</i>	Vindiciæ, <i>a claim of liberty.</i>
Supëri, <i>the gods above.</i>	Tricæ, <i>trifles, toys.</i>	Virgulta, <i>bushes.</i>
Talaria, <i>winged shoes.</i>		

§ 97. The following differ in meaning in the different numbers :—

Ædes, -is, <i>a temple.</i>	Fala, <i>a trick.</i>	Mos, <i>custom.</i>
Ædes, -ium, <i>a house.</i>	Falæ, <i>scaffolding.</i>	Mores, <i>manners.</i>
Auxilium, <i>aid.</i>	Fastus, -ūs, <i>pride.</i>	Opis, gen. <i>help.</i>
Auxilia, <i>auxiliary troops.</i>	Fastus, -uum, <i>and</i>	Opes, -um, <i>power, wealth.</i>
Bonum, <i>a good thing.</i>	Fasti, -ōrum, <i>a calendar.</i>	Opëra, <i>labor.</i>
Bona, <i>property.</i>	Finis, <i>an end.</i>	Opëræ, <i>workmen.</i>
Carcer, <i>a prison.</i>	Fines, <i>boundaries.</i>	Plaga, <i>a climate.</i>
Carcëres, <i>a goal.</i>	Fortuna, <i>Fortune.</i>	Plagæ, <i>nets, toils.</i>
Castrum, <i>a castle.</i>	Fortunæ, <i>wealth.</i>	Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>
Castra, <i>a camp.</i>	Furfur, <i>bran.</i>	Principia, <i>the general's quarters.</i>
Comitium, <i>a part of the Roman forum.</i>	Furfures, <i>dandruff.</i>	Rostrum, <i>a beak.</i>
Comitia, <i>an assembly for election.</i>	Gratia, <i>favor.</i>	Rostra, <i>a pulpit or tribunal.</i>
Cupedia, -æ, <i>delicacy.</i>	Gratiæ, <i>thanks.</i>	Rus, <i>the country.</i>
Cupediæ, -arum, <i>and</i>	Impedimentum, <i>a hinderance.</i>	Rura, <i>fields.</i>
Cupedia, -ōrum, <i>dainties.</i>	Impedimenta, <i>baggage.</i>	Sal, <i>salt.</i>
Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Litëra, <i>a letter of the alphabet.</i>	Sales, <i>witticisms.</i>
Copiæ, <i>forces.</i>	Litëræ, <i>an epistle.</i>	Torus, <i>a bed, a cord.</i>
Facultas, <i>ability.</i>	Lustrum, <i>a space of five years.</i>	Tori, <i>brauony muscles.</i>
Facultates, <i>wealth.</i>	Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>	

§ 98. The following plurals are sometimes used for the singular :—

Alta, <i>the sea.</i>	Guttūra, <i>the throat.</i>	Ortus, <i>a rising, the east.</i>
Animi, <i>courage.</i>	Hymenæi, <i>marriage.</i>	Otia, <i>ease, leisure.</i>
Auræ, <i>the air.</i>	Jejunia, <i>fasting.</i>	Pectōra, <i>the breast.</i>
Carinæ, <i>a keel.</i>	Ignes, <i>love.</i>	Rictus, <i>the jaws.</i>
Cervices, <i>the neck.</i>	Inguina, <i>the groin.</i>	Robōra, <i>oak, strength.</i>
Colla, <i>the neck.</i>	Jubæ, <i>a mane.</i>	Silentia, <i>silence.</i>
Comæ, <i>the hair.</i>	Limina, <i>a threshold.</i>	Sinus, <i>the breast of a Roman garment.</i>
Connubia, <i>marriage.</i>	Litōra, <i>a shore.</i>	Tædæ, <i>a torch.</i>
Corda, <i>the heart.</i>	Mensæ, <i>a service or course of dishes.</i>	Tempōra, <i>time.</i>
Corpōra, <i>a body.</i>	Næniæ, <i>a funeral dirge.</i>	Thalami, <i>marriage, or marriage-bed.</i>
Crepusculā, <i>twilight.</i>	Numina, <i>the divinity.</i>	Thura, <i>frankincense.</i>
Currus, <i>a chariot.</i>	Odia, <i>hatred.</i>	Tori, <i>a bed, a couch.</i>
Exilia, <i>banishment.</i>	Ora, <i>the mouth, the countenance.</i>	Via, <i>a journey.</i>
Frigōra, <i>cold.</i>	Oræ, <i>confines.</i>	Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>
Gaudia, <i>joy.</i>		
Gramina, <i>grass.</i>		

## III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbos*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.

2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ūs*; a laurel.

3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.

4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, *-æ*, and *senectus*, *-ūtis*; old age.

5. In termination and gender; as, *pilcus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.

6. In declension and gender; as, *penus*, *-ūs*, masc., and *penus*, *-ōris*, neut.; a store of provisions.

7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, *-æ*, fem., and *mendum*, *-i*, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

*Abusio*, and *-us*, *-is*, an abuse.  
*Acinus*, and *-um*, a grape-stone.  
*Adagium*, and *-io*, a proverb.  
*Admonitio*, and *-us*, *-is*, an advising.  
*Æthra*, and *Æther*, the clear sky.  
*Affectio*, and *-us*, *-is*, affection.  
*Agamemno*, and *-on*, *Agamemnon*.  
*Alabaster*, *-tri*, and *-trum*, an alabaster box.  
*Alimonia*, and *-um*, aliment.  
*Alluvio*, and *-es*, a flood.  
*Alvearium*, and *-are*, a bee-hive.  
*Amarācus*, and *-um*, sweet marjoram.  
*Anfractum*, and *-us*, *-is*, a winding.  
*Angiportum*, and *-us*, *-is*, a narrow way.  
*Antidōtus*, and *-um*, an antidote.  
*Aranea*, and *-us*, a spider.  
*Arar*, and *-āris*, the river Arar.  
*Arbor*, and *-os*, a tree.  
*Architectus*, and *-on*, an architect.  
*Attāgena*, and *-gen*, a woodcock.  
*Avaritia*, and *-ies*, avarice.  
*Augmentum*, and *-men*, increase.  
*Baccar*, and *-āris*, a kind of herb.  
*Baculus*, and *-um*, a staff.  
*Balteus*, and *-um*, a belt.

*Barbaria*, and *-ies*, barbarism.  
*Barbitus*, and *-on*, a harp.  
*Batillus*, and *-um*, a fire shovel.  
*Blanditia*, and *-ies*, flattery.  
*Buccīna*, and *-um*, a trumpet.  
*Bura*, and *-is*, a plough-tail.  
*Buxus*, and *-um*, the box-tree.  
*Calamister*, *-tri*, and *-trum*, a crimping-pin.  
*Callus*, and *-um*, hardness of the skin.  
*Cancer*, *-ēri*, or *-ēris*, a crab.  
*Canitia*, and *-ies*, hoariness.  
*Capus*, and *Capo*, a capon.  
*Cassīda*, and *Cassis*, a helmet.  
*Catinus*, and *-um*, a platter.  
*Cepa*, and *-e*, an onion.  
*Chirographus*, and *-um*, a hand writing.  
*Cingula*, *-us*, and *-um*, a girdle.  
*Clypeus*, and *-um*, a shield.  
*Cochlearium*, *-ar*, and *-are*, a spoon.  
*Colluvio*, and *-ies*, filth.  
*Commentarius*, and *-um*, a journal.  
*Compāges*, and *-o*, a joining.  
*Conātum*, and *-us*, *-is*, an attempt.  
*Concinnitas*, and *-itudo*, neatness.  
*Consortium*, and *-io*, partnership.

- Contagium, -io, and -es, *contact*.  
 Cornus, -i, or -ūs, a *cornel-tree*.  
 Costus, and -um, a *kind of shrub*.  
 Crocus, and -um, *saffron*.  
 Crystallus, and -um, *crystal*.  
 Cubitus, and -um, a *cubit*.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, *desire*.  
 Cupressus, -i, or -ūs, a *cypress-tree*.  
 Culeus, and -um, a *leathern bag*.  
 Delicia, and -um, a *delight*.  
 Delphinus, and Delphin, a *dolphin*.  
 Desidia, and -es, *sloth*.  
 Dictamnus, and -um, *dittany*.  
 Diluvium, and -ies, a *deluge*.  
 Domus, -i, or -ūs, a *house*.  
 Dorsus, and -um, *the back*.  
 Duritia, and -ies, *hardness*.  
 Ebēnus, and -um, *ebony*.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an *image*.  
 Elegeia, and -us, an *elegy*.  
 Elephantus, and -phas, an *elephant*.  
 Essēda, and -um, a *chariot*.  
 Evander, -dri, and -drus, *Evander*.  
 Eventum, and -us, -ūs, an *event*.  
 Exemplar, and -are, a *copy*.  
 Ficus, -i, or -ūs, a *fig-tree*.  
 Fimur, and -um, *dung*.  
 Fretum, and -us, -ūs, a *strait*.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, *lightning*.  
 Galērus, and -um, a *hat*.  
 Ganea, and -um, a *subterraneous room*.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, -ēri, a *bunch*.  
 Glomus, -i, or -ēris, a *ball of thread*.  
 Glutinum, and -ten, *glue*.  
 Gobius, and -io, a *gudgeon*.  
 Gruis, and Grus, a *crane*.  
 Hebdomāda, and -mas, a *week*.  
 Hellebōrus, and -um, *hellebore*.  
 Honor, and -os, *honor*.  
 Hyssōpus, and -um, *hyssop*.  
 Ilios, and -on, *Troy*.  
 Incestum, and -us, -ūs, *incest*.  
 Intibus, and -um, *endive*.  
 Jugūlus, and -um, *the throat*.  
 Juventa, -us, and -as, *youth*.  
 Labor, and -os, *labor*.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a *lizard*.  
 Laurus, -i, or -us, a *laurel*.  
 Lepor, and -os, *vit*.  
 Libraria, and -um, a *book-case*.  
 Ligur, and -us, -ūris, a *Ligurian*.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a *lupine*.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, *luxury*.  
 Mæander, -dri, and -drus, *Mæander*.  
 Materia, and -ies, *materials*.  
 Medimnus, and -um, a *measure*.  
 Menda, and -um, a *fault*.  
 Milliarium, and -are, a *mile*.  
 Modius, and -um, a *measure*.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, *softness*.  
 Momentum, and -men, *motion*.  
 Mugil, and -ilis, a *mullet*.  
 Mulciber, -ēri, or -ēris, *Vulcan*.  
 Mulctra, and -um, a *milk-pail*.  
 Munditia, and -ies, *neatness*.  
 Muria, and -ies, *brins or pickles*.  
 Myrtus, -i, or -ūs, a *myrtle*.  
 Nardus, and -um, *spikenard*.  
 Nasus, and -um, *the nose*.  
 Necessitas, and -ūdo, *necessity*.  
 Nequitia, and -ies, *wickedness*.  
 Notitia, and -ies, *knowledge*.  
 Oblivium, and -io, *forgetfulness*.  
 Obsidium, and -io, a *siege*.  
 Œdīpus, -i, or -ōdis, *Œdipus*.  
 Orpheus, -ei, or -eos, *Orpheus*.  
 Palātus, and -um, *the palate*.  
 Palumba, -es, and -us, -ūs, a *pigeon*.  
 Papyrus, and -um, *papyrus*.  
 Paupertas, and -ies, *poverty*.  
 Pavus, and -o, a *peacock*.  
 Penus, -ōris, or -ūs, and Penum, *provisions*.  
 Peplus, and -um, a *veil*.  
 Perseus, -ei, or -eos, *Perseus*.  
 Pileus, and -um, a *hat*.  
 Pinus, -i, or -ūs, a *pine-tree*.  
 Pistrina, and -um, a *bake-house*.  
 Planitia, and -ies, a *plain*.  
 Plato, and -on, *Plato*.  
 Plebs, and Plebes, -ei, *the common people*.  
 Postulātum, and -io, a *request*.  
 Præsepēs, -is, and -e, a *stable*.  
 Prætextum, and -us, -ūs, a *pretext*.  
 Prosapia, and -ies, *linage*.  
 Rapa, and -um, a *turnip*.  
 Requies, -ētis, or -ēt, *rest*.  
 Rete, and -is, a *net*.  
 Reticūlus, and -um, a *small net*.  
 Rictum, and -us, -ūs, *the mouth*.  
 Ruscus, and -um, *butcher's broom*.  
 Sævitia, and -ies, *cruelty*.  
 Sagus, and -um, a *soldier's cloak*.  
 Sanguis, and -guen, *blood*.  
 Satrapēs, and Satraps, a *satrap*.  
 Scabritia, and -ies, *roughness*.  
 Scobis, and Scobs, *sawdust*.  
 Scorpius, and -io, a *scorpion*.

Scrobis, and Scrobs, a ditch.	Tabus, and -um, gore.
Segmentum, and -men, a piece.	Tapetum, -ste, and -es, tapestry.
Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.	Teneritas, and -tudo, softness.
Senecta, and -us, old age.	Tiara, and -as, a turban.
Sensum, and -us, -ās, sense.	Tignus, and -um, a plank.
Sequester, -tri, or -tris, an umpire.	Tigris, -is, or -idis, a tiger.
Sesāma, and -um, sesame.	Titanus, and Titan, Titan.
Sibilus, and -um, a hissing.	Tonitruum, and -trus, thunder.
Sināpi, and -is, mustard.	Torale, and -al, a bed covering.
Sinus, and -um, a milk-pail.	Trabes, and Trabs, a beam.
Sparus, and -ura, a spear.	Tribula, and -um, a threshing machine.
Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.	Vespēra, -pērus, and -per, the evening.
Squalitudo, and Squalor, filthiness.	Vinaceus, and -um, a grape-stone.
Stramentum, and -men, straw.	Viscus, and -um, birdlime.
Suffimentum, and -men, a perfume.	Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.
Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit.	
Suppārus, and -um, a veil.	
Supplicium, and -icatio, a supplication.	

To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Cuma* and *Cumæ*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēnæ*; *Thebe* and *Thebæ*.

The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

I. From nouns are derived the following classes:—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

Most masculine patronymics end in *ides*; as, *Priamides*, a son of Priam; *Romulidæ*, the Romans, from their first king, *Romulus*. Those from nouns in *eus* usually contract *eides* into *ides*; as, *Atrides*, from *Atreus*. Those from nouns in *as* and *es*, of the first declension, end in *ādes*; as, *Æneādes*, from *Ænēas*; but some, from nouns of this and of other declensions, end in *iādes*; as, *Anchisiādes*, from *Anchises*, *Abantiādes*, from *Abas*.

To masculine patronymics in *ides*, *eides*, *ades*, and *iādes*, correspond feminines in *is*, *eis*, *as*, and *ias*; as, *Tyndāris*, the daughter of *Tyndārus*; *Nereis*, the daughter of *Nereus*; *Thesias*, the daughter of *Thestius*; *Æetias*, the daughter of *Æetes*.

A feminine in *ine* is also found; as, *Nerine*, from *Nereus*.

Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country, and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as, *Tros*, a Trojan man; *Troas*, a Trojan woman; *Macēdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Troja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *homo*, *civis*, &c.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive.

Diminutives generally end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter. These terminations are usually added either to the nominative or to the root of the primitive: commonly *ū* or *cū* is inserted before them; as, *adolescentūlus*, a very young man, from *adolescens*, a youth; *arūla*, a little altar, from *ara*; *scutūlum*, a little shield, from *scutum*; *fratercūlus*, *muliercūla*, *opuscūlum*, from *frater*, *mulier*, and *opus*.

In some, *ō* is inserted instead of *ū*; as, *filīōlus*, from *filius*.

A few diminutives end in *leus*; as, *equuleus*, from *equus*, a horse.

Sometimes the root of the primitive is variously modified; as, *homuncūlus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, from *homo*, *asīnus*, and *liber*.

Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as, *ranuncūlus*, *scamillus*, from *rana* and *scamnum*.

4. *Amplificatives* are personal appellations, denoting an excess of what is expressed by their primitives; as, *capito*, one who has a large head, from *caput*, the head; *naso*, one who has a large nose, from *nasus*, the nose.

5. The termination *ium* or *itium*, added to the root of a noun, indicates an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive, or their office or employment; as, *collegium*, an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, a collection of servants; *sacerdotium*, the priesthood; *ministerium*, a ministry; from *collēga*, *servus*, *sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting that which gives to the primitives their character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; *vadimonium*, obligation; from *testis* and *vas* (*vadis*).

7. The termination *ētum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercētum*, *laurētum*, from *quercus*, an oak, and *laurus*, a laurel.

But some are irregular ; as, *arbustum*, *salictum* ; from *arbo*s, a tree, and *salix*, a willow.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes the place where the things signified by the primitive are kept ; as, *aviarium*, *plantarium* ; from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, also, added to the root of words denoting animals, marks the place where they are kept ; as, *bo-vile*, *caprile*, *ovile* ; from *bos*, an ox, *caper*, a goat, and *ovis*, a sheep.

This and the preceding class are properly neuter adjectives.

§ 101. II. From adjectives are derived the following forms of abstract nouns. See § 26.

1. The terminations *itas*, *ia*, *itūdo*, and *ēdo*, are added to the root of the primitive ; as, *cupīditas*, desire ; *audacia*, boldness ; *magnitūdo*, greatness ; *albēdo*, whiteness ; from *cupīdus*, *audax*, *magnus*, and *albus*.

So *atrocitas*, *crudelitas*, from *atrox* and *crudelis* ; *concordia*, *perfidia*, from *concor*s and *perfidus* ; *similitūdo*, *longitūdo*, from *similis* and *longus* ; *dulcēdo*, *pinguēdo*, from *dulcis* and *pinguis*.

When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *ētas* ; as, *piētas*, piety ; *anxiētas*, anxiety ; from *pīus* and *anxius*.

*Libertas*, liberty, is contracted from *liberitas* ; and *difficultas*, difficulty, from *difficilitas*.

A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus*, instead of *itas* ; as, *servitus*, slavery ; *juventus*, youth ; from *servus* and *juvēnis*.

Instead of *ia*, some adjectives in *us* add *itia*, or *ities*, to the root ; as, *avaritia*, avarice ; *justitia*, justice ; from *avārus* and *justus* ;—*durities*, hardness ; *savities*, cruelty ; from *durus* and *savus*.

*Consuetūdo*, custom, and *mansuetūdo*, mildness, omit *it* in the termination, as their root ends in *t*.

2. A few adjectives form abstracts in *imonia* ; as, *acrimonia*, tartness ; *sanctimonia*, sanctity ; from *acer* and *sanctus*.

Abstracts are sometimes formed from the same adjective with different terminations ; as, *claritas* and *claritūdo*, from *clarus*.

Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

§ 102. III. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. The termination *or*, added to the first root of a verb, espe-



cially of a neuter verb, denotes the action or state of the verb abstractly; as, *amor*, love; *favor*, favor; *mæror*, grief; *splendor*, brightness; from *amo*, *faveo*, *mæreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. From many verbs abstracts are formed by adding *ium* to the first root; as, *colloquium*, a conference; *gaudium*, joy; *exordium*, a beginning; from *collöquor*, *gaudeo*, and *exordior*.

Some words of this class are formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of the verb, into *ium*; as, *exitium*, destruction; *solatium*, consolation; from *exeo* (*exitu*) and *solor* (*solātu*).

3. Some verbals are formed by adding *ēla*, *imonia*, or *imonium*, to the first root of the verb; as, *loquēla*, speech; *querēla*, a complaint; *suadēla*, persuasion; from *loquor*, *queror*, and *suadeo*; —*alimonia* and *alimonium*, nutriment, from *alo*; —*querimonia*, a complaint, from *queror*.

4. The termination *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denotes a means for the performance of the action of the verb; as, *documentum*, a means of teaching; from *doceo*. So *blandimentum*, *experimentum*, *ornamentum*, from *blandior*, *experior*, and *orno*.

The termination *men* has sometimes a similar signification; as, *tegmen*, a covering; from *tego*.

Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use; as, *atramentum*, *capillamentum*, &c.

5. The terminations *ūlum*, *būlum*, and *cūlum*, added to the first root of a verb, the two last with a connecting vowel, denote a means or instrument; as, *cingūlum*, a girdle; *jacūlum*, a javelin; *vehicūlum*, a vehicle; *venabūlum*, a hunting-spear; from *cingo*, *jacio*, *veho*, and *venor*.

Some words of this kind are formed from nouns; as, *acetabūlum*, a vinegar cruet; *thuribūlum*, a censer; from *acētum* and *thus*.

6. Nouns formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of the verb, into *or* and *rix*, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb; as, *adjūtor*, *adjūtrix*, an assistant; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror; from *adjuvo* (*adjūtu*), *faveo* (*fautu*), *vinco* (*victu*).

The feminine form is less common than the masculine.

Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns; as, *viātor*, a traveller; *janītor*, a door-keeper; from *via* and *janua*.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of a verb, into *io* and *us*; as, *actio*, an action;

*cautio*, caution; *lectio*, reading; from *ago* (*actu*), *caveo* (*cantu*), *lego* (*lectu*);—*cantus*, singing; *visus*, sight; *usus*, use; from *cano* (*cantu*), *video* (*visu*), *utor* (*usu*).

Nouns of both forms, and of the same signification, are frequently derived from the same verb; as, *concurso* and *concursum*, a running together; *motio* and *motus*, &c.

The termination *ra*, added to the third root of a verb, sometimes has the same signification as *io* and *us*, and sometimes denotes the result of an action; as, *positura*, position; *vinctura*, a binding together; from *pono* (*positu*), and *vincio* (*vinctu*);—*conjectura*, a conjecture; *pictura*, a picture; from *conjicio* (*conjectu*) and *pingo* (*pictu*).

One of the forms in *io*, *us*, and *ura*, is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *orium*, added to the third root of a verb, after *u* is removed, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed; as, *auditorium*, a lecture-room; *conditorium*, a repository; from *audio* and *condo*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *rupicāpra*, a wild goat, of *rupes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive; as, *senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer. In others, both parts are declined; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *facio*; *fidicen*, a harper, of *fidis* and *cano*; *agricola*, a husbandman, of *ager* and *colo*; *patricida*, a patricide, of *pater* and *cædo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepēda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pes*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK. When the former part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *ŷ*. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quinquennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nefas*, wickedness; *nemo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *homo*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *incuria*, want of care, of

*in* and *cura*. So *intervallum*, the space between the ramparts; *præcordia*, the vitals; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a seat; *superficies*, a surface.

When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *immortalitas*, *imprudentia*.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Quality; as, *bonus*, good; *albus*, white.
2. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *totus*, the whole.
3. Matter; as, *abiegnus*, made of fir; *aureus*, golden.
4. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday.
5. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicinus*, near.
6. Relation; as, *amicus*, friendly; *aptus*, fit.
7. Number; as, *unus*, one; *secundus*, second. These are called *numerals*.
8. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *paternus*, of a father. These are called *possessives*.
9. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpinas*, of Arpinum. These are called *patrials*.
10. Part; as, *ullus*, any one; *alter*, another. These are called *partitives*.
11. Interrogation; as, *quantus*, how great? *qualis*, of what kind? These are called *interrogatives*; when not used interrogatively, they are called *indefinites*.
12. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
13. Amplification; as, *vinosus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

The masculine of adjectives that belong to the first and second declension, ends either in *us* or *er*. Those in *us* change *us* into *a* for the feminine, and into *um* for the neuter. Those in *er* add *a* for the feminine, and *um* for the neuter. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gener*, or *ager*; the feminine always like *musa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK. One adjective, *satur*, -*ūra*, -*ūrum*, full, ends in *ur*, and the masculine is declined like *gener*.

## 1. Bonus, good.

## Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	bo'-nus,	bo'-na,	bo'-num,
G.	bo'-ni,	bo'-næ,	bo'-ni,
D.	bo'-no,	bo'-næ,	bo'-no,
Ac.	bo'-num,	bo'-nam,	bo'-num,
V.	bo'-ne,	bo'-na,	bo'-num,
Ab.	bo'-no.	bo'-nā.	bo'-no.

## Plural.

N.	bo'-ni,	bo'-næ,	bo'-na,
G.	bo-nō'-rum,	bo-nā'-rum,	bo-nō'-rum,
D.	bo'-nis,	bo'-nis,	bo'-nis,
Ac.	bo'-nos,	bo'-nas,	bo'-na,
V.	bo'-ni,	bo'-næ,	bo'-na,
Ab.	bo'-nis.	bo'-nis.	bo'-nis.

In like manner decline

Al'-tus, high.	Fi'-dus, faithful.	Lon'-gus, long.
A-vā'-rus, covetous.	Im'-prō-bus, wicked.	Ple'-nus, full.
Be-nig'-nus, kind.	In-i'-quus, unjust.	Tac'-i-tus, silent.

Like *bonus* are also declined all participles in *us*.

## 2. Tener, tender.

## Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	te'-ner,	ten'-ē-ra,	ten'-ē-rum,
G.	ten'-ē-ri,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-ri,
D.	ten'-ē-ro,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-ro,
Ac.	ten'-ē-rum,	ten'-ē-ram,	ten'-ē-rum,
V.	te'-ner,	ten'-ē-ra,	ten'-ē-rum,
Ab.	ten'-ē-ro.	ten'-ē-rā.	ten'-ē-ro.

*Plural*

<i>N.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ri,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-ra,
<i>G.</i>	ten-e-rō'-rum,	ten-e-rā'-rum,	ten-e-rō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ris,	ten'-ĕ-ris,	ten'-ĕ-ris,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ros,	ten'-ĕ-ras,	ten'-ĕ-ra,
<i>V.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ri,	ten'-ĕ-ræ,	ten'-ĕ-ra,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ĕ-ris.	ten'-ĕ-ris.	ten'-ĕ-ris.

† In like manner are declined

<i>As'-per, rough.</i>	<i>Gib'-ber, crook-backed.</i>	<i>Mi'-ser, wretched.</i>
<i>Ex'-ter, foreign.</i>	<i>La'-cer, torn.</i>	<i>Pros'-per, prosperous.</i>
	<i>Li'-ber, free.</i>	<i>Sa'-tur, full.</i>

So also *semifer*, and the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help.

NOTE. *Exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* (except *alter*) drop the *e* in declension.

*Piger, slothful.**Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pi'-ger,	pi'-gra,	pi'-grum,
<i>G.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-gri,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-gro,	pi'-græ,	pi'-gro,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-grum,	pi'-gram,	pi'-grum,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-ger,	pi'-gra,	pi'-grum,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-gro.	pi'-grâ.	pi'-gro.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-gra,
<i>G.</i>	pi-grō'-rum,	pi-grā'-rum,	pi-grō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-gros,	pi'-gras,	pi'-gra,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-gra,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.

In like manner decline

<i>Æ'-ger, sick.</i>	<i>Ma'-cer, lean.</i>	<i>Sca'-ber, rough.</i>
<i>A'-ter, black.</i>	<i>Ni'-ger, black.</i>	<i>Si-nis'-ter, left.</i>
<i>Cre'-ber, frequent.</i>	<i>Pul'-cher, fair.</i>	<i>Te'-ter, foul.</i>
<i>Gla'-ber, smooth.</i>	<i>Ru'-ber, red.</i>	<i>Va'-fer, crafty.</i>
<i>In'-tē-ger, entire.</i>	<i>Sa'-cer, sacred.</i>	

*Dexter*, right, has *-tra*, *-trum*, or *-tēra*, *-tērum*.

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, in all the genders :—

<i>Alius, another.</i>	<i>Totus, whole.</i>	<i>Alter, -tēra, -tērum, the other.</i>
<i>Nullus, no one.</i>	<i>Ullus, any.</i>	<i>Uter, -tra, -trum, which of the two.</i>
<i>Solus, alone.</i>	<i>Unus, one.</i>	<i>Neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.</i>

To these may be added the other compounds of *uter*,—namely, *uterque*, each; *utrumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, &c.;—also, *alterūter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterūtri*. So *alterutorque*.

## EXAMPLE.

## Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	u'-nus,	u'-na,	u'-num,
<i>G.</i>	u-nī'-us,*	u-nī'-us,	u-nī'-us,
<i>D.</i>	u'-ni,	u'-ni,	u'-ni,
<i>Ac.</i>	u'-num,	u'-nam,	u'-num,
<i>V.</i>	u'-ne,	u'-na,	u'-num,
<i>Ab.</i>	u'-no.	u'-nā.	u'-no.

The plural is regular, like that of *bonus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *alius*.

2. Some of these adjectives, in ancient authors, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bonus*, *tener*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined :—

## Acer, sharp.

## Singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	a'-cer,	a'-cris,	a'-cre,
<i>G.</i>	a'-cris,	a'-cris,	a'-cris,
<i>D.</i>	a'-cri,	a'-cri,	a'-cri,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-crem	a'-crem,	a'-cre,
<i>V.</i>	a'-cer,	a'-cris,	a'-cre,
<i>Ab.</i>	a'-cri.	a'-cri.	a'-cri.

\* See § 15.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	a'-cres,	a'-cres,	a'-cri-a,
<i>G.</i>	a'-ori-um,	a'-cri-um,	a'-cri-um,
<i>D.</i>	ac'-rī-bus,	ac'-rī-bus,	ac'-rī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-cres,	a'-cres,	a'-cri-a,
<i>V.</i>	a'-cres,	a'-cres,	a'-cri-a,
<i>Ab.</i>	ac'-rī-bus.	ac'-rī-bus.	ac'-rī-bus.

In like manner are declined the following only :—

<i>Al'-ā-cer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Pa-lus'-ter, marshy.</i>	<i>Sil-ves'-ter, woody.</i>
<i>Cam-pes'-ter, of a plain.</i>	<i>Pe-des'-ter, on foot.</i>	<i>Ter-res'-ter, terrestrial.</i>
<i>Cel'-ē-ber, famous.</i>	<i>Sa-lū'-ber, wholesome.</i>	<i>Voll'-ū-cer, winged.</i>
<i>E-ques'-ter, equestrian.</i>		

*Celer, swift, has celēris, celēre; gen. celēris, &c.*

REMARK 1. The nominative singular masculine sometimes ends in *is*, like the feminine; as, *salūber*, or *salūbris*.

2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural. See § 114.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined :—

*Mitis, mild.**Singular.**Plural.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mi'-tis,	<i>N.</i>	mi'-tes,
<i>G.</i>	mi'-tis,	<i>G.</i>	mit'-i-um,*
<i>D.</i>	mi'-ti,	<i>D.</i>	mit'-i-um,
<i>Ac.</i>	mi'-ti,	<i>Ac.</i>	mit'-i-bus,
<i>V.</i>	mi'-tem,	<i>V.</i>	mit'-i-bus,
<i>Ab.</i>	mi'-te,	<i>Ab.</i>	mit'-i-a,*
	mi'-te,		mit'-i-um,
	mi'-te,		mit'-i-bus,
	mi'-ti.		mit'-i-a,
			mit'-i-a,
			mit'-i-bus.

In like manner decline

<i>Ag'-ī-lis, active.</i>	<i>Dul'-cis, sweet.</i>	<i>In-col'-ū-mis, safe.</i>
<i>Bre'-vis, short.</i>	<i>For'-tis, brave.</i>	<i>Mi-rab'-ī-lis, wonderful.</i>
<i>Cru-dē'-lis, cruel.</i>	<i>Gra'-vis, heavy.</i>	<i>Om'-nis, all.</i>

*Tres, three, is declined like the plural of mitis.*

§ 110. All comparatives except *plus*, more, are thus declined :—

*Mitior,\* milder.**Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit'-i-or,
<i>G.</i>	mit'-i-ō-ris,
<i>D.</i>	mit'-i-ō-ri,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit'-i-ō-ri,
<i>V.</i>	mit'-i-rem,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit'-i-or,
	mit'-i-ō-re, or ri.
	mit'-i-ō-us, or ri.

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-um*, &c. See § 12.

*Plural.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit-i-ō'-res,	mit-i-ō'-ra,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rum,	mit-i-ō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-or'-ī-bus,	mit-i-or'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-res,	mit-i-ō'-ra,
<i>V.</i>	mit-i-ō'-res,	mit-i-ō'-ra,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-or'-ī-bus.	mit-i-or'-ī-bus.

In like manner decline

Al'-ti-or, <i>higher.</i>	Fe-lic'-i-or, <i>happier.</i>	Pru-den'-ti-or, <i>more prudent.</i>
Bre'-vi-or, <i>shorter.</i>	For'-ti-or, <i>braver.</i>	
Cru-de'-li-or, <i>more cruel.</i>	Gra'-vi-or, <i>heavier.</i>	U-be'-ri-or, <i>more fertile.</i>
Dul'-ci-or, <i>sweeter.</i>		

Plus, *more*, is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>N.</i> plus,	<i>N.</i> plu'-res,	<i>N.</i> plu'-ra, <i>rarely</i>	<i>pluria.</i>
<i>G.</i> plu'-ris,	<i>G.</i> plu'-ri-um,		plu'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> _____,	<i>D.</i> plu'-rī-bus,		plu'-rī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> plus,	<i>Ac.</i> plu'-res,		plu'-ra,
<i>V.</i> _____,	<i>V.</i> _____,		_____,
<i>Ab.</i> _____,	<i>Ab.</i> plu'-rī-bus.		plu'-rī-bus.

So, in the plural number only, *complures*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders, and they all increase in the genitive.\*

They are thus declined :—

*Felix, happy.*

*Singular.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>G.</i>	fe-lī'-cis,	fe-lī'-cis,
<i>D.</i>	fe-lī'-ci,	fe-lī'-ci,
<i>Ac.</i>	fe-lī'-cem,	fe'-lix,
<i>V.</i>	fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>Ab.</i>	fe-lī'-ce, or ci.	fe-lī'-ce, or ci.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	fe-lī'-ces,	fe-lic'-i-a,†
<i>G.</i>	fe-lic'-i-um,†	fe-lic'-i-um,
<i>D.</i>	fe-lic'-ī-bus,	fe-lic'-ī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	fe-lī'-ces,	fe-lic'-i-a,
<i>V.</i>	fe-lī'-ces,	fe-lic'-i-a,
<i>Ab.</i>	fe-lic'-ī-bus.	fe-lic'-ī-bus.

\* *Senex, senis*, old, had anciently *senicis* or *senēcis*.

† Pronounced *fe-līsh'-e-um*, &c. See §§ 10, Exc., and 7.



Præsens, *present*.*Singular.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-tis,	præ-sen'-tis,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-ti,	præ-sen'-ti,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tem,	præ'-sens,
<i>V.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-te, or ti.	præ-sen'-te, or ti.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	præ-sen'-tes,	præ-sen'-ti-a,*
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-ti-um,	præ-sen'-ti-um,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-tī-bus,	præ-sen'-tī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tes,	præ-sen'-ti-a,
<i>V.</i>	præ-sen'-tes,	præ-sen'-ti-a,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-tī-bus.	præ-sen'-tī-bus.

## In like manner decline

Au'-dax, -ācis, *bold*.Com'-pos, -ōtis, *master of*.Fe'-rox, -ōcis, *fierce*.In'-gens, -tis, *huge*.Par'-tī-ceps, -īpis, *participant*.Præ'-pes, -ētis, *swift*.So'-lers, -tis, *shrewd*.Sos'-pes, -ītis, *safe*.Sup'-plex, -īcis, *suppliant*.All present participles are declined like *præsens*.RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

Of those in *es*,

Some have *ētis*; as, *hebes*, dull; *perpes*, perpetual; *præpes*, swift; and *teres*, slender;—(*Locuples*, rich, has *ētis*);—

Some *ītis*; as, *dives*, rich; *sospes*, safe; and *superstes*, surviving;—

Some *īdis*; as, *deses*, slothful; and *reses*, sluggish. [*bēris*.]

*Bipes*, two-footed, and *tripēs*, three-footed, have *pēdis*. *Pubes*, has *pu-*

*Compos*, master of, and *impos*, unable, have *ōtis*.

*Pernox*, lasting all night, has *noctis*.

*Calebs*, unmarried, has *ībis*; *intercus*, intercutaneous, *ūtis*.

Those in *ceps*, compounds of *caput*, have *ciptis*; as, *anceps*, doubtful; *præceps*, headlong.

Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *cordis*; as, *concors*, agreeing.

\* Pronounced *pre-sen'-she-a*, &c.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives of the third declension, of two or three terminations, except comparatives in *or*, have always *i* in the ablative.

2. Comparatives, and participles in *ns* used as participles, have rather *e* than *i*; and such participles in the ablative absolute have always *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have *e* or *i* in the ablative.

NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

The neuter of the nominative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vetus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a* and *um*.

*Exceptions in the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural.*

§ 114. 1. The following adjectives have *e* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural:—

Bicorpor, <i>two-bodied</i> .	Impubes, <i>beardless</i> .	Sospes, <i>safe</i> .
Bipes, <i>two-footed</i> .	Juvenis, <i>young</i> .	Superstes, <i>surviving</i> .
Cælebs, <i>unmarried</i> .	Pauper, <i>poor</i> .	Tricorpor, <i>three-bodied</i> .
Compos, <i>master of</i> .	Princeps, <i>chief</i> .	Tricuspis, <i>three-forked</i> .
Discolor, <i>particolored</i> .	Puber, <i>or -es, full-grown</i> .	Tripes, <i>three-footed</i> .
Impos, <i>unable</i> .	Senex, <i>old</i> .	

2. The following, which have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural:—

Ales, <i>winged</i> .	Dives, <i>rich</i> .	Quadruplex, <i>fourfold</i> .
Artifex, <i>skilful</i> .	Degener, <i>degenerate</i> .	Supplex, <i>suppliant</i> .
Cicur, <i>tame</i> .	Impar, <i>unequal</i> .	Triceps, <i>three-headed</i> .
Compar, <i>equal</i> .	Inops, <i>poor</i> .	Vigil, <i>watchful</i> .
Dispar, <i>unequal</i> .	Præpes, <i>swift</i> .	

To these may be added *locuples*, rich; *sons*, guilty; and *insons*, innocent; which have *um* or *ium* in the genitive plural. *Voluter*, winged, though its ablative is in *i*, has *um* in the genitive plural.

3. *Memor*, mindful; *immemor*, unmindful; *par*, equal; and *uber*, fertile, have *i* only in the ablative; but all, except *par*, have *um* in the genitive plural.

NOTE. THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL of adjectives of the third declension, as of nouns, sometimes ends in *eis* or *is*, instead of *es*. See § 85.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1 Many adjectives, denoting personal qualities or attributes, want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor,	Degēner,	Inops,	Memor,	Redux,	Supplex,
Bipes,	Dives,	Insons,	Pauper,	Senex,	Tricorpor,
Cælebs,	Impos,	Invitus,	Particeps,	Sons,	Vigil.
Consors,	Impubes,	Juvenis,	Princeps,	Sospes,	
Compos,	Industrius,	Locuples,	Puber, or -es,	Superstes,	

*Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature of substantives and adjectives. They correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6.

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender:—

*Concolor, deses, hebes, perpes, reses, teres, versicolor.*

3. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frugi*, temperate; *nequam*, worthless; *sat* or *satis*, sufficient; *semis*, half; the plurals *aliquot*, *tot*, *quot*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*.

4. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases:—

Bilecem, <i>acc.</i> ; doubly-tissued.	— <i>pl.</i> plures, -a, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; -ium, <i>gen.</i> ; ibus, <i>dat.</i> , <i>abl.</i> § 110.
Cetëra, cetërum, <i>the rest</i> , wants the <i>nom. sing. masc.</i>	Potis, <i>nom. sing. and pl.</i> , all genders; <i>able</i> .
Decemplicem, <i>acc.</i> ; tenfold.	Pote, <i>nom. sing.</i> , for potest; possible.
Exspes, <i>nom.</i> ; hopeless.	Septemplicis, <i>gen.</i> ; -ce, <i>abl.</i> ; sevenfold.
Inquies, <i>nom.</i> ; -etern, <i>acc.</i> ; -ete, <i>abl.</i> ; restless.	Siremps, <i>nom.</i> ; sirempse, <i>abl.</i> ; alike.
Mactus, and macte, <i>nom.</i> ; macte, <i>acc.</i> ; increased;—macti, and mactæ, <i>nom. pl.</i>	Tantundem, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; tantidem, <i>gen.</i> ; so much.
Necesse, and necessum, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; necessary.	Trilicem, <i>acc.</i> ; trebly-tissued; trilices, <i>acc. pl.</i>
Plus, <i>nom.</i> , <i>acc.</i> ; pluris, <i>gen.</i> ; more;	

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

Acclivis, and -us, <i>r</i> , ascending.	Opulens, and -lentus, rich.
Auxiliaris, and -ius, auxiliary.	Præcox, -côquis, and -côquus, early ripe.
Bijūgis, and -us, two-yoked.	Proclivis, and -us, <i>r</i> , inclined down wards.
Declivis, and -us, <i>r</i> , descending.	Quadrijūgis, and -us, four-yoked.
Exanimis, and -us, <i>r</i> , lifeless.	Semianimis, and -us, half-alive.
Hilaris, and -us, cheerful.	Semiermis, and -us, half-armed.
Imbecillis, <i>r</i> , and -us, weak. [less.	Semisomnis, and -us, half-asleep.
Impubes, and -is, -is or -eris, beard.	Singularis, and -ius, single.
Inermis, and -us, unarmed.	Sublimis, and -us, <i>r</i> , high.
Infrēnis, and -us, unbridled.	Unanimis, <i>r</i> , and -us, unanimous.
Inquies, and -etus, restless.	Violens, <i>r</i> , and -lentus, violent.
Jocularis, and -ius, <i>r</i> , laughable.	
Multijūges, <i>r</i> , and -i (plur.), many-yoked.	

To the above may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *saluber* and *bris*, *cëlèber* and *-bris*.

# NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which answer the question 'How many?' They are,

Unus,	one.	I.
Duo,	two.	II.
Tres,	three.	III.
Quatuor,	four.	III. or IV.
Quinque,	five.	V.
Sex,	six.	VI.
Septem,	seven.	VII.
Octo,	eight.	VIII.
Novem,	nine.	VIII. or IX.
Decem,	ten.	X.
Undëcim,	eleven.	XI.
Duodëcim,	twelve.	XII.
Tredëcim,	thirteen.	XIII.
Quatuordëcim,	fourteen.	XIII. or XIV.
Quindëcim,	fifteen.	XV.
Sedëcim, or sexdëcim,	sixteen.	XVI.
Septendëcim,	seventeen.	XVII.
Octodëcim,	eighteen.	XVIII.
Novendëcim,	nineteen.	XVIII. or XIX.
Viginti,	twenty.	XX.
Viginti unus, or unus et viginti, }	twenty-one.	XXI.
Viginti duo, or duo et viginti, &c. }	twenty-two.	XXII.
Triginta,	thirty.	XXX.
Quadräginta,	forty.	XXXX. or XL.
Quinquäginta,	fifty.	L.
Sexäginta,	sixty.	LX.
Septuäginta,	seventy.	LXX.
Octoginta,	eighty.	LXXX.
Nonäginta,	ninety.	LXXX. or XC.
Centum,	a hundred.	C.
Centum unus, or centum et unus, &c. }	a hundred and one.	CI.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	two hundred.	CC.
Trecenti,	three hundred.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	four hundred.	CCCC.
Quingenti,	five hundred.	IO, or D.
Sexcenti,	six hundred.	IOC, or DC.
Septingenti,	seven hundred.	IOCC, or DCC.
Octingenti,	eight hundred.	IOCCC, or DCCC.
Nongenti,	nine hundred.	IOCCCC, or DCCCC.
Mille,	a thousand.	CIO, or M.

Duo millia, or } bis mille, }	two thousand.	CICCI, or MME.
Quinque millia, or } quingies mille, }	five thousand.	ICCI.
Decem millia, or } decies mille, }	ten thousand.	CCICCI.
Quinquaginta millia, } or quinquagies mille, }	fifty thousand.	ICCC.
Centum millia, or } centies mille, }	a hundred thousand.	CCCICCC.

### Remarks.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; those from four to a hundred inclusive are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

For the declension of *unus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined:—

### Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
G.	du-ô'-rum,	du-a'-rum,	du-ô'-rum,
D.	du-ô'-bus,	du-a'-bus,	du-ô'-bus,
Ac.	du'-os, or du'-o,	du'-as,	du'-o,
V.	du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
Ab.	du-ô'-bus.	du-a'-bus.	du-ô'-bus.

*Duŕum*, *duŕum*, are often contracted into *duŕum*, especially when joined with *millium*.

*Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una castra*, one camp; *unæ ædes*, one house. So also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vœstimenta*, one suit of clothes.

3. Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, and eighteen, are often expressed by two numbers united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et sex*, *decem et septem*, *decem et octo*; in which the larger number usually precedes.

From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the larger generally without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the larger precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, &c., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, &c. (excepting sixty-eight and sixty-nine), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta*, *undetriginta*, &c. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these expressions.

5. The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing small cardinal numbers; as, *bis sex*, for *duodêcim*; *bis centum*, for *ducenti*.

Numbers above a hundred thousand are always expressed in this way ; as, *decies centum millia* ; but the cardinal numbers after the adverbs are sometimes omitted ; as, *decies centena*, i. e. *millia* ; *decies*, i. e. *centum millia*.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or an adjective.

When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c. ; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men ; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, &c. When *mille* is declined in the plural, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between ; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable ; as, *mille homines*, a thousand men ; *bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one* ; V. *five* ; X. *ten* ; L. *fifty* ; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two* ; III. *three* ; XX. *twenty* ; XXX. *thirty* ; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater ; but being placed after, it adds what it stands for to the greater ; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of O to IO makes its value ten times greater ; thus, IOO marks *five thousand* ; and IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of O, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater ; thus, CCIOO denotes *ten thousand* ; and CCCIOOO, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition ; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes *three thousand* ;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ ., *ten thousand*.

§ 119. II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank. They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bonus* ; as, *primus*, first ; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things ; as, *singuli*, one by one, or each ; *bini*, two by two, or two to each, &c. They are declined like the plural of *bonus*, except that they usually have *um* for *orum* in the genitive plural.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs :—

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs</i>
1. <i>Primus, first</i>	<i>Singŭli.</i>	<i>Semel, once.</i>
2. <i>Secundus, second, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Bini.</i>	<i>Bis, twice.</i>
3. <i>Tertius.</i>	<i>Terni, or trini.</i>	<i>Ter, thrice.</i>
4. <i>Quartus.</i>	<i>Quaterni.</i>	<i>Quater, fourtimes.</i>
5. <i>Quintus.</i>	<i>Quini.</i>	<i>Quinquies, &amp;c.</i>
6. <i>Sextus.</i>	<i>Seni.</i>	<i>Sexies.</i>
7. <i>Septimus.</i>	<i>Septēni.</i>	<i>Septies.</i>
8. <i>Octavus.</i>	<i>Octōni.</i>	<i>Octies.</i>
9. <i>Nonus.</i>	<i>Novēni.</i>	<i>Novies.</i>
10. <i>Decimus.</i>	<i>Deni.</i>	<i>Decies.</i>
11. <i>Undecimus.</i>	<i>Undēni.</i>	<i>Undecies.</i>
12. <i>Duodecimus.</i>	<i>Duodēni.</i>	<i>Duodecies.</i>
13. <i>Tertius decimus.</i>	<i>Terni deni.</i>	<i>Terdecies.</i>
14. <i>Quartus decimus.</i>	<i>Quaterni deni.</i>	<i>Quaterdecies.</i>
15. <i>Quintus decimus.</i>	<i>Quini deni.</i>	<i>Quindecies.</i>
16. <i>Sextus decimus.</i>	<i>Seni deni.</i>	<i>Sedecies.</i>
17. <i>Septimus decimus.</i>	<i>Septēni deni.</i>	<i>Decies et septies.</i>
18. <i>Octavus decimus.</i>	<i>Octōni deni.</i>	<i>Duodevicies.</i>
19. <i>Nonus decimus.</i>	<i>Novēni deni.</i>	<i>Undevicies.</i>
20. { <i>Vicesimus, or</i> <i>vigesimus.</i> }	<i>Vicēni.</i>	<i>Vicies.</i>
21. <i>Vicesimus primus.</i>	<i>Vicēni singŭli.</i>	<i>Semel et vicies.</i>
22. <i>Vicesimus secundus.</i>	<i>Vicēni bini.</i>	<i>Bis et vicies, &amp;c.</i>
30. { <i>Tricesimus, or</i> <i>trigesimus.</i> }	<i>Tricēni.</i>	<i>Tricies.</i>
40. <i>Quadragesimus.</i>	<i>Quadragēni.</i>	<i>Quadrages.</i>
50. <i>Quinquagesimus.</i>	<i>Quinquagēni.</i>	<i>Quinquagies.</i>
60. <i>Sexagesimus.</i>	<i>Sexagēni.</i>	<i>Sexagies.</i>
70. <i>Septuagesimus.</i>	<i>Septuagēni.</i>	<i>Septuagies.</i>
80. <i>Octogesimus.</i>	<i>Octogēni.</i>	<i>Octogies.</i>
90. <i>Nonagesimus.</i>	<i>Nonagēni.</i>	<i>Nonagies.</i>
100. <i>Centesimus.</i>	<i>Centēni.</i>	<i>Centies.</i>
200. <i>Ducentesimus.</i>	<i>Ducēni.</i>	<i>Ducenties.</i>
300. <i>Trecentesimus.</i>	<i>Trecēni, or trecentēni.</i>	<i>Trecenties.</i>
400. <i>Quadragesimus.</i>	{ <i>Quadringēni, or</i> <i>quadringentēni.</i> }	<i>Quadringenties.</i>
500. <i>Quingentesimus.</i>	<i>Quingēni.</i>	<i>Quingenties.</i>
600. <i>Sexcentesimus.</i>	<i>Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.</i>	<i>Sexcenties.</i>
700. <i>Septingentesimus.</i>	<i>Septingēni.</i>	<i>Septingenties.</i>
800. <i>Octingentesimus.</i>	<i>Octingēni.</i>	<i>Octingenties.</i>
900. <i>Nongentesimus.</i>	<i>Nonagēni.</i>	<i>Noningenties.</i>
1000. <i>Millesimus.</i>	{ <i>Millēni, or</i> <i>singŭla millia.</i> }	<i>Millies.</i>
2000. <i>Bis millesimus.</i>	{ <i>Bis millēni, or</i> <i>bina millia.</i> }	<i>Bis millies.</i>

*Remarks.*

§ 120. 1. Instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if two only are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. From thirteen to nineteen, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decimus*;—sometimes the larger, with or without *et*; as, *decimus et tertius*, or *decimus tertius*.

Twenty-first, thirty-first, &c., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*,

*unus et tricesimus*, &c.; and twenty-second, &c., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, &c., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

For eighteenth, &c., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, &c., to fifty-ninth, *duodevicesimus*, &c., and *undevicesimus*, &c., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by *duodevicensi*, &c., and *undevicensi*, &c.

4. Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *bina nuptiæ*, two weddings.

The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of a multiplicative; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septenus*.

5. For twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetrices* and *undequadrages* are found.

§121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold. They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *felix*; as,

Simplex, *single*.

Quadruplex, *fourfold*.

Duplex, *twofold*, or *double*.

Quincuplex, *fivefold*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Centuplex, *a hundred fold*.

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, *quadruplus*, *octuplus*, *decuplus*. They are declined like *bonus*.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus*, two years old; *trimus*, three years old; *quadrimus*, &c. Also, *biennis*, of two years' continuance; *quadriennis*, *quinquennis*, &c. So *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, &c.

4. Those which denote *how many parts* a thing contains; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, &c.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are, *tot*, *totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§122. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bonus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opacus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *aeneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.



The relations of inferiority, equality, or superiority, which different objects bear to each other, in regard to variable qualities, are expressed in Latin in different ways.

Inferiority may be denoted by prefixing to an adjective the adverbs *minùs*, less, and *minimè*, least; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minùs jucundus*, less pleasant; *minimè jucundus*, least pleasant.

A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to an adjective; as, *difficilis*, difficult; *subdifficilis*, somewhat difficult.

Equality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quàm*; *æque* followed by *ac*, &c.; as, *hebes æque ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 123. The relation of superiority, to which alone the name of comparison is commonly applied, is denoted either by prefixing to an adjective certain adverbs or prepositions, or by *peculiar terminations*. Various degrees of superiority are denoted with different degrees of precision, by the prepositions *per* and *præ* prefixed to adjectives, and by different adverbs, and other qualifying clauses. The terminational comparison, and its equivalent form, expressed by the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maximè*, most, prefixed to the adjective, denote not a precise, but only a relative, degree of superiority.

That form of an adjective which simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality, is called the *positive* degree; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

The degrees of relative superiority are two—the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

The comparative denotes that the quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

The superlative denotes that the quality belongs to one object, or set of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

### Remarks.

1. The comparative is also used to denote that, at different times, or in different circumstances, a quality belongs to the same object in different degrees; as, *est sapientior quàm olim fuit*, he is wiser than he was formerly.

2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quàm sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

§ 124. The terminational } Masc. Fem. Neut.  
comparative ends in } *ior, ior, ius;*

the terminational superlative in *issimus, issima, issimum.*

These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as,

*altus, altior, altissimus;* high, higher, highest.

*mitis, mitior, mitissimus;* mild, milder, mildest.

*felix, gen. felicis, felicior, felicissimus;* happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

*Arc'-tus, strait.*

*Ca'-rus, dear.*

*Cle'-mens, gen. -tis, merciful.*

*Ca'-pax, capacious.*

*Cru-de'-lis, cruel.*

*In'-ers, gen. -tis, sluggish.* § 23.

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.

In like manner *pauper, pauperrimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterrimus*, as if from *veter*.

2. Seven adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to the root :—

<i>Facilis,</i>	<i>facilior,</i>	<i>facillimus,</i>	<i>easy.</i>
<i>Difficilis,</i>	<i>difficilior,</i>	<i>difficillimus,</i>	<i>difficult.</i>
<i>Gracilis,</i>	<i>gracilior,</i>	<i>gracillimus,</i>	<i>slender.</i>
<i>Humilis,</i>	<i>humilior,</i>	<i>humillimus,</i>	<i>low.</i>
<i>Imbecilis,</i>	<i>imbecilior,</i>	<i>imbecillimus,</i>	<i>weak.</i>
<i>Similis,</i>	<i>similior,</i>	<i>simillimus,</i>	<i>like.</i>
<i>Dissimilis,</i>	<i>dissimilior,</i>	<i>dissimillimus,</i>	<i>unlike.</i>

3. Five adjectives in *ficus* derive their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives in *ens* :—

<i>Beneficus,</i>	<i>beneficentior,</i>	<i>beneficentissimus,</i>	<i>beneficent.</i>
<i>Honorificus,</i>	<i>honorificentior,</i>	<i>honorificentissimus,</i>	<i>honorable.</i>
<i>Magnificus,</i>	<i>magnificentior,</i>	<i>magnificentissimus,</i>	<i>splendid.</i>
<i>Munificus,</i>	<i>munificentior,</i>	<i>munificentissimus,</i>	<i>liberal.</i>
<i>Maleficus,</i>	<i>maleficentior,</i>	<i>maleficentissimus,</i>	<i>hurtful.</i>

Adjectives in *dicens* and *volens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *volus* are more common; as,

*Benevolens, or benevolus, benevolentior, benevolentissimus, benevolent.*

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives :—

<i>Dexter,</i>	<i>dexterior,</i>	<i>dextimus,</i>	<i>right.</i>
<i>Extēra, (fem.)</i>	<i>exterior,</i>	<i>extimus, or extrēmus,</i>	<i>outward.</i>

Postēra, ( <i>fem.</i> )	posterior,	postrēmus, or postūmus,	<i>hind.</i>
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus,	<i>low.</i>
Supērus,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus,	<i>high.</i>

The nominative singular of *postēra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extēra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison :—

Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	<i>good,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>best.</i>			
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus,	<i>bad,</i>	<i>worse,</i>	<i>worst.</i>			
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	<i>great,</i>	<i>greater,</i>	<i>greatest.</i>			
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	<i>little,</i>	<i>less,</i>	<i>least.</i>			
Multus,	—	plurimus,	}	<i>much,</i>	<i>more,</i>	<i>most</i>		
Multa,	—	plurima,						
Multum,	plus,*	plurimum,						
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	<i>worthless.</i>					
Frugi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus,	<i>frugal.</i>					

All these form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive :—

Citerior, citimus, <i>nearer.</i>	Prior, primus, <i>former.</i>
Deterior, deterrimus, <i>worse.</i>	Propior, proximus, <i>nearer.</i>
Interior, intimus, <i>inner.</i>	Uterior, ultimus, <i>farther.</i>
Ociior, ocissimus, <i>swifter.</i>	

2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, <i>skilful.</i>	Par, parissimus, <i>equal.</i>
Falsus, falsissimus, <i>false.</i>	Persuāsus, persuasissimus ( <i>neuter</i> ), <i>persuaded.</i>
Inclūtus, inclutissimus, <i>renowned.</i>	Sacer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred.</i>
Invictus, invictissimus, <i>invincible.</i>	
Meritus, meritissimus ( <i>rarely used</i> ), <i>deserving.</i>	

3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, <i>sunny.</i>	Fidus, fidissimus, <i>faithful.</i>
Bellus, bellissimus, <i>fine.</i>	Invitus, invitissimus, <i>unwilling.</i>
Comis, comissimus, <i>courteous.</i>	Novus, novissimus, <i>new.</i>
Diversus, diversissimus, <i>different.</i>	Vetus, veterrimus, <i>old.</i>

4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, }	} <i>young.</i>	Ingens, ingentior, <i>great.</i>
Juvenis, junior,		Licens, licentior, <i>extravagant.</i>
Alacer, alacrior, <i>active.</i>		Longinquus, longinquier, <i>distant.</i>
Cæcus, cæcior, <i>blind.</i>		Opimus, opimior, <i>rich.</i>
Diurnus, diurnior, <i>lasting</i>		Proclivis, proclivior, }
Jejūnus, jejunior, <i>fasting.</i>		} <i>downwards.</i>
Infinītus, infinitior, <i>unlimited.</i>		
		— sequior, <i>worse.</i>

\* See § 110.

Propinquus, propinquior, <i>neighbouring</i> .	Senex, senior, <i>old</i> .
Salutaris, salutarior, <i>salutary</i> .	Silvester, or silvestris, silvestrior, <i>woody</i> .
Satis, <i>sufficient</i> ; satius, <i>preferable</i> .	Sinister, sinisterior, <i>left</i> .
Satur, saturior, <i>full</i> .	Supīnus, supīnior, <i>lying on the back</i> .

The superlative of *juvēnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus natu*, youngest; and that of *senex* by *maximus natu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor natu* and *major natu* sometimes also occur.

Most adjectives also in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *bilis*, and many in *ānus*, *ivis*, and *inquus*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *orus*, most in *ivus*, and those in *us* after a vowel (except *quus*). Yet *assiduus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *pius*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, are sometimes compared by change of termination.

(b.) The following—*almus*, *calvus*, *canus*, *cicur*, *claudus*, *degener*, *delirus*, *dispar*, *egēnus*, *impar*, *invidus*, *lacer*, *memor*, *mirus*, *præditus*, *præcox*, *rudis*, *salvus*, *sospes*, *vulgaris*, and some others.

§ 127. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maximè*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus*, *maximè idoneus*.

*Valde*, *imprimis*, *apprime*, *admōdum*, &c., and the prepositions *præ* and *per*, and sometimes *perquam*, prefixed to an adjective, denote a high degree of the quality.

The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by prefixing *longè*, or *multò*, much, far; as, *longè nobilissimus*, *longe melior*; *iter multò facilius*, *multò maxima pars*.

*Quàm* before the superlative renders it more emphatic; as, *quàm doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quàm celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive, with the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatus* (Cic.), happier than we; *ante alias pulchritudine insignis* (Liv.), most beautiful. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *ante alios pulcherrimus omnes* (Virg.)

Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jugum*, *somnus*, *gero*, and *fero*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes :—

1. The termination *eus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; from *aurum*, *argentum*, &c.

The termination *inus* has sometimes the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adāmas* and *cedrus*.

The termination *ēus* is found only in possessives of Greek origin; as, *Achillēus*, of Achilles; *Sophoclēus*, &c.

2. The terminations *ālis*, *āris*, *ilis*, *atilis*, *icius*, *icus*, *ius*, and *inus*, denote belonging or relating to; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput*.

So *comitiālis*, *regālis*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *civilis*, *hostilis*, *juvenilis*; *aquatilis*, *fluvialilis*; *tribunicius*, *patricius*; *bellicus*, *civicus*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *caninus*, *equinus*, *ferinus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *civis*, &c.

The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostilis*, hostile; *puerilis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

3. The termination *arius* generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *statua*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

Some of this class are properly substantives.

4. The terminations *ōsus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fullness; as, *animōsus*, full of courage; *fraudentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus*. So *lapidōsus*, *vinōsus*, *turbulentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *u*.

Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 13.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; *duriuscūlus*, somewhat hard; from *dulcis* and *durus*. So *lentūlus*, *misellus*, *parvūlus*, &c. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 12.

6. From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived adjectives in *ensis*, *inus*, *as*, and *ānus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

Thus from *Athēnæ* is formed *Atheniensis*, Athenian; from *Cannæ*, *Cannensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*.

Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latinus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Capēna*, *Capēnas*.

Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albānus*; *Roma*, *Romānus*; *Cumæ*, *Cumānus*; *Thebæ*, *Thebānus*;—*fons*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*.

Adjectives with the termination *ānus* are also formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tulliānus*.

Names of towns in *polis* form adjectives in *politānus*; as, *Neapōlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

Greek names of towns generally form adjectives in *ius*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodium*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *æus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrnæus*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alātus*, winged; *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *turrītus*, turreted; *cornūtus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, &c.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errabundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, and equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*. In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulabundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimabundus*, weeping profusely.

Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively.

Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denotes passively, capability, or desert; as, *amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; from *amo*, *credo*, *placo*.

In adjectives of this form, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes also in those from verbs of the second conjugation, *i* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

This termination is sometimes added to the third root, with a change of *u* into *i*; as, *flexibilis*, *coctibilis*, *sensibilis*, from *flecto* (*flexu*), &c.

4. The termination *ilis*, added either to the first root of a verb, or to the third root, after *u* is removed, has usually a passive, but sometimes an active sense; as,

*agilis*, active; *flexilis*, easy to be bent; *ductilis*, ductile; *suttilis*, sewed; *coctilis*, baked; *fertilis*, fertile; from *ago*, &c.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, after *u* is removed, has a passive sense, as *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; *supposititius*, substituted, from *fungo* (*fictu*), &c.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as, *audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax*, rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participials*; as, *amans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs, and are called *adverbials*; as, *crastinus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions, and may be called *prepositionals*; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postërus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *caper* and *pes*; *ignicömus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *coma*.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivägus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vagus*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gero*; *letifer*, bringing death—of *letum* and *fero*. So *carnivörus*, *causidicus*, *ignivömus*, *lucifugus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *celer* and *pes*. So *centimānus*, *decennis*, *magnānimus*, *misericors*, *unanimis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgemīnus*, having a hundred arms; *multicāvus*, having many cavities.

6. Of an adjective and a verb ; as, *breviloquens*, speaking briefly—of *brevis* and *loquor* ; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *facio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination ; as, *qualiscunque*, *quocunque*, *uterque*.

REMARK. When the former part of the compound is a noun or adjective, it usually ends in *i*. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place ; as, *magnanimus*—of *magnus* and *animus*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun ; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective ; as, *malefidus*, unfaithful ; *malesānus*, insane.

10. Of an adverb and a verb ; as, *beneficus*, beneficent—of *bene* and *facio* ; *malevölus*, malevolent—of *male* and *volo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun ; as, *amens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *consors*, *decolor*, *deformis*, *implumis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective ; as, *concarvus*, concave ; *infidus*, unfaithful. So *improvidus*, *percārus*, *prædives*, *subalbidus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb ; as, *continuus*, continual—of *con* and *teneo* ; *inscius*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it ; as, *imprudens*—of *in* and *prudens*.

## PRONOUNS.

§132. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

There are eighteen simple pronouns :—

Ego, I.	Hic, this or he.	Suus, his, hers, its, &c.
Tu, thou.	Is, that or he.	Cujus? whose?
Sui, of himself, &c.	Quis? who?	Noster, our.
Ille, that or he.	Qui, who.	Vester, your.
Ipse, himself.	Meus, my.	Nostras, of our country.
Iste, that or he.	Tuus, thy.	Cujus? of what country?

Three of these—*ego*, *tu*, and *sui*—are substantives ; the remaining fifteen, and all the compound pronouns, are adjectives.

*Ego* and *tu* are a species of appellatives of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker, to designate himself ; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. *Ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second.



*Sui* is also a general appellative, of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

The remaining pronouns are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

*Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, and *nostras*, have the same extent of signification as the substantive pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of those pronouns.

Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but they all want the vocative, except *tu, meus, noster*, and *nostras*. *Sui* also, from the nature of its signification, wants the nominative in both numbers.

The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

### SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

#### Singular.

N. e'-go, I.	tu, thou.	
G. me'-i, of me.	tu'-i, of thee.	{ su'-i, of himself, herself, itself. sib'-i, * to himself, &c. se, himself, &c.
D. mi'-hi, to me.	tib'-i, * to thee.	
Ac. me, me.	te, thee.	
V. —	tu, O thou.	
Ab. me, with me.	te, with thee.	se, with himself, &c.

#### Plural.

N. nos, we.	vos, ye or you.	
G. { nos'-trūm } of us.	ves'-trūm or ves'-tri, } of you.	su'-i, of themselves sib'-i, to themselves. se, themselves.
D. no'-bis, to us.	vo'-bis, to you.	
Ac. nos, us.	vos, you.	
V. —	vos, O ye or you.	
Ab. no'-bis, with us.	vo'-bis, with you.	se, with themselves.

#### Remarks.

1. *Mihi* is very rarely contracted into *mi*. So *min'* for *mihins*, Pers.
2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egōmet*, I myself;

\* See § 18, 2.

*mihimet ipsi*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tute* or *tutēmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative, *tete* in the singular, and *sese* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, *med*, and *ted*, for *me* and *te*, and *tis* for *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are contracted from *nostrōrum*, *nostrārum*, and *vestrōrum*, *vestrārum*.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablatives of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mecum*, *nobiscum*, &c.

## ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	il'-le,	il'-la,	il'-lud,	il'-li,	il'-læ,	il'-la,
<i>G.</i>	il-lī'-us,*	il-lī'-us,	il-lī'-us,	il-lō'-rum,	il-lā'-rum,	il-lō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	il'-li,	il'-li,	il'-li,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,
<i>Ac.</i>	il'-lum,	il'-lam,	il'-lud,	il'-los,	il'-las,	il'-la,
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	il'-lo.	il'-lā.	il'-lo.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.

*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>G.</i>	hu'-jus,	hu'-jus,	hu'-jus,	ho'-rum,	ha'-rum,	ho'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	huic,†	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
<i>Ac.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	hos,	has,	hæc,
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	hoc.	hac.	hoc.	his.	his.	his.

\* See § 15.

† Pronounced *hike*. See § 9.

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>N.</i>	is,	e'-a,	id,	i'-i,	e'-æ,	e'-a,	
<i>G.</i>	e'-jus,	e'-jus,	e'-jus,	e-ō'-rum,	e-ā'-rum,	e-ō'-rum,	
<i>D.</i>	e'-i,	e'-i,	e'-i,	i'-is or e'-is,	i'-is or e'-is,	i'-is or e'-is,	
<i>Ac.</i>	e'-um,	e'-am,	id,	e'-os,	e'-as,	e'-a,	
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—	
<i>Ab.</i>	e'-o.	e'-ā.	e'-o.	i'-is or e'-is.	i'-is or e'-is.	i'-is or e'-is.	

## Remarks.

1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* in Virgil. *Ille*, fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Ei* for *ei*, *im* for *eum*, and *ibus* and *ibus* for *iis*, occur in Plautus; and *ea*, fem., for *ei*, and *eabus* for *iis*, in Cato.

2. From *ecce*, lo! and the accusative of *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed *eccillum*, *eccillam*, *eccillud*, *eccum*, *eccam*, &c., in both numbers. *Eccillum* is sometimes contracted into *ellum*. *Ecce*, nom. fem., also occurs.

3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	ist'-ic,	ist'-æc,	ist'-oc, or ist'-uc,	<i>N.</i> } <i>Ac.</i> }	—	—	ist'-æc.
<i>Ac.</i>	ist'-unc,	ist'-ane,	ist'-oc, or ist'-uc.				
<i>Ab.</i>	ist'-oc.	ist'-ac.	ist'-oc.				

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hisce*; *illæce*, *istæce*, *ejusce*, *istæce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæcne*, *hosne*, *hiscne*; *istucne*, *istacne*, *istosne*; *illicne*, *illancne*.

5. To the genitives singular of the demonstrative and relative pronouns, *modi*, the genitive of *modus*, is often annexed, either with or without an intervening particle; as, *hujusmodi*, or *hujuscemodi*, of this sort; *cujusmodi*, &c.

6. *Dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, the same, which is thus declined:—

Singular.			
	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	i'-dem,	e'-ā-dem,	i'-dem,
<i>G.</i>	e'-jus-dem,	e'-jus'-dem,	e'-jus'-dem,
<i>D.</i>	e'-i'-dem,	e'-i'-dem,	e'-i'-dem,
<i>Ac.</i>	e-un'-dem,	e-an'-dem,	i'-dem,
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	e-ō'-dem.	e-ā'-dem.	e-ō'-dem.

			Plural.			
			M.	F.	N.	
N.	i-I'-dem,			e-æ'-dem,	e'-ā-dem,	
G.	e-o-run'-dem,			e-a-run'-dem,	e-o-run'-dem,	
D.	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem, }		{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem, }	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem, }	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem, }	
Ac.	e-os'-dem,			e-as'-dem,	e'-ā-dem,	
V.						
Ab.	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem. }		{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem. }	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem. }	{ e-is'-dem, or i-is'-dem. }	

NOTE. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *en-dem*, &c.

### INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. §§ 133, 2, and 134, 4.

*Ipse* is thus declined:—

			Singular.				Plural.
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	ip'-se,	ip'-sa,	ip'-sum,	ip'-si,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-sa,	
G.	ip-sī'-us,	ip-sī'-us,	ip-sī'-us,	ip-sō'-rum,	ip-sā'-rum,	ip-sō'-rum,	
D.	ip'-si,	ip'-si,	ip'-si,	ip'-sis,	ip'-sis,	ip'-sis,	
Ac.	ip'-sum,	ip'-sam,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sos,	ip'-sas,	ip'-sa,	
V.							
Ab.	ip'-so.	ip'-sā.	ip'-so.	ip'-sis.	ip'-sis.	ip'-sis.	

### Remarks.

1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse*, *tu ipse*, *Jupiter himself*, &c.
2. A nominative *ipsus*, and a superlative *ipsissimus*, his very self, are found in comic writers.
3. The compounds *eapse*, *campse*, and *reapse*, are contracted for *ed ipsd*, *eam ipsam*, and *re ipsd*.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun.

They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicunque* and *quisquis*, whoever.

In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve

to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined :—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	quo'-rum,	qua'-rum,	quo'-rum,
D. cui,*	cui,	cui,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quo.	quâ.	quo.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.

### Remarks.

1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders, and rarely for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *quâ*, and *qui*, *cum* is sometimes annexed; but it is usually placed before the ablative plural.

2. *Quis* and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cujus* and *cui* were anciently written *quojus* and *quoi*.

*Quicunque*, or *quicumque*, is declined like *qui*.

*Qui* is sometimes separated from *cunque*, by the interposition of one or more words.

*Quisquis* is thus declined :—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	M.
N. quis'-quis,	quis'-quis,	quid'-quid,	N. qui'-qui,
Ac. quem'-quem,	—	quid'-quid,	D. qui-bus'-qui-bus.
Ab. quo'-quo.	qua'-quâ.	quo'-quo.	

NOTE. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quique* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} who? what?	Ecquis?	} is any one?	Cujus? whose?
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?		Cujas? of what country?
Qui?		Numquis?		

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. *Qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

\* Pronounced *ki*. See § 9.

*Quis* is thus declined :—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis,	quæ,	quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	quo'-rum,	qua'-rum,	quo'-rum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. _____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Ab. quo.	quâ.	quo.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.

### Remarks on *QUIS* and *QUI*.

(a.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. So also *quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* occur as feminine.

(b.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* and *qui*, in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*.

(c.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of indefinite pronouns (some one, any one), especially after *ec*, *si*, *ne*, *nisi*, *num*, *quo*, *quanto*, and *quum*. They are also occasionally used in the sense of *qualis*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have the signification and declension of *quis* and *qui* respectively.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis*, or *nunquis*, are declined and used like *quis*.

But *ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *nunquis* is *nunqua*.

*Ecqui* and *nunqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* is declined like *ecquis*; but it is found only in the singular;—in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine.

5. *Cujus* is also defective:—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	F.
N. cu'-jus,	cu'-ja,	cu'-jum,	N. cu -jæ,
Ac. cu'-jum,	cu'-jam,	_____	Ac. cu'-jas.
Ab. _____	cu'-jâ.	_____	

6. *Cujas* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cujas*, *cujâtis*. It is found in the genitive and accusative singular, and the nominative plural.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are sometimes used, in dependent clauses, when there is no question. They are then called *indefinites*; as, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis*; as, *qui sit apêrit*, he discloses who he is.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object, in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

Alīquis, <i>some one.</i>	Quisquam, <i>any one.</i>	Quidam, <i>a certain one</i>
Siquis, <i>if any.</i>	Quispiam, <i>some one.</i>	Quilibet, } <i>any one you</i>
Nequis, <i>lest any.</i>	Unusquisque, <i>each.</i>	Quivis, } <i>please.</i>
Quisque, <i>every one.</i>		

1. *Alīquis* is thus declined :—

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-ī-quis,	al'-ī-qua,	al'-ī-quod, <i>or</i> quid,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,
<i>D.</i>	al'-ī-cui,	al'-ī-cui,	al'-ī-cui,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-ī-quem,	al'-ī-quam,	al'-ī-quod, <i>or</i> quid,
<i>V.</i>			
<i>Ab.</i>	al'-ī-quo.	al'-ī-quā.	al'-ī-quo.

	<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-ī-qui,	al'-ī-quæ,	al'-ī-qua,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,	al-i-quō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	a-liq'-uī-bus,*	a-liq'-uī-bus,	a-liq'-uī-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-ī-quos,	al'-ī-quas,	al'-ī-qua,
<i>V.</i>			
<i>Ab.</i>	a-liq'-uī-bus.	a-liq'-uī-bus.	a-liq'-uī-bus.

2. *Siquis* and *nequis* are declined in the same manner.

But they sometimes have *quæ* in the nominative singular feminine. *Alīqui*, *siqui*, and *nequi*, are found for *alīquis*, &c., and the ablatives *alīqui* and *siqui* also occur.

*Alīquid*, *siquid*, and *nequid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *alīquod*, &c., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

But in the neuter singular, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*.

*Quisquam* wants the plural, and *quispiam* is scarcely used in that number, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, &c. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quivis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have *quod*, or *quid*, in the neuter.

*Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, &c.

\* Pronounced a-lik'-we-bus. See §§ 9, and 19, 4.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. The possessive are derived from the substantive pronouns, and from *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bonus*. (§ 105.) *Meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*.

*Cujus* is also declined like *bonus*; but it is defective. See § 137, 5.

*Noster* and *vester* are declined like *piger*. See § 106.

## Remarks.

1. The termination *pte* intensive is sometimes annexed to the ablative singular of the possessive pronouns; as, *suapte pondère*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand.

2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification. These pronouns are hence called *reflexive*. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132.

## PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

These are *nostras* and *cujas*. See § 137, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*.

## VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb.

A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy reads; *virtus laudātur*, virtue is praised; *equus currit*, the horse runs; *aqua calet*, the water is warm;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth is round.

All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called a *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

I. An *active verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

Most active verbs may express action in two ways, and, for



this purpose, have two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting* upon some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *being acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puero*, a book is read by the boy.

REMARK. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, i. e. *librum, literas*, &c., a book, a letter, &c.; *virtus laudatur*, virtue is praised, i. e. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations.

§ 142. II. A *neuter verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *ego sedeo*, I sit.

Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated by an active verb in English. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, "I am indulgent, I am hurtful," &c. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by an ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, admits an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

REMARK 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. These verbs are called *neuter passives*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapulo*, I am beaten, and *veneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are called *neutral passives*.

4. Some verbs, both active and neuter, have only the form of the passive voice. These are called *deponent verbs*, from *depono*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sequor*, I follow; *morior*, I die.

NOTE. Verbs are sometimes said to be *transitive* and *intransitive*, rather

than active and neuter. The former terms are more significant, but the latter are more commonly used, and have the same meaning.

To verbs, besides voices, belong *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*

### MOODS.

§ 143. Moods are forms of the verb, denoting the *manner* of the action or state expressed by the verb. There are in Latin four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is that form of the verb which is used in independent and absolute assertions ; as, *amo*, I love ; *amābo*, I shall love.

2. The *subjunctive* mood is that form of the verb which is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind ; as, *si me obsecret, redibo* ; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is that form of the verb which is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating ; as, *ama*, love thou.

4. The *infinitive* mood is that form of the verb which is used to denote an action or state indefinitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject ; as, *amāre*, to love.

### TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *times* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future ; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving ; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābam</i> , I was loving ; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted ;	{ <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving ; <i>Future tense</i> .

Present	{ action	{ <i>amāvi</i> , I have loved ; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amavēram</i> , I had loved ; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted ;	{ <i>amavēro</i> , I shall have loved ; <i>Future perfect tense</i> .

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amāber</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .

Present	{ action	{ <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future</i> [ <i>Perfect</i> .

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is sometimes used to describe past actions, in order to give animation to discourse; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provolant in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiebat jamdudum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. This tense is sometimes used for the present, in letters, with reference to the time of their being read; as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes intention or preparation to act at some past time; as, *olim cum dabam*, formerly when I was ready to give.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love or be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, or I loved.

In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, which is more common, it is called the *perfect indefinite*,

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event ; as, *litteras scripsēram, antequam nuncius venit* ; *I had written the letter, before the messenger arrived.*

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event ; as, *cum cœnavēro, proficiscar* ; when *I shall have supped, I will go.*

This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not "I am praised," but "I am in the act of being praised," or, if such an expression is admissible, "I am being praised."

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

2. The subjunctive mood has the present and past, but no future tenses.

The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, must, in certain connections, be translated by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* ; *might have*, *could have*, &c. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more full account of the signification of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

3. The imperative mood has but one tense, which is called the *present*, but which, from its nature, has a reference to the future.

4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, perfect, and future ; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Numbers are forms of the verb, denoting the unity or plurality of its subject. Verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the singular and the plural.

## PERSONS.

§ 147. Persons are forms of the verb, appropriated to the different persons of the subject, and accordingly called the first, second, and third persons.

1. As the imperative mood expresses the action which a second or third person is required to perform, it has terminations corresponding to those persons only.

2. The signification of the infinitive mood not being limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods in both voices :—

	<i>Active.</i>			<i>Passive.</i>		
<i>Person.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Singular.</i>	—	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
<i>Plural.</i>	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mīni,	ntur.

These may be called *personal terminations*.

REMARK 1. The first person singular, in the active voice, ends either in *m* or in a vowel.

2. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular, and in one of the forms of the third person plural.

3. The passive form above given applies to the simple tenses only.

4. The pronouns of the first and second persons are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amātus*, loved, or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb. Like other ab-

\* See §§ 105 and 111.

stract nouns, they are found only in the singular number; as, *amandi*, of loving, &c.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;

In the second, *ē* long;

In the third, *ē* short;

In the fourth, *i* long.

NOTE. *Do, dare*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ā* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *verbal termination*.

1. The root of a verb consists of those letters which are not changed by inflection; as, *am* in *amo*, *amābam*, *amavērim*, *amātus*. This may be called the *general* root.

2. There are also three special roots, from which, by the addition of certain terminations, all the parts of the verb are readily formed. The first of these roots is found in the *present* of the indicative, and is the same as the *general* root; the second is found in the *perfect*; and the third in the *supine*, or *perfect participle*.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *ēv*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *ātu*, *ētu*, and *ītu*.

Many verbs, however, in these three conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly, as do almost all in the second, a great part adding *u* and *ītu*, instead of *ev* and *ētu*.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *tu*. See § 171.

**NOTE.** In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting vowel*. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149.

In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *e* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiunt*, &c.

In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle, the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive.

From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle, from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*,\* and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

---

\* As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

*Terminations added to the First Root.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Persons.			Persons.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1. -o,	-as,	-at;	1. -or,	-āris	-at;
2. -eo,	-es,	-et;	2. -eor,	-ēris	-ēt;
3. -o,	-is,	-it;	3. -or,	-ēris	-it;
4. -io,	-is,	-it;	4. -ior,	-īris	-iēt;
<i>Conjugation.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>		
1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	1. -ābamur,	-ābamini,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	2. -ēbamur,	-ēbamini,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	3. -ēbamur,	-ēbamini,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	4. -iēbamur,	-iēbamini,	-iēbantur.
<i>Imperfect.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>		
1. -ābam,	-ābas	-ābāt;	1. -ābamur,	-ābamini,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas	-ēbāt;	2. -ēbamur,	-ēbamini,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas	-ēbāt;	3. -ēbamur,	-ēbamini,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas	-iēbāt;	4. -iēbamur,	-iēbamini,	-iēbantur.
<i>Future.</i>			<i>Persons.</i>		
1. -ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	1. -ābimur,	-ābimini,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	2. -ēbimur,	-ēbimini,	-ēbuntur.
3. -āam,	-es,	-et;	3. -ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.
4. -īam,	-ies,	-iet;	4. -iēmur,	-iemini,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Persons.			Persons.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1. -em,	-es,	-et;	1. -ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.
2. -eam,	-eas,	-eat;	2. -eamur,	-eamini,	-eantur.
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	3. -amur,	-amini,	-antur.
4. -īam,	-ias,	-iat;	4. -īamur,	-īamini,	-iantur.



## Imperfect.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-arēmus,	-arētis,	-ārent.	1. -ārer,	-arēris or -arēre,	-arētūr;	-arēmūr,	-arēmīni,	-arentūr.
2. -ārēm,	-ārēs,	-āret;	-arēmūs,	-arētis,	-ārent.	2. -ārēr,	-arēris or -arēre,	-arētūr;	-erēmūr,	-erēmīni,	-erentūr.
3. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmūs,	-irētis,	-īrent.	3. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētūr;	-erēmūr,	-erēmīni,	-erentūr.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmūs,	-irētis,	-īrent.	4. -īrer,	-irēris or -irēre,	-irētūr;	-irēmūr,	-irēmīni,	-irentūr.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. -a or -āto,	-āto;	-ate or -atōte,	-anto.	1. -āre or -ātor,	-ātor;	-amīni,	-antor.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -etōte,	-ento.	2. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor;	-emīni,	-entor.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -itōte,	-unto.	3. -ēre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -itōte,	-iunto.	4. -īre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-imīni,	-iuntor.
1. -āre,	-āre,	-āre,	-āre,	1. -āri,	-āri,	1. -andus,	
2. -ēre,	-ēre,	-ēre,	-ēre,	2. -ēri,	-ēri,	2. -endus,	
3. -ēre,	-ēre,	-ēre,	-ēre,	3. -i,	-i,	3. -endus,	
4. -īre,	-īre,	-īre,	-īre,	4. -īri,	-īri,	4. -iendus.	

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

## Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

## ACTIVE VOICE.—Second Root.

Singular.		Plural.		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
Perf.	-i,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt or -ēre.
Plup.	-ēram,	-ēras,	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
Fut. perf.	-ēro,	-ēris,	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perf.	-ērim,	-ēris,	-erim,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plup.	-issem,	-isses,	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
INFIN. Perf.	-isse.				

Third Root. INF. Fut.-rus esse. PART. Fut.-rus. F. SUP.-m.

## PASSIVE VOICE.—Third Root.

Singular.		Plural.		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
Perf.	-es	-eris	-eris	-eris	-eris
Plup.	-eras	-eratis	-eratis	-eratis	-eratis
Fut. perf.	-eris	-eritis	-eritis	-eritis	-eritis

INFIN. Perf. -s esse or fuise. INF. Fut.-m iri. L. SUP.

In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and those terminations. Thus in *amabāmus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amarēmini*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *docet* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either future indicative, or present subjunctive—*regimus* either present or perfect indicative.

§ 153. SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb. It is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses seem to have been formed from the second root of some now obsolete verb, and to have been, not, as now, an imperfect and future, but a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Fut. Part.
Sum,	es'-se,	fu'-i,	fu-tū'-rus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

	Singular.	Plural.
Person.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ sum, } I \text{ am,} \\ 2. \text{ es, } thou \text{ art,}^* \\ 3. \text{ est, } he \text{ is;} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} su'-mus, \text{ we are,} \\ es'-tis, \text{ ye}^\dagger \text{ are,} \\ sunt, \text{ they are.} \end{array} \right.$

## Imperfect.

1. e'-ram, <i>I was,</i>	e-rā'-mus, <i>we were,</i>
2. e'-ras, <i>thou wast,</i>	e-rā'-tis, <i>ye were,</i>
3. e'-rat, <i>he was;</i>	e'-rant, <i>they were.</i>

\* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Future. *shall, or will.*

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. e'-ro, <i>I shall be,</i>    | er'-i-mus, <i>we shall be,</i> |
| 2. e'-ris, <i>thou wilt be,</i> | er'-i-tis, <i>ye will be,</i>  |
| 3. e'-rit, <i>he will be ;</i>  | e'-runt, <i>they will be.</i>  |

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fu'-i, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-i-mus, <i>we have been,</i>           |
| 2. fu-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>          |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been ;</i>      | fu-ë'-runt or -re, <i>they have been.</i> |

## Pluperfect.

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ë-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rä'-mus, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ë-ras, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rä'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ë-rat, <i>he had been ;</i>    | fu'-ë-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. fu'-ë-ro, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-i-mus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. fu'-ë-ris, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-i-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i>  |
| 3. fu'-ë-rit, <i>he will have been ;</i>  | fu'-ë-rint, <i>they will have been.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | si'-mus, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be ;</i>    | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-së'-mus, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-ses, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-së'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-set, <i>he would be ;</i>    | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

## Perfect.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. fu'-ë-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-er'-i-mus, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ë-ris, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-er'-i-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ë-rit, <i>he may have been ;</i>    | fu'-ë-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-së'-mus, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-ses, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-së'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-set, <i>he would have been ;</i>    | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. *es*, or *es'-to*, be thou,      *es'-te*, or *es-to'-te*, be ye,  
 3. *es'-to*, let him be;      *sun'-to*, let them be.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

- Present.* *es'-se*, to be.  
*Perfect.* *fu-is'-se*, to have been.  
*Future.* *fu-tū'-rus es'-se*, to be about to be.

## PARTICIPLE.

- Future.* *fu-tū'-rus*, about to be.

## Remarks.

§ 154. 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently used, and is now found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *potens*.

2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, and an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*; —, —, *fuant*.

3. From *fuo* are also derived the following:—

- Subj. imperf.* *fo'-rem*, *fo'-res*, *fo'-ret*; —, —, *fo'-rent*.  
*Inf. pres.* *fo'-re*.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuërem*, &c., and *fuëre*. *Forem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but *fore* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

4. *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, for *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, and *fuërint* for *fuërint*.

5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, except *possum*; but *prosum* has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

- Ind. pres.* *pro'-sum*, *prod'-es*, *prod'-est*, &c.  
 — *imperf.* *prod'-ē-ram*, *prod'-ē-ras*, &c.

6. *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *potis* is the same in all genders and numbers. In composition, *is* is omitted in *potis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, and *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect, *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	
<i>Pos'-sum,</i>	<i>pos'-se,</i>	<i>pot'-u-i,</i>	<i>I can, or I am able.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>S. pos'-sum, pot'-es, pot'-est;</i>
	<i>P. pos'-sū-mus, pot-es'-tis, pos'-sunt.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>pot'-ē-ram, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>pot'-ē-ro, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>pot'-u-i, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>pot-u'-ē-ram, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>pot-u'-ē-ro, &amp;c.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pos'-sim, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>pos'-sem, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>pot-u'-ē-rim, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>pot-u-is'-sem, &amp;c.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Prés.</i>	<i>pos'-se.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>pot-u-is'-se.</i>

The following forms are also found ;—*potessim* and *possiem*, &c., for *possim*, &c. ; *potesse* for *posse* ; *potestur* for *potest* ; and *possitur* for *possit*.

## § 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>A'-mo,</i>	<i>a-mā'-re,</i>	<i>a-mā'-vi,</i>	<i>a-mā'-tum.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a'-mo,</i>	<i>I love,</i>
	<i>a'-mas,</i>	<i>thou lovest,</i>
	<i>a'-mat,</i>	<i>he loves ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-mā'-mus,</i>	<i>we love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-tis,</i>	<i>ye love,</i>
	<i>a'-mant,</i>	<i>they love.</i>

## Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mā'-bam,</i>	<i>I was loving,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bas,</i>	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bat,</i>	<i>he was loving ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-bā'-mus,</i>	<i>we were loving,</i>
	<i>am-a-bā'-tis,</i>	<i>ye were loving,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bant,</i>	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future. *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mā'-bo,</i>	<i>I shall love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bis,</i>	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bit,</i>	<i>he will love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-mab'-ī-mus,</i>	<i>we shall love,</i>
	<i>a-mab'-ī-tis,</i>	<i>ye will love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-bunt,</i>	<i>they will love.</i>

Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mā'-vi,</i>	<i>I have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis'-ti,</i>	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-vit,</i>	<i>he has loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-mav'-i-mus,</i>	<i>we have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis'-tis,</i>	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vē'-runt or -re,</i>	<i>they have loved.</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mav'-ē-ram,</i>	<i>I had loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-ras,</i>	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-rat,</i>	<i>he had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-ve-rā'-mus,</i>	<i>we had loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-ve-rā'-tis,</i>	<i>ye had loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-rant,</i>	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mav'-ē-rē,</i>	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-ris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-rit,</i>	<i>he will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-ver'-i-mus,</i>	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-ver'-i-tis,</i>	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ē-rint,</i>	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a'-mem,</i>	<i>I may love,</i>
	<i>a'-mes,</i>	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
	<i>a'-met,</i>	<i>he may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-mē'-mus,</i>	<i>we may love,</i>
	<i>a-mē'-tis,</i>	<i>ye may love,</i>
	<i>a'-ment,</i>	<i>they may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mā'-rem,</i>	<i>I would love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-res,</i>	<i>thou wouldst love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-ret,</i>	<i>he would love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-rē'-mus,</i>	<i>we would love,</i>
	<i>am-a-rē'-tis,</i>	<i>ye would love,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-rent,</i>	<i>they would love.</i>

## Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a-mav'-ě-rim,</i>	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ě-ris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ě-rit,</i>	<i>he may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-ver'-l-mus,</i>	<i>we may have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-ver'-l-tis,</i>	<i>ye may have loved,</i>
	<i>a-mav'-ě-rint,</i>	<i>they may have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>am-a-vis'-sem,</i>	<i>I would have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis'-ses,</i>	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis'-set,</i>	<i>he would have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>am-a-vis-sē'-mus,</i>	<i>we would have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis-sē'-tis,</i>	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
	<i>am-a-vis'-sent,</i>	<i>they would have loved</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>a'-ma, or a-mā'-to,</i>	<i>love thou,</i>
	<i>a-mā'-to,</i>	<i>let him love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>a-mā'-te, or am-a-tō'-te,</i>	<i>love ye,</i>
	<i>a-man'-to,</i>	<i>let them love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>a-mā'-re,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>am-a-vis'-se,</i>	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>am-a-tū'-rus es'-se,</i>	<i>to be about to love</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>a'-mans,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>am-a-tū'-rus,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>G.</i>	<i>a-man'-di,</i>	<i>of loving,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>a-man'-do,</i>	<i>to or for loving,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>a-man'-dum,</i>	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>a-man'-do,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>Former.</i>	<i>a-mā'-tum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
----------------	-------------------	-----------------

§ 156.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
A'-mor,	a-mā'-ri,	a-mā'-tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	a'-mor, a-mā'-ris or -re, a-mā'-tur,	<i>I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	a-mā'-mur, a-mam'-ī-ni, a-man'-tur,	<i>we are loved, ye are loved, they are loved.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	a-mā'-bar, am-a-bā'-ris or -re, am-a-bā'-tur,	<i>I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	am-a-bā'-mur, am-a-bam'-ī-ni, am-a-ban'-tur,	<i>we were loved, ye were loved, they were loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	a-mā'-bor, a-mab'-ē-ris or -re, a-mab'-ī-tur,	<i>I shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, he will be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	a-mab'-ī-mur, am-a-bim'-ī-ni, am-a-bun'-tur,	<i>we shall be loved, ye will be loved, they will be loved.</i>

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	a-mā'-tus sum or fu'-i, a-mā'-tus es or fu-is'-ti, a-mā'-tus est or fu'-it,	<i>I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he has been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	a-mā'-ti su'-mus or fu'-ī-mus, a-mā'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis, a-mā'-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re,	<i>we have been loved, ye have been loved, they have been loved.</i>



## Pluperfect.

<i>S.</i> a-mā'-tus e'-ram or fu'-ě-ram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus e'-ras or fu'-ě-ras,	<i>thou hadst been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus e'-rat or fu'-ě-rat,	<i>he had been loved;</i>
<i>P.</i> a-mā'-ti e-rā'-mus or fu-e-rā'-mus,	<i>we had been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti e-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,	<i>ye had been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti e'-rant or fu'-ě-rant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

<i>S.</i> a-mā'-tus e'-ro or fu'-ě-ro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus e'-ris or fu'-ě-ris,	<i>thou wilt have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus e'-rit or fu'-ě-rit,	<i>he will have been loved;</i>
<i>P.</i> a-mā'-ti er'-ī-mus or fu-er'-ī-mus,	<i>we shall have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti er'-ī-tis or fu-er'-ī-tis,	<i>ye will have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti e'-runt or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> a'-mer,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
a-mē'-ris or -re,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
a-mē'-tur,	<i>he may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a-mē'-mur,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
a-mem'-ī-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
a-men'-tur,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> a-mā'-rer,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
am-a-rē'-ris or -re,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
am-a-rē'-tur,	<i>he would be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> am-a-rē'-mur,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
am-a-rem'-ī-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
am-a-ren'-tur,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

## Perfect.

<i>S.</i> a-mā'-tus sim or fu'-ě-rim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus sis or fu'-ě-ris,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-tus sit or fu'-ě-rit,	<i>he may have been loved;</i>
<i>P.</i> a-mā'-ti si'-mus or fu-er'-ī-mus,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti si'-tis or fu-er'-ī-tis,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
a-mā'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>S.</i> a-mā'-tus es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
a-mā'-tus es'-ses or fu-is'-ses,	<i>thou wouldst have</i>	
a-mā'-tus es'-set or fu-is'-set,	<i>he would have</i>	
<i>P.</i> a-mā'-ti es-sē'-mus or fu-is-sē'-mus,	<i>we would have</i>	
a-mā'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,	<i>ye would have</i>	
a-mā'-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have</i>	

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> a-mā'-re, or a-mā'-tor,	<i>be thou loved,</i>
a-mā'-tor,	<i>let him be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> a-mam'-ī-ni,	<i>be ye loved,</i>
a-man'-tor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> a-mā'-ri,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i> a-mā'-tus es'-se or fu-is'-se,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> a-mā'-tum i'-ri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

### PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i> a-mā'-tus,	<i>loved, or having been loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i> a-man'-dus,	<i>to be loved.</i>

### SUPINE.

<i>Latter.</i> a-mā'-tu,	<i>to be loved. *</i>
--------------------------	-----------------------

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, <i>am</i> , are derived			From the second root, <i>amav</i> , are derived		From the third root, <i>amatu</i> , are derived
	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>		<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	<i>amo.</i>	<i>ainor.</i>	<i>Ind. perf.</i>	<i>amāvi.</i>	<i>amātus sum, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>amābam.</i>	<i>amābar.</i>	<i>— plup.</i>	<i>amavēram.</i>	<i>amātus eram, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— fut.</i>	<i>amābo.</i>	<i>amābor.</i>	<i>— fut. perf.</i>	<i>amavēro.</i>	<i>amātus ero, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	<i>amem.</i>	<i>amer.</i>	<i>Subj. perf.</i>	<i>amavērim.</i>	<i>amātus sim, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>amārem.</i>	<i>amārēr.</i>	<i>— plup.</i>	<i>amavissem.</i>	<i>amātus essem, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>amā.</i>	<i>amāre.</i>	<i>Inf. perf.</i>	<i>amavisse.</i>	<i>amātus esse, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	<i>amāre.</i>	<i>amārī.</i>	From the third root,		
<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>amans.</i>		<i>Inf. fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus esse.</i>	<i>amātum iri.</i>
<i>— fut.</i>		<i>amandus.</i>	<i>Part. fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus.</i>	
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>amandī.</i>		<i>— perf.</i>		<i>amātus.</i>
			<i>Form. Sup.</i>	<i>amātum.</i>	<i>Lat. Sup. amātu.</i>

## § 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* Mo'-ne-o,  
*Pres. Inf.* mo-nē'-re,  
*Perf. Ind.* mon'-u-i,  
*Supine.* mon'-ī-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* mo'-ne-or,  
*Pres. Inf.* mo-nē'-ri,  
*Perf. Part.* mon'-ī-tus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I advise.*

*Sing.* mo'-ne-o,  
 mo'-nes,  
 mo'-net;  
*Plur.* mo-nē'-mus,  
 mo-nē'-tis,  
 mo'-nent.

*I am advised.*

*Sing.* mo'-ne-or,  
 mo-nē'-ris or -re,  
 mo-nē'-tur;  
*Plur.* mō-nē'-mur,  
 mo-nem'-ī-ni,  
 mo-nen'-tur.

## Imperfect.

*I was advising.*

*S.* mo-nē'-bam,  
 mo-nē'-bas,  
 mo-nē'-bat;  
*P.* mon-e-bā'-mus,  
 mon-e-bā'-tis,  
 mo-nē'-bant.

*I was advised.*

*S.* mo-nē'-bar,  
 mon-e-bā'-ris or -re,  
 mon-e-bā'-tur;  
*P.* mon-e-bā'-mur,  
 mon-e-bam'-ī-ni,  
 mon-e-ban'-tur.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

*S.* mo-nē'-bo,  
 mo-nē'-bis,  
 mo-nē'-bit;  
*P.* mo-neb'-ī-mus,  
 mo-neb'-ī-tis,  
 mo-nē'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

*S.* mo-nē'-bor,  
 mo-neb'-ē-ris or -re,  
 mo-neb'-ī-tur;  
*P.* mo-neb'-ī-mur,  
 mon-e-bim'-ī-ni,  
 mon-e-bun'-tur.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Perfect.

*I advised, or have advised.*

*S.* mon'-u-i,  
mon-u-is'-ti,  
mon-u-it ;

*P.* mo-nu'-i-mus,  
mon-u-is'-tis,  
mon-u-ē'-runt or -re.

*I was or have been advised.*

*S.* mon'-i-tus sum or fu'-i,  
mon'-i-tus es or fu-is'-ti,  
mon'-i-tus est or fu'-it ;

*P.* mon'-i-ti su'-mus or fu'-i-mus,  
mon'-i-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
mon'-i-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re.

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

*S.* mo-nu'-ē-ram,  
mo-nu'-ē-ras,  
mo-nu'-ē-rat ;

*P.* mon-u-e-rā'-mus,  
mon-u-e-rā'-tis,  
mo-nu'-ē-rant.

*I had been advised.*

*S.* mon'-i-tus e'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
mon'-i-tus e'-ras or fu'-ē-ras,  
mon'-i-tus e'-rat or fu'-ē-rat ;

*P.* mon'-i-ti e-rā'-mus or fu-e-rā'-mus,  
mon'-i-ti e-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
mon'-i-ti e'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

*S.* mo-nu'-ē-ro,  
mo-nu'-ē-ris,  
mo-nu'-ē-rit ;

*P.* mon-u-er'-i-mus,  
mon-u-er'-i-tis,  
mo-nu'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been advised.*

*S.* mon'-i-tus e'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,  
mon'-i-tus e'-ris or fu'-ē-ris,  
mon'-i-tus e'-rit or fu'-ē-rit ;

*P.* mon'-i-ti er'-i-mus or fu-er'-i-mus,  
mon'-i-ti er'-i-tis or fu-er'-i-tis,  
mon'-i-ti e'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

*S.* mo'-ne-am,  
mo'-ne-as,  
mo'-ne-at ;

*P.* mo-ne-ā'-mus,  
mo-ne-ā'-tis,  
mo'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

*S.* mo'-ne-ar,  
mo-ne-ā'-ris or -re,  
mo-ne-ā'-tur ;

*P.* mo-ne-ā'-mur,  
mo-ne-am'-i-ni,  
mo-ne-an'-tur.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or  
should advise.*

- S.* mo-nē'-rem,  
mo-nē'-res,  
mo-nē'-ret;  
*P.* mon-e-rē'-mus,  
mon-e-rē'-tis,  
mo-nē'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or  
should be advised.*

- S.* mo-nē'-rer,  
mon-e-rē'-ris or -re,  
mon-e-rē'-tur;  
*P.* mon-e-rē'-mur,  
mon-e-rem'-i-ni,  
mon-e-ren'-tur.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

- S.* mo-nu'-ě-rim,  
mo-nu'-ě-ris,  
mo-nu'-ě-rit;  
*P.* mon-u-er'-i-mus,  
mon-u-er'-i-tis,  
mo-nu'-ě-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

- S.* mon'-i-tus sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
mon'-i-tus sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
mon'-i-tus sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
*P.* mon'-i-ti si'-mus or fu-er'-i-mus,  
mon'-i-ti si'-tis or fu-er'-i-tis,  
mon'-i-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or  
should have advised.*

- S.* mon-u-is'-sem,  
mon-u-is'-ses,  
mon-u-is'-set;  
*P.* mon-u-is-sē'-mus,  
mon-u-is-sē'-tis,  
mon-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should  
have been advised.*

- S.* mon'-i-tus es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mon'-i-tus es'-ses or fu-is'-ses,  
mon'-i-tus es'-set or fu-is'-set;  
*P.* mon'-i-ti es-sē'-mus or fu-is-sē'-mus,  
mon'-i-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
mon'-i-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*advise thou.*

- S.* mo'-ne, or mo-nē'-to,  
mo-nē'-to;  
*P.* mo-nē'-te, or mon-e-tō'-te,  
mo-nen'-to.

*be thou advised.*

- S.* mo-nē'-re, or mo-nē'-tor,  
mo-nē'-tor;  
*P.* mo-nem'-i-ni,  
mo-nen'-tor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* mo-nē'-re, *to advise.*

*Perf.* mon-u-is'-se, *to have ad-  
vised.*

*Fut.* mon-i-tū'-rus es'-se, *to be  
about to advise.*

*Pres.* mo-nē'-ri, *to be advised.*

*Perf.* mon'-i-tus es'-se or fu-is'-  
se, *to have been advised.*

*Fut.* mon'-i-tum i'-ri, *to be  
about to be advised*

ACTIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PASSIVE.

*Pres.* mo'-nens, *advising.*

*Fut.* mon-i-tū'-rus, *about to advise.*

*Perf.* mon'-ī-tus, *advised.*

*Fut.* mo-nen'-dus, *to be advised.*

GERUND.

*G.* mo-nen'-di, *of advising,*

*D.* mo-nen'-do, &c.

*Ac.* mo-nen'-dum,

*Ab.* mo-nen'-do.

SUPINES.

*Former.* mon'-ī-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mon'-ī-tu, *to be advised.* ✓

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	monéo,	monéor,
— <i>imperf.</i>	monébam,	monébar,
— <i>fut.</i>	monébo,	monébor,
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	monéam,	monéar,
— <i>imperf.</i>	monérem,	monérer,
<i>Imperat.</i>	moné,	monére,
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	monére,	monéri,
<i>Part. pres.</i>	monens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		monendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	monendi.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui,	monitus sum, &c.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram,	monitus eram, &c.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	monuēro,	monitus ero, &c.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim,	monitus sim, &c.
— <i>plup.</i>	monuissē,	monitus essem, &c.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse,	monitus esse, &c.

From the third root,

<i>Inf. fut.</i>	monitūrus esse,	monitum iri,
<i>Part. fut.</i>	monitūrus,	
— <i>perf.</i>		monitus,
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	monitum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> monitu.

§ 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* Re'-go,  
*Pres. Inf.* reg'-ē-re,  
*Perf. Ind.* rex'-i,  
*Supine.* rec'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* re'-gor,  
*Pres. Inf.* re'-gi,  
*Perf. Part.* rec'-tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I rule.*

*Sing.* re'-go,  
 re'-gis,  
 re'-git;  
*Plur.* reg'-ī-mus,  
 reg'-ī-tis,  
 re'-gunt.

*I am ruled.*

*Sing.* re'-gor,  
 reg'-ē-ris or -re,  
 reg'-ī-tur;  
*Plur.* reg'-ī-mur,  
 re-gim'-ī-ni,  
 re-gun'-tur.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling.*

*S.* re-gē'-bam,  
re-gē'-bas,  
re-gē'-bat;  
*P.* reg-e-bā'-mus,  
reg-e-bā'-tis,  
re-gē'-bant.

*I was ruled.*

*S.* re-gē'-bar,  
reg-e-bā'-ris or -re,  
reg-e-bā'-tur;  
*P.* reg-e-bā'-mur,  
reg-e-bam'-ī-ni,  
reg-e-ban'-tur.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

*S.* re'-gam,  
re'-ges,  
re'-get;  
*P.* re-gē'-mus,  
re-gē'-tis,  
re'-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

*S.* re'-gar,  
re-gē'-ris or -re,  
re-gē'-tur;  
*P.* re-gē'-mur,  
re-gem'-ī-ni,  
re-gen'-tur.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-i,  
rex-is'-ti,  
rex'-it;  
*P.* rex'-ī-mus,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ē'-runt or -re.

*I was or have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tus sum or fu'-i,  
rec'-tus es or fu-is'-ti,  
rec'-tus est or fu'-it;  
*P.* rec'-ti su-mus or fu'-ī-mus,  
rec'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re.

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-ras,  
rex'-ē-rat;  
*P.* rex-e-rā'-mus,  
rex-e-rā'-tis,  
rex'-ē-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tus e'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tus e'-ras or fu'-ē-ras,  
rec'-tus e'-rat or fu'-ē-rat;  
*P.* rec'-ti e-rā'-mus or fu-e-rā'-mus,  
rec'-ti e-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
rec'-ti e'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ē-ro,  
rex'-ē-ris,  
rex'-ē-rit;  
*P.* rex-er'-ī-mus,  
rex-er'-ī-tis,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tus e'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,  
rec'-tus e'-ris or fu'-ē-ris,  
rec'-tus e'-rit or fu'-ē-rit;  
*P.* rec'-ti er'-ī-mus or fu-er'-ī-mus,  
rec'-ti er'-ī-tis or fu-er'-ī-tis,  
rec'-ti e'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I may or can rule.*

*S.* re'-gam,  
re'-gas,  
re'-gat ;  
*P.* re-gā'-mus,  
re-gā'-tis,  
re'-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

*S.* re'-gar,  
re-gā'-ris or -re,  
re-gā'-tur ;  
*P.* re-gā'-mur,  
re-gam'-i-ni,  
re-gan'-tur.

Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or  
should rule.*

*S.* reg'-ě-rem,  
reg'-ě-res,  
reg'-ě-ret ;  
*P.* reg-e-rē'-mus,  
reg-e-rē'-tis,  
reg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or  
should be ruled.*

*S.* reg'-ě-rer,  
reg-e-rē'-ris or -re,  
reg-e-rē'-tur ;  
*P.* reg-e-rē'-mur,  
reg-e-rem'-i-ni,  
reg-e-ren'-tur.

Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-ris,  
rex'-ě-rit ;  
*P.* rex-er'-i-mus,  
rex-er'-i-tis,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tus sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tus sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
rec'-tus sit or fu'-ě-rit ;  
*P.* rec'-ti si'-mus or fu-er'-i-mus,  
rec'-ti si'-tis or fu-er'-i-tis,  
rec'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or  
should have ruled.*

*S.* rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-ses,  
rex-is'-set ;  
*P.* rex-is-sē'-mus,  
rex-is-sē'-tis,  
rex-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should  
have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tus es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tus es'-ses or fu-is'-ses,  
rec'-tus es'-set or fu-is'-set ;  
*P.* rec'-ti es-sē'-mus or fu-is-sē'-mus,  
rec'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
rec'-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*rule thou.**be thou ruled.**S. re'-ge, or reg'-i-to,  
reg'-i-to ;**S. reg'-ě-re, or reg'-i-tor,  
reg'-i-tor ;**P. reg'-i-te, or reg-i-tō'-te,  
re-gun'-to.**P. re-gim'-i-ni,  
re-gun'-tor.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. reg'-ě-re, to rule.**Pres. re'-gi, to be ruled.**Perf. rex-is'-se, to have ruled.**Perf. rec'-tus es'-se or fu-is'-se,  
to have been ruled.**Fut. rec-tū'-rus es'-se, to be  
about to rule.**Fut. rec'-tum i'-ri, to be about  
to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. re'-gens, ruling.**Perf. rec'-tus, ruled.**Fut. rec-tū'-rus, about to rule.**Fut. re-gen'-dus, to be ruled.*

## GERUND.

*G. re-gen'-di, of ruling,**D. re-gen'-do, &c.**Ac. re-gen'-dum,**Ab. re-gen'-do.*

## SUPINES.

*Former. rec'-tum, to rule.**Latter. rec'-tu, to be ruled.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	<i>rego,</i>	<i>regor,</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>regēbam,</i>	<i>regēbar,</i>
<i>— fut.</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>regar,</i>
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	<i>regam,</i>	<i>regar,</i>
<i>— imperf.</i>	<i>regērem,</i>	<i>regērer,</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>rege,</i>	<i>regere,</i>
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	<i>regere,</i>	<i>regi,</i>
<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>regens,</i>	
<i>— fut</i>		<i>regendus.</i>
<i>Gerund</i>	<i>regendi.</i>	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	<i>rexī,</i>	<i>rectus sum, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— plup.</i>	<i>rexeram,</i>	<i>rectus eram, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— fut. perf.</i>	<i>rexero,</i>	<i>rectus ero, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	<i>rexerim,</i>	<i>rectus sim, &amp;c.</i>
<i>— plup.</i>	<i>rexissem,</i>	<i>rectus essem, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	<i>rexisse.</i>	<i>rectus esse, &amp;c.</i>

From the third root,

<i>Inf. fut.</i>	<i>rectūrus esse,</i>	<i>rectum iri,</i>
<i>Part. fut.</i>	<i>rectūrus,</i>	
<i>— perf.</i>		<i>rectus,</i>
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	<i>rectum.</i>	<i>Lat. Sup. recta.</i>

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

§ 159:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* Ca'-pi-o, *to take,*  
*Pres. Inf.* cap'-ě-re,  
*Perf. Ind.* ce'-pi,  
*Supine.* cap'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* ca'-pi-or, *to be*  
*taken,*  
*Pres. Inf.* ca'-pi,  
*Perf. Part.* cap'-tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*S.* ca'-pi-o,  
 ca'-pis,  
 ca'-pit ;  
*P.* cap'-i-mus,  
 cap'-i-tis,  
 ca'-pi-unt.

*S.* ca'-pi-or,  
 cap'-ě-ris *or* -re,  
 cap'-i-tur ;  
*P.* cap'-i-mur,  
 ca-pim'-i-ni,  
 ca-pi-un'-tur.

Imperfect.

*S.* ca-pi-ē'-bam,  
 ca-pi-ē'-bas,  
 ca-pi-ē'-bat ;  
*P.* ca-pi-e-bā'-mus,  
 ca-pi-e-bā'-tis,  
 ca-pi-ē'-bant.

*S.* ca-pi-ē'-bar,  
 ca-pi-e-bā'-ris *or* -re,  
 ca-pi-e-bā'-tur ;  
*P.* ca-pi-e-bā'-mur,  
 ca-pi-e-bam'-i-ni,  
 ca-pi-e-ban'-tur.

Future.

*S.* ca'-pi-am,  
 ca'-pi-es,  
 ca'-pi-et ;  
*P.* ca-pi-ē'-mus,  
 ca-pi-ē'-tis,  
 ca'-pi-ent.

*S.* ca'-pi-ar,  
 ca-pi-ē'-ris *or* -re,  
 ca-pi-ē'-tur ;  
*P.* ca-pi-ē'-mur,  
 ca-pi-em'-i-ni,  
 ca-pi-en'-tur.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* ce'-pi.  
*Plup.* cep'-ě-ram.  
*Fut. perf.* cep'-ě-ro.

*Perf.* cap'-tus sum *or* fu'-i.  
*Plup.* cap'-tus e'-ram *or* fu'-ě-ram.  
*Fut. perf.* cap'-tus e'-ro *or* fu'-ě-ro.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* ca'-pi-am

ca'-pi-as,

ca'-pi-at ;

*P.* ca-pi-ā'-mus,

ca-pi-ā'-tis,

ca'-pi-ant.

*S.* ca'-pi-ar,ca-pi-ā'-ris *or* -re,

ca-pi-ā'-tur ;

*P.* ca-pi-ā'-mur,

ca-pi-am'-i-ni,

ca-pi-an'-tur.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cap'-ē-rem,

cap'-ē-res,

cap'-ē-ret ;

*P.* cap-e-rē'-mus,

cap-e-rē'-tis,

cap'-ē-rent.

*S.* cap'-ē-rer,cap-e-rē'-ris *or* -re,

cap-e-rē'-tur ;

*P.* cap-e-rē'-mur,

cap-e-rem'-i-ni,

cap-e-ren'-tur.

*Perf.* cep'-ē-rim.*Plup.* ce-pis'-sem.*Perf.* cap'-tus sim *or* fu'-ē-rim.*Plup.* cap'-tus es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S.* ca'-pe, *or* cap'-i-to,

cap'-i-to ;

*P.* cap'-i-te, *or* cap-i-tō'-te,

ca-pi-un'-to.

*S.* cap'-ē-re, *or* cap'-i-tor,

cap'-i-tor ;

*P.* ca-pim'-i-ni,

ca-pi-un'-tor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cap'-ē-re.*Perf.* ce-pis'-se.*Fut.* cap-tū'-rus es'-se.*Pres.* ca'-pi.*Perf.* cap'-tus es'-se *or* fu-is'-se.*Fut.* cap'-tum i'-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* ca'-pi-ens.*Fut.* cap-tū'-rus.*Perf.* cap'-tus.*Fut.* ca-pi-en'-dus.

## GERUND.

*G.* ca-pi-en'-di, &c.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.*Latter.* cap'-tu.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

§ 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* Au'-di-o,  
*Pres. Inf.* au-dī'-re,  
*Perf. Ind.* au-dī'-vi,  
*Supine.* au-dī'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-di-or,  
*Pres Inf.* au-dī'-ri,  
*Perf. Part.* au-dī'-tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I hear.*

*S.* au'-di-o,  
 au'-dis,  
 au'-dit ;  
*P.* au-dī'-mus,  
 au-dī'-tis,  
 au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

*S.* au'-di-or,  
 au-dī'-ris or -re,  
 au-dī'-tur ;  
*P.* au-dī'-mur,  
 au-dim'-ī-ni,  
 au-di-un'-tur.

Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

*S.* au-di-ē'-bam,  
 au-di-ē'-bas,  
 au-di-ē'-bat ;  
*P.* au-di-e-bā'-mus,  
 au-di-e-bā'-tis,  
 au-di-ē'-bant.

*I was heard.*

*S.* au-di-ē'-bar,  
 au-di-e-bā'-ris or -re,  
 au-di-e-bā'-tur ;  
*P.* au-di-e-bā'-mur,  
 au-di-e-bam'-ī-ni,  
 au-di-e-ban'-tur.

Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

*S.* au'-di-am,  
 au'-di-es,  
 au'-di-et ;  
*P.* au-di-ē'-mus,  
 au-di-ē'-tis,  
 au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

*S.* au'-di-ar,  
 au-di-ē'-ris or -re,  
 au-di-ē'-tur ;  
*P.* au-di-ē'-mur,  
 au-di-em'-ī-ni,  
 au-di-en'-tur.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

- S.* au-di'-vi,  
au-di-vis'-ti,  
au-di'-vit ;  
*P.* au-div'-i-mus,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vē'-runt or -re.

*I have been or was heard.*

- S.* au-dī'-tus sum or fu'-i,  
au-dī'-tus es or fu-is'-ti,  
au-dī'-tus est or fu-it ;  
*P.* au-dī'-ti su'-mus or fu'-i-mus,  
au-dī'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-dī'-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

- S.* au-div'-ē-ram,  
au-div'-ē-ras,  
au-div'-ē-rat ;  
*P.* au-di-ve-rā'-mus,  
au-di-ve-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ē-rant.

*I had been heard.*

- S.* au-dī'-tus e'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
au-dī'-tus e'-ras or fu'-ē-ras,  
au-dī'-tus e'-rat or fu'-ē-rat ;  
*P.* au-dī'-ti e-rā'-mus or fu-e-rā'-mus,  
au-dī'-ti e-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
au-dī'-ti e'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

- S.* au-div'-ē-ro,  
au-div'-ē-ris,  
au-div'-ē-rit ;  
*P.* au-di-ver'-i-mus,  
au-di-ver'-i-tis,  
au-div'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

- S.* au-dī'-tus e'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,  
au-dī'-tus e'-ris or fu'-ē-ris,  
au-dī'-tus e'-rit or fu'-ē-rit ;  
*P.* au-dī'-ti er'-i-mus or fu-er'-i-mus,  
au-dī'-ti er'-i-tis or fu-er'-i-tis,  
au-dī'-ti e'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

- S.* au'-di-am,  
au'-di-as,  
au'-di-at ;  
*P.* au-di-ā'-mus,  
au-di-ā'-tis,  
au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

- S.* au'-di-ar,  
au-di-ā'-ris or -re,  
au-di-ā'-tur ;  
*P.* au-di-ā'-mur,  
au-di-am'-i-ni,  
au-di-an'-tur.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or  
should hear.*

*S.* au-dī'-rem,  
au-dī'-res,  
au-dī'-ret ;  
*P.* au-di-rē'-mus,  
au-di-rē'-tis,  
au-dī'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or  
should be heard.*

*S.* au-dī'-rer,  
au-di-rē'-ris or -re,  
au-di-rē'-tur ;  
*P.* au-di-rē'-mur,  
au-di-rem'-ī-ni,  
au-di-ren'-tur.

Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

*S.* au-div'-ě-rim,  
au-div'-ě-ris,  
au-div'-ě-rit ;  
*P.* au-di-ver'-ī-mus,  
au-di-ver'-ī-tis,  
au-div'-ě-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

*S.* au-dī'-tus sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
au-dī'-tus sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
au-dī'-tus sit or fu'-ě-rit ;  
*P.* au-dī'-ti si'-mus or fu-er'-ī-mus,  
au-dī'-ti si'-tis or fu-er'-ī-tis,  
au-dī'-ti sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would,  
or should have heard.*

*S.* au-di-vis'-sem,  
au-di-vis'-ses,  
au-di-vis'-set ;  
*P.* au-di-vis-sē'-mus,  
au-di-vis-sē'-tis,  
au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should  
have been heard.*

*S.* au-dī'-tus es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
au-dī'-tus es'-ses or fu-is'-ses,  
au-dī'-tus es'-set or fu-is'-set ;  
*P.* au-dī'-ti es-sē'-mus or fu-is-sē'-mus,  
au-dī'-ti es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
au-dī'-ti es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*hear thou.*

*S.* au'-di, or au-dī'-to,  
au-dī'-to ;  
*P.* au-dī'-te, or au-di-tō'-te,  
au-di-un'-to.

*be thou heard.*

*S.* au-dī'-re, or au-dī'-tor,  
au-dī'-tor ;  
*P.* au-dim'-ī-ni,  
au-di-un'-tor.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-dī'-re, to hear.*Perf.* au-di-vis'-se, to have heard.*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rus es'-se, to be about to hear.*Pres.* au-dī'-ri, to be heard.*Perf.* au-dī'-tus es'-se or fu-is'-se, to have been heard.*Fut.* au-dī'-tum i'-ri, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au'-di-ens, hearing.*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rus, about to hear.*Perf.* au-dī'-tus, heard.*Fut.* au-di-en'-dus, to be heard.

## GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-di, of hearing,*D.* au-di-en'-do, &c.*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,*Ab.* au-di-en'-do.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* au-dī'-tum, to hear. | *Latter.* au-dī'-tu, to be heard.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	audio,	audior,
— <i>imperf.</i>	audiēbam,	audiēbar,
— <i>fut.</i>	audiam,	audiar,
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	audiam,	audiar,
— <i>imperf.</i>	audīrem,	audīrer,
<i>Imperat.</i>	audi,	audire,
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	audire,	audiri,
<i>Part. pres.</i>	audiens,	
— <i>fut.</i>		audiendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	audiendi.	

From the second root, *audire*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	audivi,	auditus sum, &c.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivēram,	auditus eram, &c.
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	audivēro,	auditus ero, &c.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	audivērim,	auditus sim, &c.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivissem,	auditus essem, &c.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	audivisse.	auditus esse, &c.

From the third root,

<i>Inf. fut.</i>	auditūrus esse,	auditum iri,
<i>Part. fut.</i>	auditūrus,	
— <i>perf.</i>		auditus,
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	auditum.	<i>Lat. Sup.</i> auditu.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Dependent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter dependent verbs, however,

want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Mi'-ror, mi-rā'-ri, mi-rā'-tus, to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mi'-ror, mi-rā'-ris, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I admire, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-bar, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I was admiring.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-bor,</i>	<i>I shall admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus sum or fu'-i,</i>	<i>I have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus e'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,</i>	<i>I had admired.</i>
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus e'-ro or fu'-ē-ro,</i>	<i>I shall have admired.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mi'-rer, mi-rē'-ris, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I may admire, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-rer,</i>	<i>I would admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus sim or fu'-ē-rim,</i>	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus es'-sem or fu'-is'-sem,</i>	<i>I would have admired.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*mi-rā'-re, or mi-rā'-tor, admire thou, &c.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-ri,</i>	<i>to admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus esse or fu'-is'-se,</i>	<i>to have admired.</i>
<i>Fut. act.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tū'-rus es'-se,</i>	<i>to be about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. pass.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tum i'-ri,</i>	<i>to be about to be admired.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mi'-rans,</i>	<i>admiring.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tus,</i>	<i>having admired.</i>
<i>Fut. act.</i>	<i>mi-rā'-tū'-rus,</i>	<i>about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. pass.</i>	<i>mi-ran'-dus,</i>	<i>to be admired.</i>

GERUND.

*G. mi-ran'-di, of admiring, &c.*

SUPINES.

*Former. mi-rā'-tum, to admire. — Latter. mi-rā'-tu, to be admired.*



## REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers, end in *im*; as, *edim* for *cdam*, *duim* for *dem* (from an old form *duo*), *creduim* and *perduim* for *credam* and *perdam*. This was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestiham*, *largibar*, for *vestiēbam*, *largiēbar*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*: in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*. *Scio* has not *sci*, but *scito*.

5. In the second person of the imperative passive, an ancient form in *mitno* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural, is very rarely found; as, *fumitno* for *fure*, *progredimīnor* for *progredimīni*.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by the early poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dici*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. When the second root ends in *v*, a contraction often occurs in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, with the first vowel of the termination, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amāsti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *implevērunt*, *nōram* and *nōsse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* alone is often omitted; as, *audiēro* for *audivēro*; *audiisse* for *audivisse*.

When this root ends in *s* or *x*, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisti*, *extinxi* for *extinxisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse*; *extinxem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *accestis* for *accessistis*, *justi* for *jussisti*. So *fazem* for (*facsissem*), *fecissem*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ere* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, and a perfect subjunctive in *sim*, sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepso*, *emissim*. But when the root ends in *x*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o* and *im* are added; as, *jusso*, *dixis*. *V*, at the end of the root, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso*, *locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, is changed into *esso*; as, *habesso*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso*, *fazo* (*facso*), *fazim* (*facsim*).

NOTE. *Fazo* and *fazim* sometimes have the meaning of the future tense.

10. A future infinitive in *sēre* is also sometimes found, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s*; as, *impetrassēre* for *impetratūrus esse*.

### *Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.*

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have supines not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amātus*, -a, -um, *est*; *amāti*, -æ, -a, *sunt*, &c.

*Fui*, *fuēram*, *fuērim*, and *fuissem*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, &c., in those of other verbs, but they express more emphatically than the latter the completion of the action.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amātus*, -a, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amātum*, -am, -um, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amāti*, -æ, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; *amātos*, -as, -a, *esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others.

But these participles in this combination with *esse*, are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic.

### *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. Hence arises what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

#### INDICATIVE.

amatūrus sum,	<i>I am about to love.</i>
amatūrus eram,	<i>I was about to love.</i>
amatūrus ero,	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
amatūrus fui,	<i>I was or have been about to love.</i>
amatūrus fuēram,	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

amatūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
amatūrus essem,	<i>I would be about to love.</i>
amatūrus fuērim,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
amatūrus fuissem,	<i>I would have been about to love.</i>

#### INFINITIVE.

amatūrus esse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
amatūrus fuisse,	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

*Futro* is not found joined with the participle in *rus*.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a second periphrastic conjugation;—thus:

amandus sum,  
amandus eram,  
amandus ero,  
amandus fui,  
amandus fuëram,  
amandus fuëro.

amandus sim,  
amandus essem,  
amandus fuërim;  
amandus fuisset,  
amandus esse,  
amandus fuisse.

### Participles.

16. Neuter verbs, as they want the passive voice, have usually only the participles of the active. Some of them, however, have perfect participles, of which a part are to be translated passively, others by past participles of English neuter verbs. Such are *adultus*, *cessatus*, *clamatus*, *coactus*, *concretus*, *defectus*, *deflagratus*, *emersus*, *erratus*, *interitus*, *obitus*, *occusus*, *placitus*, *redundatus*, *regnatus*, *requiescens*, *sudatus*, *suctus*, *triumphatus*, *ululatus*, *vigilatus*.

The following perfect participles, from verbs which are sometimes active, are also translated by active participles:—*cædatus*, having sniped; *potus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *juratus*, having sworn.

Some neuter verbs, also, have future passive participles; as, *dormiendus*, *errandus*, *regnandus*, *vigilandus*, &c.

NOTE. Most passive participles of neuter verbs are indicated in the lists which follow.

For the active meaning of *osus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertatem*, having obtained liberty, or *adepta libertate*, liberty having been obtained.

So *abominatus*, *comitatus*, *commentatus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestatus*, *detestatus*, *dignatus*, *dimensus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecratus*, *interpretatus*, *lurgitus*, *machinatus*, *meditatus*, *mercatus*, *metatus*, *oblatus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *perfunctus*, *pollicitus*, *testatus*, *veneratus*, *ultus*.

18. The participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. (See in lists.)

But *ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *ausi omnes immane nefas, ausque potiti*. Virg.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is not used, except that of *futurus*.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the future passive participle sometimes ends in *undus*, especially when *i* precedes. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*. In these conjugations the gerund also has sometimes *undi*, &c.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, sig-

nifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition ; they thus become adjectives ; as, *insciens*, ignorant ; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared ; as, *amans*, loving ; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. In some instances, they become substantives ; as, *præfectus*, a commander.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *ītus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives ; as, *alātus*, winged ; *turritus*, turreted, &c. See § 123, 7.

## GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, though it be changed in the second ; as, *facio*, *factum* ; *habeo*, *hābitum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs prefix to the second root their initial consonant, with the vowel which follows it, or with *e* ; as, *curro*, *cucurri* ; *fallo*, *fefelli* ; *cano*, *cecini* ; *parco*, *peperci*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*. The verbs in which it is found will be specified hereafter. See §§ 165, 168 and 171, Exc. 1, (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root want also the third.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs from which they are derived ; as, *audio*, *audivi*, *audītum* ; *exaudio*, *exaudivi*, *exaudītum*.

Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication ; but the compounds of *dō*, *sto*, *disco*, *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 2,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound ; as, *scando*, *scandi*, *scansum* ; *descendo*, *descendi*, *descensum*.

Exc. 3. When *a*, *æ*, or *e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple is a trisyllable ; as, *habeo*, *habui*, *hābitum* ; *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibītum*.

But if the third root is a dissyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple,

but sometimes changes *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *facio, feci, factum*; *conficio, confēci, confectum*; *teneo, tenui, tentum*; *retineo, retinui, retentum*.

NOTE. The compounds of *cado, ago, frango, pango, and tango*, retain *a*, and those of *salio* retain *u*, in the third root.

Exc. 4. Compounds of *pario*, and some of *do* and *cubo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *ātu*; as, *amo, amāvi, amātum*. The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

NOTE. In this and the subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u*. *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*.

\**Abundo*, *r.* to overflow.  
*Accuso*, *m. r. d.* to accuse.

†*Adumbro*, to delineate.  
*Edifico*, *r. d.* to build.

*Æquo*, *r. d.* to level.

*Æstimo*, *r. d.* to value.

\**Ambulo*, *m. d.* to walk.

*Amo*, *r. d.* to love.

†*Amplio*, *d.* to enlarge.

*Appello*, *d.* to call.

*Apto*, *d.* to fit.

*Aro*, *r. d.* to plough.

\*†*Ausculdo*, to listen.

\*†*Autūmo*, to suppose.

†*Basio*, —, *d.* to kiss.

\**Bello*, *m. r. d.* to wage war.

†*Beo*, to bless.

\**Boo*, to bellow.

†*Brevio*, to shorten.

†*Cæco*, to blind.

†*Cælo*, to carve.

†*Calceo*, *d.* to shoe.

\*†*Calcistro*, to kick.

*Canto*, *m.* to sing.

*Capto*, *m. r. d.* to seize.

†*Castigo*, *m. d.* to chastise.

*Celebro*, *d.* to celebrate.

*Celo*, *d.* to conceal.

*Cesso*, *d.* to cease.

*Certo*, *r. d.* to strive.

*Clamo*, to shout.

*Cogito*, *d.* to think.

*Comparo*, *d.* to compare.

*Concilio*, *r. d.* to reconcile.

*Considero*, *r. d.* to consider.

*Cremo*, *d.* to burn.

*concremo*, *r.*

†*Creo*, *r. d.* to create.

*Crucio*, *d.* to torment.

*Culpo*, *r. d.* to blame.

†*Cuneo*, *d.* to wedge.

*Curo*, *r. d.* to cure.

*Damno*, *m. r. d.* to condemn.

*Decoro*, *d.* to adorn.

\*†*Delineo*, to delineate.

*Desidero*, *r. d.* to desire.

*Destino*, *d.* to design.

*Dico*, *m. r. d.* to dedicate.

*Dieto*, to dictate.

†*Dolo*, to keep.

*Dono*, *r. d.* to bestow.

*Duplico*, *r. d.* to double.

- Duro, r. to harden.  
†Effigio, to portray.  
Equito, to ride.  
†Eucleo, to explain.  
Erro, to wander.  
Existimo, u. d. to think.  
Exploro, m. d. to search.  
Exulo, m. r. to be banished.  
Fabrico, d. to frame.  
†Fatigo, r. d. to weary.  
Festino, r. to hasten.  
Firmo, r. d. to strengthen.  
Flagito, m. d. to demand.  
\*Flagro, r. to be on fire.  
conflagro, r.  
deflagro.  
Flo, d. to blow.  
Formo, r. d. to form.  
Foro, d. to bore.  
†Fræno, to bridle.  
†Fraude, d. to defraud.  
†Frio, —, to crumble.  
Fugo, r. d. to put to flight.  
†Fundo, r. to found.  
†Furio, —, to madden.  
†Galeo, —, to put on a helmet.  
Gesto, d. to bear.  
Glacio, —, to congeal.  
Gravo, d. to weigh down.  
Gusto, d. to taste.  
Habito, m. d. to dwell.  
\*Halo, —, to breathe.  
Hiemo, m. to winter.  
\*Hio, d. to gape.  
†Humo, r. d. to bury.  
Jacto, r. d. to throw.  
Ignoro, r. d. to be ignorant.  
Impero, r. d. to command.  
†Impetro, r. d. to obtain.  
Inchoo, r. to begin.  
†Indago, r. d. to trace out.  
Indico, m. r. d. to show.  
†Inebrio, —, to inebriate.  
Initio, to initiate.  
Inquinio, to pollute.  
Instauro, d. to renew.  
Intro, r. d. to enter.  
Invito, d. to invite.  
Irrito, r. d. to irritate.
- Itéro, u. d. to do again.  
Judico, r. d. to judge.  
Jugo, d. to couple.  
Jugulo, m. d. to butcher.  
Juro, d. to swear.  
Laboro, r. d. to labor.  
Lacero, d. to tear.  
\*Lacto, to suckle.  
†Lanio, d. to butcher.  
Latro, to bark.  
Laudo, r. d. to praise.  
Laxo, d. to loose.  
†Lego, to depute.  
Levo, r. d. to lighten.  
Libero, r. d. to free.  
Libo, d. to pour out.  
Ligo, to bind.  
†Liquo, d. to melt.  
Lito, to appease.  
Loco, r. d. to place.  
Lustro, d. to survey.  
Luxurio, to abound.  
Macto, d. to slay.  
Maculo, to stain.  
Mando, r. d. to command.  
Manduco, to chew.  
\*Mano, d. to flow.  
Maturo, d. to ripen.  
Memoro, u. d. to tell.  
\*Meo, to go.  
\*Migro, u. r. d. to depart.  
\*Milito, m. r. to serve in war.  
†Minio, d. to paint red.  
Ministro, d. to serve.  
Mitigo, d. to pacify.  
Monstro, r. to show.  
†demonstro, d.  
Muto, r. d. to change.  
Narro, r. d. to tell.  
Nato, m. r. to swim.  
†Navigo, r. d. to sail.  
Navo, r. d. to perform.  
\*Nauseo, to loathe.  
Negotio, m. r. d. to deny.  
\*No, to swim.  
Nomino, r. d. to name.  
Noto, d. to mark.  
Novo, r. d. to renew.  
Nudo, d. to make bare.  
Nuncupo, r. d. to name.  
Nuntio, m. r. to tell.  
renuntio, d.  
\*Nuto, r. to nod.  
Obsecro, r. d. to beseech.  
Obtrunco, r. to kill.  
Onero, r. d. to load.
- Opto, d. to wish.  
†Orbo, r. to deprive.  
Orno, r. d. to adorn.  
Oro, m. r. d. to beg.  
Paco, d. to subdue.  
Paro, r. d. to prepare.  
Patro, r. d. to perform.  
\*Pecco, r. d. to sin.  
†Pio, d. to propitiate.  
Placo, r. d. to appease.  
Floro, m. d. to bewail.  
Porto, u. r. d. to carry.  
Postulo, m. r. d. to demand.  
Privo, d. to deprive.  
Probo, m. u. r. d. to approve.  
comprobo, m.  
Profligo, d. to rout.  
Propero, d. to hasten.  
\*†Propino, to drink to.  
Propitio, d. to appease.  
Pugno, r. d. to fight.  
Pulso, d. to beat.  
Purgo, u. r. d. to cleanse.  
Puto, d. to think.  
Quasso, d. to shake.  
Radio, to emit rays.  
Rapto, d. to drag.  
Recupero, m. r. d. to recover.  
Recuso, r. d. to refuse.  
Redundo, to overflow.  
Regno, r. d. to rule.  
†Repudio, r. d. to reject.  
Resero, d. to unlock.  
\*†Retalio, —, to retaliate.  
Rigo, to water.  
Rogo, m. r. d. to ask.  
Roto, to whirl.  
Sacrifico, m. to sacrifice.  
Sacro, d. to consecrate.  
†Sagino, d. to fatten.  
Salto, r. to dance.  
Saluto, m. r. d. to salute.  
Sano, r. d. to heal.  
Satio, to satiate.  
†Saturo, to fill.  
Saucio, d. to wound.  
\*Secundo, to prosper.  
Sedo, m. d. to allay.  
Servo, r. d. to keep.  
\*†Sibilo, to hiss.  
Sicco, d. to dry.  
Signo, r. d. to mark out.  
assigno, m.

Simŭlo, r. d. <i>to pretend.</i>	*Supplico, m. <i>to supplicate.</i>	*Vapŭlo, m. d. <i>to be beaten.</i>
Socio, d. <i>to associate.</i>	*Susurro, <i>to whisper.</i>	Vario, <i>to diversify.</i>
*Somnio, <i>to dream.</i>	Tardo, <i>to delay.</i>	Vasto, d. <i>to lay waste.</i>
Specto, m. r. d. <i>to behold.</i>	Taxo, d. <i>to rate.</i>	Vellŭco, <i>to pluck.</i>
Spero, r. d. <i>to hope.</i>	Temĕro, d. <i>to defile.</i>	Verbĕro, r. d. <i>to beat.</i>
*Spiro, <i>to breathe.</i>	Tempĕro, r. d. <i>to temper.</i>	*Vestigo, <i>to search for.</i>
conspiro.	obtempĕro, r. <i>to obey.</i>	Vexo, d. <i>to tease.</i>
exspiro, r.	Tento, m. r. d. <i>to try.</i>	Vibro, d. <i>to brandish.</i>
suspiro, d.	Terebro, <i>to bore.</i>	Vigŭlo, d. <i>to watch.</i>
Spolio, m. d. <i>to rob.</i>	Termino, r. d. <i>to limit.</i>	Violo, m. r. d. <i>to violate.</i>
Spumo, <i>to foam.</i>	Titŭbo, <i>to stagger.</i>	Vitio, d. <i>to vitiate.</i>
Stillo, <i>to drop.</i>	Tolĕro, u. r. d. <i>to bear.</i>	Vito, u. d. <i>to shun.</i>
Stimŭlo, <i>to goad.</i>	Tracto, u. d. <i>to handle.</i>	Ulŭlo, <i>to howl.</i>
Stipo, <i>to stuff.</i>	*†Tripudio, <i>to dance.</i>	Umbo, r. <i>to shade.</i>
Sudo, <i>to sweat.</i>	Triumpho, r. <i>to triumph.</i>	Voco, r. d. <i>to call.</i>
Suffoco, <i>to strangle.</i>	Trucido, r. d. <i>to kill.</i>	*Volo, <i>to fly.</i>
Sugillo, d. <i>to taunt.</i>	Turbo, d. <i>to disturb.</i>	Voro, r. <i>to devour.</i>
Supĕro, r. d. <i>to overcome.</i>	*Vaco, <i>to be at leisure.</i>	Vulgo, r. d. <i>to publish.</i>
Suppedito, <i>to afford.</i>		Vulnĕro, d. <i>to wound.</i>

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are irregular or defective in their second and third roots:—

*Crepro, crepui, <i>to make a noise.</i>	dimŭco, -avi or -ui, r. (-atŭrus).
*discrepro, -ui or -avi.	*emŭco, -ui, r. (-atŭrus).
incrĕpo, -ui or -avi, -itum. or atum,	*internŭco, —.
*†percrepro, —.	*promŭco, —, d.
*trecrepro, —.	Neco, necavi or necui, necatum, r. d.
*Cubo, cubui, cubitum (sup.), <i>to recline.</i>	<i>to kill.</i>
incŭbo, -ui or -avi, d.	enĕco, -avi or -ui, -atum, or -tum, d.
Those compounds of cubo which take m before b, are of the third conjugation.	tinternĕco, —, -atum.
Do, dedi, datum, m. r. d. <i>to give.</i>	*†Nexo, —, <i>to tie.</i>
So circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, and venumdo; the other compounds of do are of the third conjugation.	Plico, —, plicatum, <i>to fold.</i>
Domo, domui, domitum, r. d. <i>to tame.</i>	duplico, -avi, -atum, r. d.
Frico, fricui, frictum or fricatum, d. <i>to rub.</i>	multiplĭco and replĭco have -avi, -atum.
confrico, —, -atum.	*supplico, -avi, m. r.
infrico, —, -atum.	applico, -avi or -ui, -atum or -itum, -itŭrus. So implĭco.
Juvo, juvi, jutum, r. d., also juvatŭrus, <i>to help.</i>	complico, -ui, -itum or -atum.
So adjuvo, -juvi, -jutum, m. r. d.	explico, -avi or -ui, -atum or -itum, r. r.
*Labo, —, <i>to totter.</i>	Poto, potavi, potatum or potum, r. r.
Lavo, lavi, lavatum, lautum or lotum; (sup.) lautum or lavatum, lavatŭrus, d. <i>to wash.</i>	m. m. d. <i>to drink.</i>
Lavo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.	tepoto, -avi, -um.
*Mico, micui, <i>to glitter.</i>	*perpoto, -avi.
	Seco, secui, sectum, secatŭrus, d.
	<i>to cut.</i>
	*circumsĕco, —.
	*intersĕco, —, d.
	*persĕco, -ui
	præsĕco, -ui, -tum or -atum. So
	resĕco, d.

- \*Sono, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound*.  
 \*consōno, -ui. *So ex-, in-, per-, præ-sōno.*  
 \*resōno, -avi.  
 \*assōno, —. *So circumsōno and dissōno.*  
 \*Sto, steti, statūrus, *to stand*.  
 \*antesto, -stēti. *So circumsto, intersto, supersto.*  
 \*consto, -stīti, -statūrus. *So exto, insto, obsto, persto.*  
 \*præsto, -stīti, -statūrus, d.  
 \*adsto, -stīti, -stītūrus.  
 \*prosto, -stīti. *So resto.*  
 \*disto, —. *So substo.*  
 \*Tono, tonui, *to thunder*. *So circumtōno.*  
 attōno, -ui, -ytum.  
 intōno, -ui, -ātum.  
 \*retōno, —.  
 Veto, vetui, *or* avi, vetitum, *to forbid*.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror*; as,

- Abomīnor, d. *to abhor*.  
 Adulor, d. *to flatter*.  
 Æmulor, d. *to rival*.  
 \*Aprīcor, *to bask in the sun*.  
 Arbitror, r. d. *to think*.  
 Aspernor, d. p. *to despise*.  
 Aucūpor, r. p. *to hunt after*.  
 Auxilior, p. *to help*.  
 Aversor, d. *to dislike*.  
 Calumniar, *to calumniate*.  
 Causor, *to allege*.  
 \*Comissor, m. *to reveal*.  
 Comītor, p. *to accompany*.  
 Concionor, *to harangue*.  
 \*Confabūlor, m. *to discourse*.  
 Conor, d. *to endeavor*.  
 †Conspīcor, *to see*.  
 Contemplor, d. p. *to view*.  
 Crimīnor, m. p. *to blame*.  
 Cunctor, d. p. *to delay*.  
 Deprēcor, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate*.  
 \*†Digladiator, *to fence*.  
 Dignor, d. p. *to think worthy*.  
 Domīnor, *to rule*.  
 Epūlor, r. d. *to feast*.  
 \*Famūlor, m. *to wait on*.  
 Fatur, (defect.) u. d. *to speak*. See § 183, 6.  
 †Ferīor, r. *to keep holiday*.  
 \*Frumentor, m. *to forage*.  
 Furor, m. *to steal*.  
 Glorior, r. d. *to boast*.  
 Gratūlor, m. d. *to congratulate*.  
 Hortor, d. *to encourage*.  
 Imītor, u. r. d. *to imitate*.  
 Indignor, d. *to disdain*.  
 Infītor, d. *to deny*.  
 Insector, *to pursue*.  
 Insidiar, r. d. *to lie in wait*.  
 Jacūlor, p. *to dart*.  
 Jocer, *to jest*.  
 Lētor, r. d. p. *to rejoice*.  
 Lamentor, d. p. *to bewail*.  
 \*†Lignor, m. *to gather fuel*.  
 Luctor, d. *to wrestle*.  
 Medīcor, r. d. p. *to heal*.  
 Medītor, p. *to meditate*.  
 Mercor, m. r. d. p. *to buy*.  
 Minor, *to threaten*.  
 Miror, u. r. d. *to admire*.  
 Misēror, d. *to pity*.  
 Modēror, u. d. *to rule*.  
 Modulor, d. p. *to modulate*.  
 Moror, r. d. *to delay*.  
 †Mutuor, p. *to borrow*.  
 Negotior, r. *to traffic*.  
 \*†Nugor, *to trifle*.  
 Obtestor, p. *to beseech*.  
 Opēror, *to work*.  
 Opinor, u. r. d. *to think*.  
 Opitūlor, m. *to help*.  
 Opsōnor, m. *to cater*.  
 †Otior, *to be at leisure*.  
 Pabūlor, m. d. *to graze*.  
 Palor, *to wander*.  
 Percontor, m. *to inquire*.  
 Periclitor, d. p. *to try*.  
 †Piscor, m. *to fish*.  
 Popūlor, r. d. p. *to lay waste*.  
 Prædor, m. *to plunder*.  
 Prælior, *to fight*.  
 Precor, m. u. r. d. *to pray*.  
 Recordor, d. *to remember*.  
 Rimor, d. *to search*.  
 Rixor, *to scold*.  
 \*Rusticor, *to live in the country*.  
 Sciscitor, m. p. *to inquire*.  
 \*Scitor, m. *to ask*.  
 Scrutor, p. *to search*.  
 Solor, d. *to comfort*.  
 Spatior, *to walk about*.  
 Specūlor, m. r. d. *to view*.  
 †Stipūlor, p. *to stipulate*.  
 †Suavior, d. *to kiss*.  
 Suspīcor, *to suspect*.  
 Testor, d. p. *to witness*.  
 So detestor.  
 Tutor, d. *to defend*.  
 Vagor, *to wander*.  
 Venēror, d. p. *to worship*.  
 Venor, m. *to hunt*.  
 Versor, *to be employed*.  
 Vocifēror, *to banal*.



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*. The second and third roots, instead of *ēv* and *ētū*, commonly end in *u* and *itū*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitūm*.

The following list contains most verbs so conjugated, and also some which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	inhibeo, <i>d. to hinder.</i>	*Niteo, <i>to shine.</i>
*Albeo, —, <i>to be white.</i>	*†perhibeo, <i>d. to report.</i>	Noceo, <i>m. r. to hurt.</i>
Arceo, <i>d. to drive away.</i>	†posthabeo, <i>to postpone.</i>	*Oleo, <i>to smell.</i>
coerceo, <i>d. to restrain.</i>	præbeo, <i>r. d. to afford.</i>	*Palleo, <i>to be pale.</i>
exerceo, <i>d. to exercise.</i>	debeo, <i>r. d. to owe.</i>	*Pareo, <i>m. r. d. to obey.</i>
*Areo, <i>to be dry.</i>	*Hebeo, —, <i>to be dull.</i>	*Pateo, <i>to be open.</i>
*Aveo, —, <i>to covet.</i>	*Horreo, <i>d. to be rough.</i>	Placeo, <i>to please.</i>
*Caleo, <i>r. to be warm.</i>	*Humeo, —, <i>to be moist.</i>	*Polleo, —, <i>to be able.</i>
*Calleo, —, <i>to be hardened.</i>	*Jaceo, <i>r. to lie.</i>	*Puteo, <i>to be nauseous.</i>
*Calveo, —, <i>to be bald.</i>	*Lacteo, —, <i>to suck.</i>	*Putreo, <i>to be putrid.</i>
*Candeo, <i>to be white.</i>	*Languéo, <i>to languish.</i>	*Remideo, —, <i>to glitter.</i>
*Caneo, <i>to be hoary.</i>	*Lateo, <i>to lie hid.</i>	*Rigeo, <i>to be stiff.</i>
*Careo, <i>r. d. to want.</i>	*Lenteo, —, <i>to be slow.</i>	*Rubeo, <i>to be red.</i>
*Ceveo, —, <i>to fawn.</i>	*Liceo, <i>to be valued.</i>	*Scateo, —, <i>to overflow.</i>
*Clareo, <i>to be bright.</i>	*Liveo, —, <i>to be livid.</i>	*Sileo, <i>d. to be silent.</i>
*Clueo, —, <i>to be famous.</i>	*Maceo, —, <i>to be lean.</i>	*Sordeo, <i>to be filthy.</i>
*Denseo, —, <i>to thicken.</i>	*Mædeo, <i>to be wet.</i>	*Splendeo, —, <i>to shine.</i>
*Diribeo, —, <i>to distribute.</i>	Mereó, <i>r. to deserve.</i>	*Squaleo, <i>to be foul.</i>
*Doleo, <i>r. d. to grieve.</i>	†commereo, <i>to deserve.</i>	*Strideo, —, <i>to creak.</i>
*Egeo, <i>r. to want.</i>	†demereo, <i>d. to earn.</i>	*Studeo, <i>d. to study.</i>
*Emineo, <i>to rise above.</i>	†emereo, <i>to merit.</i>	*Stupeo, <i>to be amazed.</i>
*Flacceó, <i>to wither.</i>	*†permereo, <i>to serve in war.</i>	Taceo, <i>r. d. to be silent.</i>
*Flaveo, —, <i>to be yellow.</i>	promereo, <i>to deserve.</i>	*Tepeo, <i>to be warm.</i>
*Floreo, <i>to flourish.</i>	*Mæreo, —, <i>to grieve.</i>	Terreo, <i>d. to terrify.</i>
*Fœteo, —, <i>to be fetid.</i>	Moneo, <i>r. d. to advise.</i>	So deterreo, <i>to deter.</i>
*Frigeo, —, <i>to be cold.</i>	admoneo, <i>m. r. d. to admonish.</i>	†absterreo, <i>to deter.</i>
*Frondeo, —, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	commoneo, <i>to warn.</i>	†conterreo, } <i>to frighten.</i>
Habeo, <i>r. d. to have.</i>	præmoneo, <i>to forewarn.</i>	†exterreo, } <i>to frighten.</i>
So ad-, ex-, pro-hibeo.	*Muceo, —, <i>to be mouldy.</i>	†perterreo, } <i>to frighten.</i>
cohibeo, <i>d. to restrain.</i>	*Nigreo, <i>to be black.</i>	*Timeo, <i>d. to fear.</i>
		*Torpeo, <i>to be torpid.</i>
		*Tumeo, <i>to swell.</i>
		*Valeo, <i>r. to be able.</i>
		*Vegeo, —, <i>to be strong.</i>
		*Vieo, —, <i>to bind.</i>
		*Vigeo, <i>to be strong.</i>
		*Vireo, <i>to be green.</i>
		*Uveo, —, <i>to be moist.</i>

§ 168. The following list contains those verbs of the second conjugation which do not form their second and third roots in *u* and *itū*, including those which form them regularly in *ēv* and *ētū*.

NOTÆ. Some verbs of this conjugation are irregular in the second and third roots, in consequence of imitating the common forms of the third conjugation.

Aboleo, -ēvi, -ītum, r. d. to efface.

\*Algeo, -alsi, to be cold.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. d. to burn.

Audeo, ausus sum, r. d. to dare.

Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to increase.

Caveo, cavi, cautum, m. d. to beware.

Censeo, censui, censum, d. to think.

recenseo, -ui, -um or -ītum.

\*percenseo, -ui.

\*succenseo, -ui, d.

Cio, civi, citum, to excite. The perfect civi seems to come from cio, of the fourth conjugation.

Compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, to fill. So the other compounds of pleo.

\*Conniveo, -nivi, to wink at.

Deleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to blot out.

Docēo, docui, doctum, d. to teach.

\*Faveo, favi, fautūrus, to favor.

\*Ferveo, ferbui, to boil. It is sometimes of the third conjugation.

Fleo, flevi, fletum, r. d. to weep.

Foveo, fovi, fotum, d. to cherish.

Freudeo, —, fressum or fresum, to gnash.

\*Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine.

Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Gaudeo, gavissus sum, r. d. to rejoice.

\*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsurus, to stick.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. to indulge.

Jubeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to order.

\*Luceo, luxi, to shine.

polluceo, -luxi, -luctum.

\*Lugeo, luxi, d. to mourn.

\*Maneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to remain.

Misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, d. to mix.

Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. to bite.

Moveo, movi, motum, r. d. to move.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to soothe.

\*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to milk.

Neo, nevi, netum, to spin.

\*Paveo, pavi, d. to fear.

\*Pendeo, pependi, to hang.

propendeo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (obsolete.) See compleo.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. d. to dine.

Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. to laugh.

\*Sedeo, sedi, sessum, m. r. to sit.

The compounds change e into i.

\*dissideo, -sēdi. So præsideo.

\*Seneo, senui, to be old.

Soleo, solitus sum or solui, to be accustomed.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, to suck in.

\*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, spondi, sponsum, to promise.

Suadeo, suasi, suasum, r. d. to advise.

Teneo, tenui, tentum, r. d. to hold.

The compounds change e into i.

\*attineo, -tinui. So pertineo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe.

Tergo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.

Tondeo, —, tonsum, to shear. The compounds have the perfect tondi.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. to twist.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast.

\*Turgeo, tursi, to swell.

\*Urgeo or urgueo, ursi, d. to urge.

Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. to see.

Voveo, vovi, votum, d. to vow.

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Decēt, decuit, it becomes.

Libet, libuit or libitum est, it pleases.

Licet, licuit or licitum est, it is lawful.

Liquet, liquit, it is clear.

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, it pities.

Oportet, oportuit, it behoves.

Piget, piguit or pigitum est, d. it grieves.

Pœnitet, pœnituit, pœnitūrus, d. it repents.

Pudet, puduit or puditum est, d. it shames.

Tædet, tæduvit or tæsum est, it wearies.

So pertædet.

NOTE. *Libet*, &c., are sometimes written for *libet*, &c., especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fateor, fassus, r. d. to confess.

The compounds change *a* into *i*.  
confiteor, confessus, d. p. to acknowledge.

\*diffiteor, to deny.

profiteor, professus, d. p. to declare.

Liceor, licitus, to bid a price.

\*Medeor, d. to cure.

Mereor, meritus, to deserve.

Misereor, miserritus or misertus, to pity.

Polliceor, pollicitus, p. to promise.

Reor, ratus, to think.

Tueor, tuitus, d. p. to protect.

Vereor, veritus, d. to fear.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *tu*; as, *carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*; *arguo*, *argui*, *argutum*.

In annexing *s* and *tu*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. *C*, *g*, *h*, and *qu*, at the end of the root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the 2d root; in the 3d root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *tu*; as, *rego* (*regsi*), *rexi*, *rectum*; *veho*, *vexi*, *vectum*, *coquo*, *coxi*, *coctum*.

NOTE. In *fluo*, *fluxi*, and *struo*, *struxi*, *h* seems to have been lost in the root of the verb.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *tu*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio*, *clausi*; *cedo*, *cessi*. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s*; as, *sumo*, *sumpsi*.

Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first; as,

Bibo,	Excudo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scabo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fodio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strido,	Verto,
Emo,	Fugio,	Lego,	Psallo,	Sido,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando*, *fendo*, and *nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago,	Facio,	Frango,	Jacio,	Rumpo,	Scindo,
Capio,	Findo,	Fundo,	Linquo,	Sisto,	Vinco.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cado,	Curro,	Parco,	Pendo,	Tango,
Cædo,	Disco,	Pario,	Posco,	Tendo,
Cano,	Fallo,	Pello,	Fungo,	Tundo.

Exc. 2. Some add *u* to the root of the verb; as,

Alo,	Consũlo,	Gemo,	Rapio,	Tremo,
Colo,	Depso,	Geno, ( <i>obs.</i> )	Strepto,	Volo,
Compesco,	Fremo,	Molo,	Texo,	Vomo.

*Meto* and *pono* add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following add *tv*.—

Arcesso,	Cupio,	Lacesso,	Rudo,	
Capesso,	Incesso,	Peto,	Quæro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> .	

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *sco* dropping *sc* :—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Lino,	Sino,	Sterno,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sero,	Sperno,	Tero.

Exc. 5. The 3d roots of verbs whose root ends in *d* or *t*, add *su*, instead of *tu*, to the root, either dropping those letters, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudo, clausum*; *defendo, defensum*; *cedo, cessum*. But the compounds of *do* add *itu*.

The following, also, add *su*, with a change of the root :—

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Premo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *tu*, with a change of the root :—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gero,	Sero,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Colo,	Frango,	Rumpo,	Sisto,	Sterno,	Tero,	Vinco;

to which add those in *sco*, with the 2d root in *v*; these drop *sc* before *tu*, except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. The following have *itu* :—

Bibo,	Molo,	Pono, with a change of <i>n</i> into <i>s</i> .
Geno, ( <i>obs.</i> )	Vomo,	

The following have *itu* :—

Arcesso,	Cupio,	Peto,
Facesso,	Lacesso,	Quæro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> .

Some other irregularities occur in this conjugation.

§ 172. The following list contains both the regular and irregular formations of the second and third roots in the third conjugation :—

Acuo, acui, acutum, d. to sharpen.

Agō, egi, actum, r. d. to drive.

So circumāgo, cogo, and perāgo.

\*ambīgo, —, to doubt. So satāgo.

The other compounds change a into i. See § 189. 2.

\*prodīgo, -ēgi, to squander.

Alo, alui, altum or altum, d. to nourish.

\*Ango, anxi, to strangle.

Arguo, argui, argutum, d. to convict.

Arcesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. to call for.

\*Batuo, batui, d. to beat.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, d. to drink.

\*Cado, cecidi, casurus, to fall. The compounds change a into i, and drop the reduplication.

occido, -cidi, -casum, r. to set.

Cædo, cecidi, cæsum, r. d. to cut. The compounds change æ into i, and drop the reduplication.

From candeo, of the second conjugation, is formed

accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. to

*kindle. So the other compounds.*

\*Cano, cecini, d. *to sing. The compounds change a into i.*

\*conciño, -cinui. *So occiño, præciño.*

\*accino, —. *So inciño, interciño, succiño, reciño.*

\*Capesso, -ivi, r. d. *to undertake.*

Capio, cepi, captum, r. d. *to take.*

*The compounds change a into i.*

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. *to pluck.*

*The compounds change a into e.*

Cedo, cessi, cessum, r. *to yield.*

Cello, (*obsolete.*)

excello, -cellui, -culsum, *to excel.*

\*antecello, —. *So præcello, recello.*

percello, -cûli, -culsum, *to strike.*

Cerno, crevi, cretum, d. *to decree.*

Cerno, *to see, has no second or third root.*

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, d. *to gird.*

\*Clango, —, *to clang.*

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. *to shut.*

*The compounds change au into u.*

\*†Clepo, clepsi, or clepi, *to steal.*

Colo, colui, cultum, d. *to till.*

tocûlo, -cului, -cultum, d. *to hide.*

Como, compsi, comptum, *to deck.*

\*Compesco, -pescui, *to restrain.*

Consûlo, -sului, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

Coquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

Credo, credidi, creditum, r. d. *to believe.*

\*Cresco, crevi, *to grow.*

conresco, -crevi, -cretum.

Cubo *is of the first conjugation.*

\*accumbo, -cubui, *to lie down.*

*So the other compounds which*

\*Cudo, —, *to forge.* [*insert m.*

excûdo, -cûdi, -cûsum, d. *to stamp.*

Cupio, cupivi, cupitum, d. *to desire.*

\*Curro, cucurri, cursûrus, *to run.*

Concurro, circumcurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes retain it.

decurro, decurri, decursum.

\*Dego, degi, d. *to live.* [*take away.*

Demo, dempsi, deuptum, r. d. *to*

†Depso, depsi, depstum, *to knead.*

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

\*Disco, didici, disciturus, d. *to learn.*

\*Dispesco, —, *to separate.*

Divido, divisi, divisum, r. d. *to divide.*

*Do is of the first conjugation.*

abdo, -didi, -ditum, d. *to hide. So*

condo, indo.

addo, -didi, -ditum, r. d. *to add.*

*So dedo, edo, prodo, reddo,*

trado, vendo.

tdido, -didi, -ditum, *to divide. So*

abdo, subdo.

perdo, -didi, -ditum, m. r. d. *to*

destroy.

Duco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. *to lead.*

Edo, edi, esum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

Exuo, exui, exutum, d. *to strip off.*

Emo, emi, emptum, r. d. *to buy.*

Facesso, -cessi, -cessitum, *to execute*

Facio, feci, factum, m. u. r. d. *to do.*

*Compounded with a preposition,*

*it changes a into i, and has a*

*regular passive. Compounded*

*with other words, it retains*

*a when of this conjugation,*

*and has the passive, fio, fac-*

*tus. See § 180.*

Fallo, fefelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.*

\*refello, -felli, d. *to refute.*

Fendo, (*obsolete.*)

defendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r.

d. *to defend.*

offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. *to*

offend.

Fero, tuli, latum, r. d. *to bear. See*

*§ 179. A perfect tetûli is rare.*

\*suffero, —.

Fido, —, fisus, *to trust. See § 162, 18.*

confido, confisus sum or confidi,

*to rely on.*

diffido, diffisus sum, *to distrust.*

Figo, fixi, fixum, r. *to fix.*

Findo, fidi, fissum, d. *to cleave.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, d. *to feign.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

\*Fligo, flixi, *to dash. So confligo.*

affligo, -flixi, -flictum, *to afflict.*

*So infligo.*

profligo *is of the first conjugation.*

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, r. *to flow.*

Fodio, fodi, fossum, d. *to dig.*

Frango, fregi, fractum, r. d. *to break.*

*The compounds change a into i.*

\*Fremo, fremui, d. *to roar.*

Frendo, —, fresum or fressum, *to*

*gnash.*

Frigo, frixi, frictum or frixum, *to*

*roast.*

- \*Fugio, fugi, fugiturus, d. *to flee*.  
 Fundo, fudi, fustum, r. d. *to pour*.  
 \*Furo, —, *to rage*.  
 \*Gemo, gemui, d. *to groan*.  
 Gigno, (*obsolete* geno,) genui, genitum, r. d. *to beget*.  
 \*Glisco, —, *to grow*.  
 \*Glubo, —, *to peel*.  
   deglubo, —, -gluptum.  
 Gruo, (*obsolete*.) [ingruo.  
   \*congruo, -grui, *to agree*. So  
 Gero, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear*.  
 Jacio, jeci, jactum, d. *to cast*. The  
   *compounds change a into i*.  
 Ico, ici, ictum, r. *to strike*.  
 Imbuo, imbui, imbutum, d. *to imbue*.  
 \*Incesso, -cessivi, *to attack*.  
 †Induo, indui, indutum, *to put on*.  
 Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join*.  
 Lacesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, r. d. *to provoke*.  
 Lacio, (*obsolete*.) The *compounds*  
   *change a into i*.  
   allicio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure*.  
   So illicio, pellicio.  
   elicio, -licui, -licitum, *to draw out*.  
 Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt*. The  
   *compounds change æ into i*.  
 \*Lambo, lambi, *to lick*.  
 Lego, legi, lectum, r. d. *to read*. So  
   allêgo, perlêgo, prælêgo, relêgo,  
   sublêgo, and translêgo; *the other compounds change e into i*.  
   dillgo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love*.  
   intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand*.  
   negligo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect*.  
 Lingo, —, linctum, d. *to lick*.  
 \*delingo, —.  
 Lino, livi or levi, litum, d. *to daub*.  
 \*Liquo, liqui, d. *to leave*.  
   relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, r. d.  
   delinquo, -liqui, -lictum. So  
   derelinquo.  
 Ludo, lusi, lusum, m. r. *to play*.  
 \*Luo, lui, luiturus, d. *to atone*.  
   abluo, -lui, -lutum, r. d.  
   diluo, -lui, -lutum, d. So eluo.  
 Mando, mandi, mansom, d. *to chew*.  
 Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip*.  
 Meto, messui, messum, d. *to reap*.  
 Metuo, metui, metutum, d. *to fear*.  
 \*Mingo, minxi, mictum, (*sup.*) *to make water*.  
 Minuo, minui, minutum, d. *to lessen*.  
 Mitto, misi, missum, r. d. *to send*.  
 Molo, molui, molitum, *to grind*.  
 Mungo, (*obsolete*.)  
   emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe*.  
 Necto, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit*.  
   innecto, -nexui, -nexum. So  
   annecto, connecto.  
 Nosco, novi, notum, d. *to learn*.  
 agnosco, -nôvi, -nitum, d. *to recognize*.  
 cognosco, -nôvi, -nitum, u. r. d. *to know*.  
 \*dignosco, —. So prænosco.  
 ignosco, -nôvi, -nôtum, d. *to pardon*. [m. r. *to marry*.  
 Nubo, nupsi, or nupta sum, nuptum,  
 Nuo, (*obsolete*.)  
   \*abnuo, -nui, -nuiturus, d. *to refuse*.  
   \*annuo, -nui. So innuo, renuo.  
 Pando, —, passum or pansum, *to open*. So expando.  
   dispando, —, -pansum.  
 Pago, (*obs.*) pepigi, pactum, *to bargain*.  
 Pango, panxi, pactum, pacturus, d. *to drive in*.  
   compingo, -pēgi, -pactum. So  
   impingo.  
 \*oppango, -pēgi.  
 \*depango, —. So repango, suppingo.  
 \*Parco, peperci or parsi, parsurus, *to spare*.  
 Pario, peperci, partum, pariturus, d. *to bring forth*. The *compounds*  
   *are of the fourth conjugation*.  
 Pasco, pavi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed*.  
 Pecto, —, pexum, d. *to comb*.  
 Pello, pepuli, pulsum, d. *to drive*.  
   The *compounds drop the reduplication*.  
 Pendo, pependi, pensum, r. *to weigh*.  
   The *compounds drop the reduplication*.  
 Peto, petivi, petitum, m. u. r. d. *to ask*.  
 Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint*.  
 Pinso, pinsi, pinsitum, pinsum or pistum, *to grind*.  
 \*Plango, planxi, plancturus, *to lament*.  
 Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. *to applaud*. So applaudo. The *other compounds change au into o*.  
 Plecto, —, plexum, d. *to twine*.  
 \*Pluo, pluvi or pluvii, *to rain*.

Pono, posui, positum, r. d. to place.

Pono, and its compounds, anciently had posivi in the perfect.

\*Posco, poposci, d. to demand.

Prehendo, } -di, -sum, r. d. to seize.

Prendo, } -di, -sum, r. d. to seize.

Premo, pressi, pressum, r. d. to press.

The compounds change e into i.

Promo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. to bring out.

\*Psallo, psalli, to play on an instrument.

Pungo, pupugi, punctum, to prick.

compungo, -punxi, -punctum.

So dispungo, expungo.

interpungo, —, -punctum.

\*repungo, —.

Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, m. r. d. to seek. The compounds change e into i.

Quatio, —, quassum, to shake. The compounds change qua into cu; as,

concutio, -cussi, -cussum, d.

discutio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.

Quiesco, quievi, quietum, r. d. to rest.

Rado, rasi, rasum, d. to shave.

Rapio, rapui, raptum, r. d. to snatch.

The compounds change a into i.

diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.

Rego, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule. The compounds change e into i.

\*pergo (for perŕigo), perrexi, r. to go forward.

surgo (for surŕigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise.

\*Repo, repsi, to creep.

Rodo, rosi, rosum, r. to gnaw.

ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rûdo, want the perfect.

\*Rudo, rudivi, to bray.

Rumpo, rupi, ruptum, r. d. to break.

Ruo, rui, rutum, ruiturus, d. to fall.

diruo, -rui, -rûtum, d. So obruo.

\*corruo, -rui. So irruo.

\*Sapio, sapivi, to be wise. The compounds change a into i.

resipio, -sippi or -sipui.

\*Scabo, scabi, to scratch.

Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, to engrave.

\*Scando, —, d. to climb. The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d.

Scindo, scidi, scissum, d. to cut.

Scisco, scivi, scitum, d. to ordain.

Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.

Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. to carve.

Sero, sevi, satum, r. d. to sow.

conséro, -sêvi, -sîtum. So inséro, r.

Sero, —, sertum, to knit. Its compounds have serui; as, -asséro, -serui, -sertum, r. d.

\*Serpo, serpsi, to creep.

\*Sido, sidi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sedi, sessum, from sedeo.

\*Sino, sivi, aitarus, to permit.

desino, desivi, desitum, r.

Sisto, stiti, statum, to stop.

\*absisto, -stiti. So the other compounds; but circumsisto wants the perfect.

Solvo, solvi, solutum, r. d. to loose.

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread. The compounds change a into e.

Specio, (obsolete.) The compounds change e into i; as,

aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at.

inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.

Sperno, spreui, spretum, d. to despise.

\*Spuo, spui, to spit.

\*respuo, respui, d.

Statuo, statui, statutum, d. to place. The compounds change a into i.

Sterno, stravi, stratum, d. to strew.

\*Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.

\*Sterto, —, to snore.

\*desterto, destertui.

\*Stinguo, —, to extinguish.

distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. So extinguo, r. d.

\*Strepto, strepui, to make a noise.

\*Strido, stridi, to creak.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. to tie hard.

Struo, struxi, structum, d. to build.

Sugo, suxi, suctum, to suck.

Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. to take.

Suo, —, sutum, d. to sew. So consuo, dissuo.

insuo, -sui, sûtum

\*assuo, —.

Tango, tetigi, tactum, r. d. to touch. The compounds change a into i, and drop the reduplication.

contingo, contigi, contactum, r.

Tego, texi, tectum, r. d. *to cover.*

\*Temno, —, d. *to despise.*

contemno, -tempſi, -temptum, d.

Tendo, tetendi, tensum or tentum, *to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as,*

extendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum. *So in-, os- and re-tendo.*

detendo *has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.*

\*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe. Tergeo, of the second conjugation, has the same second and third roots.*

Tero, trivi, tritum, d. *to rub.*

Texo, texui, textum, d. *to weave.*

Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. *to tinge.*

\*Tollo, tolli, d. *to raise.*

sustollo, sustūli, sublātum, r. *to take away.*

\*attollo, —. *So extollo.*

Traho, traxi, tractum, r. d. *to draw.*

\*Tremo, tremui, d. *to tremble.*

Tribuo, tribui, tributum, r. d. *to ascribe.*

Trudo, trusi, trusum, *to thrust.*

Tundo, tutūdi, tunsum or tusum, *to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tusum. Yet detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.*

Ungo, unxi, unctum, d. *to anoint.*

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*

\*Vado, —, *to go. So supervado. The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evado, evāsi, r. So pervado; also invado, r. d.*

Veho, vexi, vectum, r. *to carry.*

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pull.*

So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello.

*The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.*

\*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*

Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.*

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*

\*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*

\*Vivo, vixi, victārus, d. *to live.*

Volvo, volvi, volūtum, d. *to roll.*

Vomo, vomui, vomītum, r. d. *to vomit.*

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general want the third root, and their second root, when used, is the same as that of their primitives. Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the perfect, and some form it by adding *ui* to the root of the primitive. See § 187, II. 2.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, acui, s. *to grow sour.*

\*Egresco, *to grow sick.*

\*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*

\*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.*

coalesco, -alui, -alitum, *to grow together.*

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*

\*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.*

\*exaresco, -arui. *So inaresco, peraresco.*

\*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*

\*Calesco, calui, s. *to grow warm.*

\*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*

\*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*

\*Canesco, canui, s. *to become hoary.*

\*Claresco, clarui, s. *to become bright.*

\*Condormisco, -dormivi, s. *to go to sleep.*

\*Conticesco, -ticui, *to become silent.*

\*Crebresco, -crebui and crebrui, *to increase.*

\*Crudesco, crudui, *to become raw.*

\*Ditesco, —, *to grow rich.*

\*Dulcesco, —, *to grow sweet.*

\*Duresco, durui, *to grow hard.*

\*Evilesco, evilui, *to become worthless.*

\*Extimesco, -timui, *to be afraid.*

\*Fatisco, —, *to gape.*

\*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to grow weak.*



\*Fervesco, ferbui, s. to grow warm.  
 \*Floresco, florui, s. to begin to flourish.

\*Fracesco, fracui, to grow mouldy.  
 \*Frigesco, —, s. to grow cold.  
 \*perfrigesco, -frixi. So refrigesco.

\*FronDESCO, —, s. to put forth leaves.  
 \*Fruticesco, —, to put forth fruit.  
 \*Gelasco, —, s. to freeze.  
 \*congelasco, -avi, s. to congeal.

\*Gemisco, —, s. to groan.  
 \*GemmascO, —, to bud.  
 \*Generasco, —, s. to be produced.  
 \*Grandesco, —, to grow large.

\*Gravesco, —, to grow heavy.  
 \*Hæresco, hæsi, s. to adhere.  
 \*Hebesco, —, s. to grow dull.  
 \*Horresco, horruī, s. to grow rough.

\*Humesco, —, s. to grow moist.  
 \*Ignesco, —, to take fire.  
 \*Indolesco, -dolui, d. to be grieved.  
 \*Inolesco, —, to become haughty.

\*Integrasco, —, to be renewed.  
 \*Juvenesco, —, to grow young.  
 \*Languesco, languī, s. to grow languid.

\*Lapidesco, —, to become stone.  
 \*Latesco, —, to grow broad.  
 \*Latesco, latui, to be concealed. s. So delitescO, -litui; oblitescO, -litui.

\*LentescO, —, to become soft.  
 \*LiquescO, —, s. to become liquid.  
 \*deliquescO, -licui.

\*Lucesco, luxi, s. to grow light.  
 \*Lutesco, —, s. to become muddy.  
 \*Macesco, —, s. } to grow lean.  
 \*Macresco, —, }

\*remacresco, -macrui.  
 \*Madesco, madui, s. to grow moist.  
 \*Marcesco, marcui, s. to pine away.  
 \*Maturesco, maturui, to ripen.

\*Miseresco, miserui, s. to pity.  
 \*Mitesco, —, to grow mild.  
 \*Mollesco, —, to grow soft.  
 \*MutescO, —, to become silent.

\*obmutescO, obmutui.  
 \*Nigresco, nigrui, s. to grow black.  
 \*Nitesco, nitui, s. to grow bright.  
 \*Notesco, notui, to become known.

\*Obbrutesco, —, to become brutish.  
 \*Obcallesco, -callui, to become callous.  
 \*Obdormisco, -dormivi, s. to fall asleep.

\*Obsurdesco, -surdui, to grow deaf.  
 \*Olesco, (scarcely used.)

abolesco, -olēvi, -olītum, s. to cease.

adolesco, -olēvi, -ultum, s. to grow up.

exolesco, -olēvi, -olētum, to grow old. So obsolesco.

\*inolesco, -olēvi, d. to increase.

\*Pallesco, pallui, s. to grow pale.

\*Patesco, patui, s. to be open.

\*Pavesco, pavi, s. to grow fearful.

\*Pertimesco, -timui, d. to fear greatly.

\*Pinguesco, —, to grow fat.

\*Pubesco, —, to come to maturity.

\*Puerasco, —, to become a boy.

\*Putesco, putui, s. } to become putrid.

\*Putresco, putrui, s. } trid.

\*Raresco, —, to become thin.

\*RigescO, rigui, s. to grow cold.

\*Rubesco, rubui, s. to grow red.

\*erubescO, -rubui, d.

\*Resipisco, -sipui, s. to recover wisdom.

\*Sanesco, —, to become sound.

\*consanescO, -sanui.

\*Senesco, senui, s. d. to grow old. So consenescO.

\*Sentisco, sensi, s. to perceive.

\*Siccesco, —, to become dry.

\*SilescO, silui, s. to grow silent.

\*SolidescO, —, to become solid.

\*SordescO, sordui, s. to become filthy.

\*SplendescO, splendui, s. to become bright.

\*SpumescO, —, to foam.

\*SterilescO, —, to become barren.

\*StupescO, stupui, s. to be astonished.

Suesco, suevi, suetum, s. to become accustomed.

\*Tabesco, tabui, s. to waste away.

\*Teneresco and -asco, to become tender.

\*Tepesco, tepui, s. to grow warm.

\*Torpesco, torpui, s. to grow torpid.

\*Tremisco, tremui, s. to begin to tremble.

\*TumescO, tumui, s. to be inflated.

\*Turgesco, tursi, s. to swell.

\*Valesco, valui, s. to become strong.

\*VanescO, —, to vanish.

\*evanescO, evanui.

\*Veterasco, veteravi, to grow old.

\*Viresco, virui, s. to grow green.

\*Vivesco, vixi, s. to come to life.

\*revivisco, -vixi.

\*Uvesco, —, to become moist.

§ 174. *Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

- Apiscor, aptus, *to get. The compounds change a into i.*  
 adipiscor, adeptus. *So indipiscor.*  
 Expergiscor, experrectus, *to awake.*  
 Fruor, fruius or fructus, fruiturus, *d. to enjoy.*  
 Fungor, functus, r. d. *to perform.*  
 Gradior, gressus, *to proceed. The compounds change a into e; as,*  
 aggredior, aggressus, *to attack.*  
 \*Irascor, *to be angry.*  
 Labor, lapsus, r. *to fall.*  
 \*Liquor, *to melt, flow.*  
 Loquor, locutus, r. d. *to speak.*  
 Miniscor, (obsolete.)  
 comminiscor, commentus, p. *to invent.*  
 \*reminiscor, *to remember.*  
 Morior, (mori, rarely moriri,) mortuus, moriturus, d. *to die.*  
 Nanciscor, nactus or nactus, *to obtain.*
- Nascor, natus, nasciturus, u. *to be born.*  
 Nitor, nixus or nisus, nisurus, *to lean upon.*  
 Obliviscor, oblitus, d. *to forget.*  
 Paciscor, pactus, d. *to bargain.*  
 Compound depreciscor.  
 Patior, passus, r. d. *to suffer.*  
 perpetior, -pessus.  
 From plecto, *to twine,*  
 amplector, amplexus, d. p. *to embrace.*  
 complector, complexus, p. *So circumplector.*  
 Proficiscor, profectus, r. *to depart.*  
 Queror, questus, m. u. d. *to complain.*  
 \*Ringor, *to grin.*  
 Sequor, secutus, r. d. *to follow.*  
 Tuor, tutus, *to protect.*  
 \*Vescor, d. *to eat.*  
 Ulciscor, ultus, m. d. p. *to avenge.*  
 Utor, usus, r. d. *to use.*

NOTE. *Devertor, prævortor, revertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *revertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and the third in *itu*; as, *audio, audivī, auditum.*

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation :—

- Audio, -ivi or -ii, m. u. r. d. *to hear.*  
 \*Cio, civi, *to excite.*  
 Condio, -ivi or -ii, *to season.*  
 Custodio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to keep.*  
 \*Dormio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. *to sleep.*  
 Erudio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to instruct.*  
 Expedio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to disentangle.*  
 Finio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to finish.*  
 \*Gestio, -ivi or -ii, *to desire.*  
 Impedio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to entangle.*  
 Insanio, -ivi or -ii, *to be mad.*  
 Irretio, -ivi or -ii, *to ensnare.*  
 Lenio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to mitigate.*  
 Mollio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to soften.*  
 \*Mugio, -ivi or -ii, *to bellow.*
- Munio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. *to fortify.*  
 Mutio, -ivi, *to mutter.*  
 Nutrio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to nourish.*  
 Partio, -ivi or -ii, r. *to divide.*  
 Polio, -ivi, d. *to polish.*  
 Punio, -ivi or -ii, d. *to punish.*  
 Redimio, -ivi, *to crown.*  
 Sarrio, -ivi, d. *to weed.*  
 Scio, -ivi, u. r. *to know.*  
 Servio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. *to serve.*  
 Sopor, -ivi or -ii, *to lull asleep.*  
 Stabilio, -ivi or -ii, *to establish.*  
 Tinnio, -ivi or -ii, r. *to tinkle.*  
 Vestio, -ivi or -ii, *to clothe.*

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them:—

Amicio, —, amictum, d. to clothe.

\*Balbutio, —, to stammer.

Bullio, —, to boil.

\*Cæcutio, —, to be dim-sighted.

\*Cambio, —, to exchange.

\*Dementio, —, to be mad.

Effutio, —, to speak foolishly.

Eo, ivi or ii, itum, r. d. to go. *The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except obo, præeo, and subeo, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except adeo, ambio, inco, obo, prætereo, subeo, and transeo.*

Farcio, farsii, farctum, to cram.

Fastidio, -ii, -itum, d. to disdain.

\*Ferio, —, d. to strike.

\*Ferocio, —, to be fierce.

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. to prop.

\*Gannio, —, to yelp.

\*Glocio, —, to cluck.

\*Glutio, glutii, to swallow.

\*Grunnio, grunnii, to grunt.

Haurio, hausi, haustum, haustus, hausurus, d. to draw.

\*Hinnio, —, to neigh.

\*Ineptio, —, to trifle.

\*Lascivio, lascivii, to be wanton.

\*Ligurio, ligurii, to feed delicately.

\*Lippio, —, r. to be bleary-eyed.

\*Obedio, obedii, r. to obey.

Pario is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth.

aperio, aperui, apertum, r. d. to open. So operio, d.

comperio, compëri, compertum, to find out. So reperio, r. d.

Pavio, —, to beat.

\*Prurio, —, to itch.

\*Queo, quivi or quii, to be able. So nequeo.

\*Rugio, —, to roar.

Sævio, sævii, r. to rage.

\*Sagio, —, to foresee.

\*Salio, salui or salii, to leap. The compounds change a into i.

\*absilio, —. So circumsilio.

\*assilio, -ui. So dissilio, insilio.

\*desilio, -ui or -ii. So exsilio, resilio, subsilio.

\*transilio, -ui or -ivi, d. So prosilio.

Sancio, sanxi, sancitum or sanctum, d. to ratify.

Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, d. to patch.

\*Scaturio, —, to gush out.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, r. to feel.

Sepelio, sepelivi or -ii, sepultum, r. d. to bury.

Sepio, sepsi, septum, d. to hedge in.

\*Singultio, —, to sob.

\*Sitio, sitiui, to thirst.

Suffio, -ii, -itum, d. to fumigate.

\*Tussio, —, to cough.

\*Vagrio, vagii, to cry.

\*†Veneo, venii, r. to be sold.

Venio, veni, ventum, r. to come.

Vincio, vinxii, vinctum, r. d. to bind.

NOTE. Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three;—*esurio*, -tvi, r. to desire to eat; \**nupturio*, -tvi, to desire to marry; \**parturio*, -tvi, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

## § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

Assentior, assensus, r. d. p. to assent.

Blandior, blanditus, to flatter.

Experior, expertus, r. d. to try.

Largior, largitus, p. to lavish.

Mentior, mentitus, r. to lie.

Metior, mensus, d. to measure.

Molior, molitus, d. to move a mass.

Opperior, oppertus or oppertus, -d. to wait for.

Ordior, orsus, d. p. to begin.

Orior, ortus, oriturus, d. to spring up. Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.

Partior, partitus, d. *to divide.*

Potior, potitus, r. d. *to obtain.* The  
present indicative and imperfect

subjunctive are sometimes of the  
third conjugation in the poets.

Sortior, sortitus, r. *to cast lots.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *volo*, *fero*, *edo*, *fiō*, *eo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, and a synopsis of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and its compounds are wanting.

*Volo* is irregular only in the present indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect subjunctive.

It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, after *e* was dropped, *r* was changed into *l*.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Indic.	
¶ Vo'-lo,	vel'-le,	vol'-u-i,	<i>to be willing, to wish.</i>

### INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. vo'-lo, vis, vult;

P. vol'-ū-mus, vul'-tis, vo'-lunt.

Imperf. vo-lē'-bam.

Fut. vo'-lam.

Perf. vol'-u-i.

Plup. vo-lu'-ē-ram.

Fut. perf. vo-lu'-ē-ro.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. S. ve'-lim, ve'-lis, ve'-lit;

P. ve-li'-mus, ve-li'-tis, ve'-lint.

Imperf. S. vel'-lem, vel'-les, vel'-let;

P. vel-lē'-mus, vel-lē'-tis, vel'-lent.

Perf. vo-lu'-ē-rim.

Plup. vol-u-is'-sem.

### INFINITIVE.

Pres. vel'-le.

Perf. vol-u-is'-se.

### PARTICIPLE.

Pres. vo'-lens.

NOTE. *Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nolo* is compounded of *non* and *volo*. *Non* drops its final *n*, and *volo* its *v*, and the vowels (*o o*) are contracted into *ō*.

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them:—

Amicio, —, amictum, d. to clothe.

\*Balbutio, —, to stammer.

Bullio, —, to boil.

\*Cæcutio, —, to be dim-sighted.

\*Cambio, —, to exchange.

\*Dementio, —, to be mad.

Effutio, —, to speak foolishly.

Eo, ivi or ii, itum, r. d. to go. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except obo, præeo, and subeo, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except adeo, ambio, in eo, obo, prætereo, subeo, and transeo.

Farcio, farsî, faretum, to cram.

Fastidio, -ii, -itum, d. to disdain.

\*Ferio, —, d. to strike.

\*Ferocio, —, to be fierce.

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. to prop.

\*Gannio, —, to yelp.

\*Glocio, —, to cluck.

aperio, aperui, apertum, r. d. to open. So operio, d.

comperio, compêri, compertum, to find out. So reperio, r. d.

Pavio, —, to beat.

\*Prurio, —, to itch.

\*Queo, quivi or quii, to be able. So nequeo.

\*Rugio, —, to roar.

Sævio, sævii, r. to rage.

\*Sagio, —, to foresee.

\*Salio, salui or salii, to leap. The compounds change a into i.

\*absilio, —. So circumsilio.

\*assilio, -ui. So dissilio, insilio.

\*desilio, -ui or -ii. So ~~exsilio~~ silio, subsilio.

\*transilio, -ui or -iens.

For nonvis and nonvult, occur in Plautus.

**O. MALO IS COMPOUNDED OF magis and volo.** In composition *magis* drops its final syllable, and *volo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *ā*.

Pres. Indic.

Pres. Infin.

Perf. Indic.

Ma'-lo,

mal'-le,

mal'-u-i,

to be more willing.

#### INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. ma'-lo, ma'-vis, ma'-vult;

P. mal'-ū-mus, ma-vul'-tis, ma'-lunt.

Imperf. ma-lē'-bam.

Fut. ma'-lam.

Perf. mal'-u-i.

Plup. ma-lu'-ē-ram.

Fut. perf. ma-lu'-ē-ro.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. S. ma'-lim, ma'-lis, ma'-lit;

P. ma-li'-mus, ma-li'-tis, ma'-lint.

Imperf. S. mal'-lem, mal'-les, mal'-let;

P. mal-lē'-mus, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lent.

Perf. ma-lu'-ē-rim.

Plup. mal-u-is'-sem.

#### INFINITIVE.

Pres. mal'-le.

Perf. mal-u-is'-se.

NOTE. *Mavōlo*, *mavōlam*, *mavēlim*, and *mavellem*, for *malo*, *malam*, &c., occur in Plautus.

**Partior, partitus, d. to divide.**

**Potior, potitus, r. d. to obtain.** The present indicative and imperfect

subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation in the poets.

**Sortior, sortitus, r. to cast lots.**

# IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum, volo, fero, edo, fio, eo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, and a synopsis of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and its compounds are wanting.

*Volo* is irregular only in the present indicative and infinitive present and imperfect subjunctive.

Imperf. fe'-ra-bam.  
Fut. fe'-ra-m.  
Perf. tu'-li.  
Plup. tu'-lê-ram.  
Fut. perf. tu'-lê-ro.

vacope, and partly by a change in the Perf. and imperfect subjunctive, Plup. Fut. perf. la'-tu-

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fe'-ram.  
Imperf. fer'-rem.  
Perf. tu'-lê-rim.  
Plup. tu'-lis'-sem.

Pres. fe'-rar.  
Imperf. fer'-rer.  
Perf. la'-tus sim or fu'-ê-rim.  
Plup. la'-tus es -sem or fu'-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. fer, or fer'-to,  
fer'-to;  
P. fer'-te, or fer'-tê-te,  
fe-run'-to.

S. fer'-re, or fer'-tor,  
fer'-tor;  
P. fe-rim'-î-ni,  
fe-run'-tor.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer'-re.  
Perf. tu'-lis'-se.  
Fut. la'-tû'-rus es'-se.

Pres. fer'-ri.  
Perf. la'-tus es'-se or fu'-is'-se.  
Fut. la'-tum i'-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fe'-rens.  
Fut. la'-tû'-rus.

Perf. la'-tus.  
Fut. fe-ren'-dus.

## GERUND.

fe-ren'-di, &c.

## SUPINES.

Former. la'-tum.

Latter. la'-tu.

§ 180. *Fio* has the meaning of the passive voice, though the parts formed from the *first* root, except the present infinitive

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
No'-lo,	nol'-le,	nol'-u-i,	to be unwilling.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> no'-lo, non'-vis, non'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> nol'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> nol'-ū-mus, non-vul'-tis, no'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> no-lu'-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> no-lē'-bam.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> no-lu'-ē-ro
<i>Fut.</i> no'-lam.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> no'-lim, no'-lis, no'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> no-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> no-li'-mus, no-li'-tis, no'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> nol-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf.</i> S. nol'-lem, nol'-les, nol'-let;	
<i>P.</i> nol-lē'-mus, nol-lē'-tis, nol'-lent.	

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>S. 2.</i> no'-li, or no-li'-to;	<i>P. 2.</i> no-li'-te, or nol-i-tō'-te
------------------------------------	---

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nol'-le.
<i>Perf.</i> nol-u-is'-se.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> nol-iens
-----------------------

**NOTE.** *Nevis* and *nevolt*, for *nonvis* and *nonvult*, -tus es'-se or fu-is'-se.  
 fac'-tum i'-ri.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> fac'-tus.
<i>Fut.</i> fa-ci-en'-dus.

## SUPINE.

<i>Latter.</i> fac'-tu.
-------------------------

**NOTE.** The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *ſio* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, to warm; passive, *caleſcio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. Yet *conſit*, *deſit*, and *inſit*, occur See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

§ 181. *Edo*, to eat, is a regular verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it resembles, in some of its persons, the same tenses of *sum*:—  
 Thus,

<i>Ind. pres.</i>	—, —, est;	—, —, —.
<i>Subj. imperf.</i>	—, es'-ses, es'-set;	es-sē'-mus, —, —.
<i>Imperat.</i>	{ es or } —;	es'-te, —.
	{ es'-to, }	
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	es'-se.	
<i>Ind. pres. pass.</i>	—, —, es'-tur.	

**NOTE.** In the present subjunctive, *edim*, *edis*, &c., are found, for *edam*, *edas*, &c.

In the compounds of *edo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive,

§ 179. *FERO* is irregular in two respects:—1. its second and third roots are not derived from the first:—2. in the present infinitive active, and in the imperfect subjunctive, and certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.* *Fe'-ro*, (to bear.)  
*Pres. Infm.* *fer'-re*,  
*Perf. Indic.* *tu'-li*,  
*Supine.* *la'-tum*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.* *fe'-ror*, (to be borne.)  
*Pres. Infm.* *fer'-ri*,  
*Perf. Part.* *la'-tus*.

INDICATIVE.

*Pres. S.* *fe'-ro*,  
*fers*,  
*fert* ;  
*P.* *fer'-i-mus*,  
*fer'-tis*,  
*fe'-runt*.  
*Imperf.* *fer'-bam*.  
*P. i-ro*.

*Pres. S.* *fe'-ror*,  
*fer'-ris or -re*,  
*fer'-tur* ;  
*P.* *fer'-i-mur*,  
*fe-rim'-i-ni*,  
*fe-run'-tur*.  
*Imperf.* *fe-ré'-bar*.  
*Fut.* *fe'-rar*.  
*Perf.* *la'-tus sum or fu'-i*.  
*Plup.* *la'-tus e'-ram or fu'-é-ram*.  
*Perf.* *i-vis'-se*.  
*Fut.* *i-tú'-rus es'-se*.

IMPERATIVE.

*S.* *i or i'-to, i'-to* ;  
*P.* *i'-te or i-tó'-te, e-un'-to*.

PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* *i'-ens*, (*gen.* *e-un'-tis*)  
*Fut.* *i-tú'-rus*.

GERUND.

*e-un'-di, &c.*

Remarks.

1. *Iam, ies, iet*, are sometimes found in the future. *Istis, issem*, and *isse*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis, ioissem*, and *ivisse*. See § 162, 7.

2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur, ibatur, ibitur, itum est, &c.*; *edatur, irétur, &c.*, which are used impersonally.

3. The compounds of *eo*, including *veneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *ivi*. (See § 176.) *Adeo, in eo, prætereo, subeo*, and *transeo*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniétur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audio*.

*Queo* and *nequeo* are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.



There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are considered so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of many verbs in the passive voice must be wanting, from the nature of their signification.

The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts :—

- |                               |                                    |                                  |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>           | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>   |
| 2. Cæpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail.</i>             | 13. Defit, <i>it is wanting.</i> |
| 3. Memini, <i>I remember.</i> | 9. Salve, }                        | 14. Infir, <i>he begins.</i>     |
| 4. Aio, } <i>I say.</i>       | 10. Apæge, <i>begone.</i>          | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>    |
| 5. Inquam, }                  | 11. Cedo, <i>tell, or give me.</i> |                                  |
| 6. Fari, <i>to speak.</i>     |                                    |                                  |

1. *Odi*, *cæpi*, and *memini*, are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs :—Thus,

IND. perf. o'-di or o'-sus sum; *plup.* od'-ë-ram; *fut. perf.* od'-ë-ro.  
 SUBJ. perf. od'-ë-rim; *plup.* o-dis'-sem. INF. perf. o-dis'-se.  
 PART. fut. o-sû'-rus; *perf.* o'-sus.

NOTE. *Exösus* and *perösus*, like *osus*, are used actively. *Odivit*, for *odit*, occurs in Cicero.

2. IND. perf. cæ'-pi; *plup.* cæp'-ë-ram; *fut. perf.* cæp'-ë-ro.  
 SUBJ. perf. cæp'-ë-rim; *plup.* cæ-pis'-sem. INF. perf. cæ-pis'-se.  
 PART. fut. cæp-tû'-rus; *perf.* cæp'-tus.

NOTE. In Plautus are found a present, *cæpio*, present subjunctive, *cæpiam*, and infinitive *cæpere*. Before an infinitive passive, *cæptum est*, &c., rather than *cæpi*, &c., are commonly used.

3. IND. perf. mem'-i-ni; *plup.* me-min'-ë-ram; *fut. perf.* me-min'-ë-ro.  
 SUBJ. perf. me-min'-ë-rim; *plup.* mem-i-nis'-sem.  
 INF. perf. mem-i-nis'-se.  
 IMPERAT. 2 pers. me-men'-to, mem-en-tû'-te.

NOTE. *Odi* and *memini* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future. In this respect, *novi*, I know, the perfect of *nosco*, to learn, agrees with *odi* and *memini*.

4. IND. pres. ai'-o,\* a'-is,† a'-it; —, —, ai'-unt.\*  
 — imp. ai-ë'-bam, ai-ë'-bas, ai-ë'-bat; —, ai-e-ba'-tis, ai-ë'-bant.  
 SUBJ. pres. —, ai'-as, ai'-at; —, —, ai'-ant.  
 IMPERAT. a'-i. PART. pres. ai'-ens.

5. IND. pres. in'-quam or in'-qui-o, in'-quis, in'-quit; in'-quî-mus, in'-quî-tis, in'-qui-unt.  
 — imp. —, —, in'-qui-ë'-bat; —, —, —.  
 — fut. —, in'-qui-es, in'-qui-et; —, —, —.  
 — perf. —, in'-quis'-ti, in'-quit; —, —, —.  
 SUBJ. pres. —, —, in'-qui-at; —, —, —.  
 IMPERAT. in'-que, in'-quî-to.

\* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, &c. See § 9.

† ais with ne is contracted to ais'.

6. IND. *pres.* —, —, *fa'-tur*; *fut.* *fa'-bor*, —, *fab'-I-tur*.  
 IMPERAT. *fa'-re*. PART. *pres.* *fans*; *perf.* *fa'-tus*; *fut.* *fan'-dus*.  
 INFIN. *pres.* *fa'-ri*. GERUND, *gen.* *fan'-di*; *abl.* *fan'-do*. SUPINE, *fa'-tu*.

In like manner the compounds *affāri*, *effāri*, and *profāri*.

7. IND. *pres.* *quæ'-so*, —, *quæ'-sit*; *quæss'-ū-mus*, —, —.  
 INF. *pres.* *quæss'-ē-re*.  
 8. IMPERAT. *a'-ve*, *a-vē'-to*; *a-vē'-te*. INF. *a-vē'-re*.  
 9. IND. *pres.* *sal'-ve-o*. *fut.* *sal-vē'-bis*. INF. *pres.* *sal-vē'-re*.  
 IMPERAT. *sal'-ve*, *sal-vē'-to*; *sal-vē'-te*.  
 10. IMPERAT. *ap'-ā-ge*.  
 11. IMPERAT. *sing.* and *plur.* *ce'-do*; *pl.* *cet'-te* for *ced'-I-te*.  
 12. IND. *pres.* *con'-fi*; *fut.* *con-fi'-et*.  
 SUBJ. *pres.* *con-fi'-at*; *imperf.* *con-fi'-ē-ret*. INF. *pres.* *con-fi'-ē-ri*.  
 13. IND. *pres.* *de'-fi*; *pl.* *de-fi'-unt*. SUBJ. *pres.* *de-fi'-at*.  
 INF. *pres.* *de-fi'-ē-ri*.  
 14. IND. *pres.* *in'-fi*; *pl.* *in-fi'-unt*.  
 15. IND. *pres.* *o'-vat*. SUBJ. *pres.* *o'-vet*; *imperf.* *o-vā'-ret*.  
 PART. *pres.* *o'-vans*; *perf.* *o-vā'-tus*. GERUND, *o-van'-di*.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Forem*, *fores*, &c., *fore*, (see §154, 3.) *Ausim*, *ausit*; *ausint*. *Faxo* and *faxim*, *faxis*, *fazit*, *faximus*, *faxitis*, *faxint*. *Fazem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect, subjunctive. See § 162, 9.

2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *facio*, *do*, *de*, *audior* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used.

3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *sī vultis*, *sodes* for *sī audes*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

1. Their English is generally preceded by the pronoun *it*, especially in the active voice; as, *delectat*, it delights; *deceit*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evenit*, it happens; *scribitur*, it is written, &c.

They are thus conjugated:—

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
IND. <i>Pres.</i>	<i>delectat</i> ,	<i>decet</i> ,	<i>contingit</i> ,	<i>evenit</i> ,
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>delectabat</i> ,	<i>decēbat</i> ,	<i>contingēbat</i> ,	<i>eveniēbat</i> ,
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>delectābit</i> ,	<i>decēbit</i> ,	<i>continget</i> ,	<i>eveniet</i> ,
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>delectāvit</i> ,	<i>decuīt</i> ,	<i>contīgīt</i> ,	<i>evēnīt</i> ,
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>delectāverāt</i> ,	<i>decuērāt</i> ,	<i>contigērat</i> ,	<i>evenērāt</i> ,
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>delectāverīt</i> .	<i>decuērīt</i> .	<i>contigērit</i> .	<i>evenērīt</i> .

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<b>SUB. Pres.</b>	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
<b>Imp.</b>	delectaret,	decēret,	contingēret,	eveniret,
<b>Perf.</b>	delectavērit,	decuſrit,	contigērit,	evenērit,
<b>Plup.</b>	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
<b>INF. Pres.</b>	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenīre,
<b>Perf.</b>	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2. As the passive voice of an active verb may be substituted for the active, (see § 141, REM.) so that of a neuter verb may be used in the *third person singular*, instead of the active form, the personal subject of the latter being put in the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as, *faveo tibi*, I favor thee, or *favētur tibi a me*, thou art favored by me.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnātur,	favētur,	currītur,	veniūtur,
<b>Imp.</b>	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
<b>Fut.</b>	pugnabitur,	favebitur,	currētur,	veniētur,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnatum est	fautum est or	cursum est or	ventum est or
	or fuit,	fuit,	fuit,	fuit,
<b>Plup.</b>	pugnatum erat	fautum erat or	cursum erat	ventum erat or
	or fuērat,	fuērat,	or fuērat,	fuērat,
<b>Fut. v.</b>	pugnatum erit	fautum erit or	cursum erit or	ventum erit or
	or fuerit.	fuerit.	fuerit.	fuerit.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnētur,	faveatur,	currātur,	veniātur,
<b>Imp.</b>	pugnaretur,	faveretur,	curreretur,	veniretur,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnatum sit or	fautum sit or	cursum sit or	ventum sit or
	fuērit,	fuērit,	fuērit,	fuērit,
<b>Plup.</b>	pugnatum esset	fautum esset	cursum esset	ventum esset
	or fuisset.	or fuisset.	or fuisset.	or fuisset.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>Pres.</b>	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	venīri,
<b>Perf.</b>	pugnatum esse	fautum esse	cursum esse	ventum esse or
	or fuisse,	or fuisse,	or fuisse,	fuisse,
<b>Fut.</b>	pugnatum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

In like manner the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, formed from neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, &c., in the periphrastic conjugation; as, *moriendum est omnibus*, all must die. See § 162, 15.

## Remarks.

1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation. (See § 169.) There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing those from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

## (a.) In the first conjugation ;—

Constat, <i>it is evident.</i>	Spectat, <i>it concerns.</i>	Certatur, <i>it is contend- ed.</i>
Juvat, <i>it delights.</i>	Stat, <i>it is resolved.</i>	Peccatur, <i>a fault is committed.</i>
Præstat, <i>it is better.</i>	Vacat, <i>there is leisure.</i>	
Restat, <i>it remains.</i>		

## (b.) In the second conjugation ;—

Apparet, <i>it appears.</i>		Solet, <i>it is usual.</i>
Attinet, <i>it belongs to.</i>	Nocet, <i>it is hurtful.</i>	Fletur, <i>there is weep- ing.</i>
Debet, <i>it ought.</i>	Patet, <i>it is plain.</i>	Persuadetur. (See above, 2.)
Displicet, <i>it displeases.</i>	Pertinet, <i>it pertains.</i>	
Dolet, <i>it grieves.</i>	Placet, <i>it pleases.</i>	

## (c.) In the third conjugation ;—

Accidit, <i>it happens.</i>	Creditur, <i>it is believed.</i>	Mittitur, <i>it is sent.</i>
Incipit, <i>it begins.</i>	Desinitur, <i>there is an end.</i>	Scribitur, <i>it is written.</i>
Sufficit, <i>it suffices.</i>		

## (d.) In the fourth conjugation ;—

Convénit, <i>it is agreed on.</i>	Aperitur, <i>it is opened.</i>
Expédit, <i>it is expedient.</i>	Sentitur, <i>it is meant.</i>

## (e.) Among irregular verbs ;—

Abeundum est, <i>it is ne- cessary to depart.</i>	Fit, <i>it happens.</i>	Prodest, <i>it avails.</i>
Aditur. (See above, 2.)	Intérest, <i>it concerns.</i>	Refert, <i>it concerns.</i>
	Obest, <i>it is hurtful.</i>	Supérest, <i>it remains.</i>

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature ; as,

Fulgurat, <i>it lightens.</i>	Lapídat, <i>it rains stones.</i>	Regelat, <i>it thaws.</i>
Fulminat, <i>it thunders.</i>	Lucescit, <i>it grows light.</i>	Tonat, <i>it thunders.</i>
Gelat, <i>it freezes.</i>	Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Vesperascit, <i>it ap- proaches evening.</i>
Grandínat, <i>it hails.</i>	Pluit, <i>it rains.</i>	

2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead ; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds and supines but *páñtēt* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dus*, and the gerund. *Pudet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense ; as, *ut Tíberis inter eos et pons intéresset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same sense.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination* ; as, *fabríco* and *fabrícor*, to frame ;—in *conjugation* ; as, *lavo*, *-āre*, and *lavo*, *-ēre*, to wash ;—or in *certain tenses* ; as, *odi* and *osus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active in *o*, of the same meaning. The latter, however, is, in general, rarely used.

Adolor, <i>to flatter.</i>	Cunctor, <i>to delay.</i>	Medicor, <i>to heal.</i>
Altercor, <i>to dispute.</i>	Depascor, <i>to feed upon.</i>	Mereor, <i>to deserve.</i>
Amplexor, <i>to embrace.</i>	Elucubror, <i>to elaborate.</i>	Metor, <i>to measure.</i>
Assentior, <i>to assent.</i>	Fabricor, <i>to frame.</i>	Palpor, <i>to caress.</i>
Aucupor, <i>to hunt after.</i>	Frustror, <i>to disappoint.</i>	Populor, <i>to lay waste.</i>
Auguror, <i>to foretell.</i>	Fruticor, <i>to sprout.</i>	Ruminor, <i>to ruminate.</i>
Cachinnor, <i>to laugh aloud.</i>	Impertior, <i>to impart.</i>	Velificor, <i>to set sail.</i>
Comitor, <i>to accompany.</i>	Lachrymor, <i>to weep.</i>	Vociferor, <i>to bawl.</i>
	Ludificor, <i>to ridicule.</i>	Urinator, <i>to dive.</i>

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Cieo, -ere, } <i>to excite.</i>	Fulgeo, -ere, } <i>to</i>	Strideo, -ere, } <i>to</i>
Cio, -ire, r. } <i>to</i>	Fulgo, -ere, r. } <i>shine.</i>	Strido, -ere, } <i>creak.</i>
Denso, -are, } <i>to</i>	Lavo, -are, } <i>to wash.</i>	Tergeo, -ere, } <i>to wipe.</i>
Denseo, -ere, r. } <i>thicken.</i>	Lavo, -ere, r. } <i>to</i>	Tergo, -ere, } <i>to protect.</i>
Ferveo, -ere, } <i>to</i>	Lino, -ere, } <i>to</i>	Tueor, -eri, } <i>to protect.</i>
Fervo, -ere, r. } <i>boil.</i>	Linio, -ire, r. } <i>anoint.</i>	Tuor, -i, r. } <i>to protect.</i>
Fodio, -ere, } <i>to dig.</i>	Scateo, -ere, } <i>to</i>	Those marked r. are
Fodio, -ire, r. } <i>to dig.</i>	Scato, -ere, r. } <i>abound.</i>	rarely used.

*Morior, orior, and potior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs, also, are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdico, -are, <i>to abdicate.</i>	Caneo, -ere, <i>to be white.</i>	Consterno, -are, <i>to terrify.</i>
Abdico, -ere, <i>to refuse.</i>	Careo, -ere, <i>to want.</i>	Consterno, -ere, <i>to strew over.</i>
Accido, -ere, <i>to happen.</i>	Caro, -ere, <i>to card wool.</i>	Decido, -ere, <i>to fall down.</i>
Accido, -ere, <i>to cut short.</i>	Celo, -are, <i>to conceal.</i>	Decido, -ere, <i>to cut off.</i>
Addo, -ere, <i>to add.</i>	Cælo, -are, <i>to carve.</i>	Decipio, -ere, <i>to deceive.</i>
Adeo, -ire, <i>to go to.</i>	Censeo, -ere, <i>to think.</i>	Desipio, -ere, <i>to dote.</i>
Aggéro, -are, <i>to heap up.</i>	Sentio, -ire, <i>to feel.</i>	Deligo, -are, <i>to tie up.</i>
Aggéro, -ere, <i>to heap upon.</i>	Clauco, -ere, <i>to shut.</i>	Deligo, -ere, <i>to choose.</i>
Allégo, -are, <i>to depute.</i>	Clauco, -ere, <i>to be lame.</i>	Diligo, -ere, <i>to love.</i>
Allégo, -ere, <i>to choose.</i>	Colligo, -are, <i>to tie together.</i>	Dico, -ere, <i>to say.</i>
Appello, -are, <i>to call.</i>	Colligo, -ere, <i>to collect.</i>	Dico, -are, <i>to dedicate.</i>
Appello, -ere, <i>to drive to.</i>	Colo, -are, <i>to strain.</i>	Edo, -ere, <i>to eat.</i>
Cado, -ere, <i>to fall.</i>	Colo, -ere, <i>to cultivate.</i>	Edo, -ere, <i>to publish.</i>
Cædo, -ere, <i>to cut.</i>	Compello, -are, <i>to accost.</i>	Educo, -are, <i>to educate.</i>
Cedo, -ere, <i>to yield.</i>	Compello, -ere, <i>to force.</i>	Educo, -ere, <i>to draw out.</i>
Cæleo, -ere, <i>to be hot.</i>	Concido, -ere, <i>to chop off.</i>	Efféro, -are, <i>to make wild.</i>
Calleo, -ere, <i>to be hard.</i>	Concido, -ere, <i>to fall.</i>	Efféro, -re, <i>to carry out.</i>
Cano, -ere, <i>to sing.</i>	Conscendo, -ere, <i>to climb.</i>	Excido, -ere, <i>to fall out.</i>
	Conscindo, -ere, <i>to cut in pieces.</i>	Excido, -ere, <i>to cut off.</i>

<b>Ferio</b> , -ire, <i>to strike.</i>	<b>Māneo</b> , -ēre, <i>to stay.</i>	<b>Prædico</b> , -ēre, <i>to fore-tell.</i>
<b>Fēro</b> , -re, <i>to bear.</i>	<b>Mando</b> , -āre, <i>to command.</i>	<b>Prōdo</b> , -ēre, <i>to betray.</i>
<b>Fērior</b> , -ari, <i>to keep holiday.</i>	<b>Mando</b> , -ēre, <i>to eat.</i>	<b>Prōdeo</b> , -īre, <i>to come forth.</i>
<b>Frigeo</b> , -ēre, <i>to be cold.</i>	<b>Mēto</b> , -ēre, <i>to reap.</i>	<b>Recēdo</b> , -ēre, <i>to retire.</i>
<b>Frigo</b> , -ēre, <i>to fry.</i>	<b>Mētor</b> , -ari, <i>to measure.</i>	<b>Recido</b> , -ēre, <i>to fall back.</i>
<b>Fugo</b> , -āre, <i>to put to flight.</i>	<b>Mētior</b> , -iri, <i>to measure.</i>	<b>Recido</b> , -ēre, <i>to cut off.</i>
<b>Fugio</b> , -ēre, <i>to fly.</i>	<b>Mētuo</b> , -ēre, <i>to fear.</i>	<b>Reddo</b> , -ēre, <i>to restore.</i>
<b>Fundo</b> , -āre, <i>to found.</i>	<b>Misēror</b> , -ari, <i>to pity.</i>	<b>Redeo</b> , -īre, <i>to return.</i>
<b>Fundo</b> , -ēre, <i>to pour out.</i>	<b>Misēreor</b> , -ēri, <i>to pity.</i>	<b>Refēro</b> , -re, <i>to bring back.</i>
<b>Incido</b> , -ēre, <i>to fall into.</i>	<b>Moror</b> , -ari, <i>to delay.</i>	<b>Refērio</b> , -īre, <i>to strike back.</i>
<b>Incido</b> , -ēre, <i>to cut.</i>	<b>Morior</b> , -i, <i>to die.</i>	<b>Relēgo</b> , -āre, <i>to remove.</i>
<b>Indico</b> , -āre, <i>to show.</i>	<b>Niteo</b> , -ēre, <i>to glitter.</i>	<b>Relēgo</b> , -ēre, <i>to read over.</i>
<b>Indico</b> , -ēre, <i>to proclaim.</i>	<b>Nitor</b> , -i, <i>to strive.</i>	<b>Sēdo</b> , -āre, <i>to allay.</i>
<b>Inficio</b> , -ēre, <i>to infect.</i>	<b>Obsēro</b> , -āre, <i>to lock up.</i>	<b>Sēdeo</b> , -ēre, <i>to sit.</i>
<b>Infitor</b> , -ari, <i>to deny.</i>	<b>Obsēro</b> , -ēre, <i>to sow.</i>	<b>Sido</b> , -ēre, <i>to sink.</i>
<b>Intercido</b> , -ēre, <i>to happen.</i>	<b>Occido</b> , -ēre, <i>to fall.</i>	<b>Sēro</b> , -ēre, <i>to knit.</i>
<b>Intercido</b> , -ēre, <i>to cut asunder.</i>	<b>Occido</b> , -ēre, <i>to kill.</i>	<b>Succido</b> , -ēre, <i>to fall down.</i>
<b>Jaceo</b> , -ēre, <i>to lie down.</i>	<b>Operio</b> , -ēre, <i>to cover.</i>	<b>Succido</b> , -ēre, <i>to cut down.</i>
<b>Jacio</b> , -ēre, <i>to throw.</i>	<b>Opēror</b> , -ari, <i>to work.</i>	<b>Vado</b> , -ēre, <i>to go.</i>
<b>Lābo</b> , -āre, <i>to totter.</i>	<b>Opērior</b> , -iri, <i>to wait for.</i>	<b>Vādor</b> , -ari, <i>to give bail.</i>
<b>Labor</b> , -i, <i>to glide.</i>	<b>Pando</b> , -āre, <i>to bend.</i>	<b>Vēneo</b> , -īre, <i>to be sold.</i>
<b>Lacto</b> , -āre, <i>to suckle.</i>	<b>Pando</b> , -ēre, <i>to open.</i>	<b>Vēnio</b> , -īre, <i>to come.</i>
<b>Lacto</b> , -āre, <i>to deceive.</i>	<b>Pāro</b> , -āre, <i>to prepare.</i>	<b>Vēnor</b> , -ari, <i>to hunt.</i>
<b>Lēgo</b> , -āre, <i>to send.</i>	<b>Pāreo</b> , -ēre, <i>to appear.</i>	<b>Vincio</b> , -īre, <i>to bind.</i>
<b>Lēgo</b> , -ēre, <i>to read.</i>	<b>Pārio</b> , -ēre, <i>to bring forth.</i>	<b>Vinco</b> , -ēre, <i>to conquer.</i>
<b>Liceo</b> , -ēre, <i>to be lawful.</i>	<b>Pārio</b> , -āre, <i>to balance.</i>	<b>Vōlo</b> , -āre, <i>to fly.</i>
<b>Liceor</b> , -ēri, <i>to bid for.</i>	<b>Pēdeo</b> , -ēre, <i>to hang.</i>	<b>Vōlo</b> , velle, <i>to be willing.</i>
<b>Liquo</b> , -āre, <i>to melt.</i>	<b>Pēcolo</b> , -āre, <i>to filter.</i>	
<b>Liqueo</b> , -ēre, <i>to be manifest.</i>	<b>Pēcolo</b> , -ēre, <i>to adorn.</i>	
<b>Liquor</b> , -i, <i>to melt.</i>	<b>Permāneo</b> , -ēre, <i>to remain.</i>	
<b>Māno</b> , -āre, <i>to flow.</i>	<b>Permāno</b> , -āre, <i>to flow over.</i>	
	<b>Prædico</b> , -āre, <i>to publish.</i>	

## 2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect ; as,

<b>Aceo</b> , acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	<b>Luceo</b> , luxi, <i>to shine.</i>	<b>Pasco</b> , pavi, <i>to feed.</i>
<b>Acuo</b> , acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>	<b>Lugeo</b> , luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>	<b>Pendeo</b> , pependi, <i>to hang.</i>
<b>Cresco</b> , crevi, <i>to grow.</i>	<b>Mulceo</b> , mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i>	<b>Pendo</b> , pependi, <i>to weigh.</i>
<b>Cerno</b> , crevi, <i>to decree.</i>	<b>Mulgeo</b> , mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>	
<b>Fulgeo</b> , fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>	<b>Paveo</b> , pavi, <i>to fear.</i>	
<b>Fulcio</b> , fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>		

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

## 3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle ; as,

<b>Frico</b> , frictum, <i>to rub.</i>	<b>Pando</b> , passum, <i>to open.</i>
<b>Frigo</b> , frictum, <i>to roast.</i>	<b>Patior</b> , passum, <i>to suffer.</i>
<b>Maneo</b> , mansum, <i>to remain.</i>	<b>Teneo</b> , tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
<b>Mando</b> , mansum, <i>to chew.</i>	<b>Tendo</b> , tentum, <i>to stretch.</i>
<b>Pango</b> , pactum, <i>to drive in.</i>	<b>Verro</b> , versum, <i>to brush.</i>
<b>Paciscor</b> , pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>	<b>Verto</b> , versum, <i>to turn.</i>

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. Those which are active are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter of the second. They are usually formed by adding *o* or *eo* to the root; as,

*Actives from Nouns.*

*Armo, to arm, (arma.)*  
*Fraudo, to defraud, (fraus.)*  
*Nomino, to name, (nomen.)*  
*Numero, to number, (numerus.)*

*Neuters from Nouns.*

*Floreo, to bloom, (flos.)*  
*Frondeo, to produce leaves, (frons.)*  
*Luceo, to shine, (lux.)*  
*Vireo, to flourish, (vis.)*

*From Adjectives.*

*Albo, to whiten, (albus.)*  
*Celebro, to celebrate, (celeber.)*  
*Libero, to free, (liber.)*

*Albeo, to be white, (albus.)*  
*Calveo, to be bald, (calvus.)*  
*Flaveo, to be yellow, (flavus.)*

Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

*Coacervo, to heap together, (acervus.)*  
*Excavo, to excavate, (cavus.)*

*Extirpo, to extirpate, (stirps.)*  
*Illaqueo, to insnare, (laqueus.)*

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, &c. denoted by the primitive; as, *architector*, to build; *comitor*, to accompany; *furor*, to steal; from *architectus*, *comes*, and *fur*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *cornitor*, to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Græcor*, to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patrisso*, to imitate a father.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express the frequent repetition of the action denoted by the primitive.

They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed from the third root. In verbs of the first conjugation, *ātu* is changed into *īto*, rarely into *o*; as, *clamo*, to cry, (*clamātu*), *clamīto*, to cry frequently; *no*, to swim, (*natu*), *nato*. In verbs of the other three conjugations, *u* is changed into *o*, rarely into *īto*; as, *curro*, to run, (*cursu*), *curso*, or *cursīto*, to run frequently.

Some are derived from the present, or perhaps from an obsolete third root; as, *ago*, (*agītu*), *agīto*; *cogo*, *cogīto*.

Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minitor*, from *minor* (*minūtu*); *versor*, from *verto* (*versu*). So *sector*, *loquitur*, from *sequor* and *loquor*.

Verbs of this class do not always express frequency of action, but have sometimes nearly the same meaning as their primitives.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives*, mark the beginning, or increased degree of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *caleo*, to be hot; *calesco*, to grow hot.

So *labo*, *labasco*; *ingēmo*, *ingemisco*; *obdormio*, *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*.

Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives, by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *juvenesco*, from *juvēnis*.

Some inceptives have the same meaning as their primitives; as, *adharesco*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco* which are not inceptives are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

They are formed from the third root, by shortening the final *u*, and adding *rio*; as, *cæno*, to sup, (*cænātu*,) *cænaturio*, to desire to sup.

Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, NOTE.

Verbs in *urio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prærio*, *decario*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *cantillo*, to sing a little—from *canto*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *esso* or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *facesso*, to act earnestly—from *facio*.

So *exapesso*, *arcesso*, from *cipio* and *arceo*. *Concupisco*, to desire greatly, is also an intensive.

## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ 188. Verbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *adifício*, *belligero*, *lucrifacio*.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplifico*, *multiplifico*, *nikipendo*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *calefacio*, *madefacio*, *patefacio*.
4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefacio*, *maledico*, *satāgo*, *nolo*



5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excōlo, prodo, subrēpo, discerno, sejungo*.

6. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *pernocto, irretio*.

§ 189. In composition, certain changes often occur in the radical letters of the simple verb.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :

Arceo,	Carpo,	Farcie,	Jacto,	Pario,	Patro,	Spargo,
Candeo,	Damno,	Fatiscor,	Lacto,	Partio,	Saero,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Gradior,	Mando,	Patior,	Scando,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, pramando, desacro, and retracto*; *pradamno* and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *depeciscor* from *paciscor*, *occulto* from *santo*, and *anhelo* from *halo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following change *a*, *æ*, and *e*, into *i* :

Ago,	Capio,	Habeo,	Pango,	Rego,	Statuo,
Apiscor,	Egeo,	Jacio,	Placeo,	Salio, (to leap,)	Taceo,
Cado,	Emo,	Lacio,	Premo,	Sapio,	Tango,
Cædo,	Fateor,	Lædo,	Quæro,	Sedeo,	Teneo.
Cano,	Frango,	Lateo,	Rapio,	Specio,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *circumāgo, perāgo, satāgo*; *antehabeo, posthabeo*; *depango, repango*; *complaceo* and *perplaceo*. *Ocedno* and *recdno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coëmo, circumsedeo, and supersedeo*. *Antecapio* and *anticipo* are both used; so also are *superjacio* and *superjicio*.

*Cogo* and *dego* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de, and ago*; *demo, promo, and sumo*, from *de, pro, sub, and emo*; *præbeo*, and perhaps *debeo*, from *præ, de, and habeo*; *pergo* and *surgo*, from *per, sub, and rego*.

NOTE 1. *Facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as, *afficio*. Some compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives, change *a* into *i*, and also drop *i* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, latifico, magnifico*. *Specio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspicio*.

NOTE 2. *Lego*, compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec, and se*, changes *e* into *i*; as, *colligo, negligo, &c.*; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub, and trans*, it retains *e*; as, *allègo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *o*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo*. *Audio* changes *au* into *e* in *obedio*. *Causo, claudio, and quatio*, drop *a*; as, *accuso, reclado, percutio*. *Juro* changes *u* into *e* in *dejūro* and *pejūra*.

NOTE 4. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Defendo,	Impedio,	Confuto,	Instigo,	Conniveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Refuto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Exterior,	Compello, (-are,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo, and some
Expedio,	Appello, (-are,)	Congruo,	Renideo,	Exuo, others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs, see § 196, I.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. The parts of speech which are not inflected, are called by the general name of *particles*. They are adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, *benè et sapienter dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; *egregiè fidelis*, *remarkably faithful*; *valdè benè*, *very well*.

REMARK. The modifications of adjectives and verbs which are effected by adverbs, may also generally be made by means of the oblique cases of nouns and adjectives; and many modifications may be denoted by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general, those modifications which are most common are expressed by adverbs. Thus, for *cum sapientiâ*, *sapienter* is used; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *benè*, for *in bono modo*; *nunc*, for *hoc tempore*, &c.

Adverbs are divided into various classes, according to the nature of the modification denoted by them; as adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, &c.

§ 191. The following lists contain a great part of the more common adverbs, except those which are formed, with certain regular terminations, from nouns, adjectives, and participles. These will be noticed subsequently.

I. Adverbs of *Place* and *Order*.

Alià, <i>by another way.</i>	Eò, <i>to that place.</i>	Illic, <i>thither.</i>
Alibi, <i>elsewhere.</i>	Eòdem, <i>to the same place.</i>	Inde, <i>then, thence.</i>
Alicubi, <i>somewhere.</i>	Exinde, <i>after that.</i>	Indidem, <i>from the same place.</i>
Alicunde, <i>from some place.</i>	Foras, <i>out of doors.</i>	Intrò, <i>within.</i>
Aliò, <i>to another place.</i>	Foris, <i>without.</i>	Introrsum, <i>within.</i>
Aliquò, <i>to some place.</i>	Hàc, <i>this way.</i>	Intus, <i>within.</i>
Aliunde, <i>from elsewhere.</i>	Hic, <i>here.</i>	Istàc, <i>that way.</i>
Dehinc, <i>henceforth.</i>	Hinc, <i>hence.</i>	Istic, <i>there.</i>
Deinceps, <i>successively.</i>	Huc, <i>hither.</i>	Istinc, <i>thence.</i>
Deinde, <i>after that.</i>	Horsum, <i>hitherward.</i>	Istò, <i>thither.</i>
Denique, <i>finally.</i>	Ibi, <i>there.</i> [place.]	Istuc, <i>thither.</i>
Denuo, <i>again.</i>	Ibidem, <i>in the same place.</i>	Necubi, <i>lest any where.</i>
Deorsum, <i>downward.</i>	Illàc, <i>that way.</i>	Neutrò, <i>neither way.</i>
Dextrorsum, <i>towards the right.</i>	Illic, <i>there.</i>	Nusquam, <i>no where.</i>
Eà, <i>that way.</i>	Illinc, <i>thence.</i>	Porro, <i>moreover.</i>
	Illorsum, <i>thitherward.</i>	Prorsum, <i>forward.</i>
	Illò, <i>thither.</i>	Quà ? <i>by which way ?</i>

Quò? <i>whither?</i>	Sinistrorsum, <i>towards the left.</i>	Uspiam, } <i>any where.</i>
Quorsum? <i>whitherso?</i>		Usquam, }
Retro,	Sursum, <i>upward.</i>	Utrinque, <i>on both sides.</i>
Retrosum, } <i>backward.</i>	Ubi? <i>where?</i>	Utrò? <i>which way?</i>
Rursum,	Ubique, <i>every where.</i>	Utròbi? <i>in which place?</i>
Sicubi, <i>if any where.</i>	Ubivis, <i>any where.</i>	Utrobiq, <i>in both places.</i>
Sicunde, <i>if from any place.</i>	Unde? <i>whence?</i>	Utròque, <i>each way.</i>
	Undique, <i>from all sides.</i>	

REMARK 1. Most adverbs of place which answer the questions *where? whence? whither? by which way? and whitherso?* have a mutual relation and resemblance:—Thus,

Ubi?	Unde?	Quò?	Quà?	Quorsum?
Hic,	Hinc,	Huc,	Hàc,	Horsum,
Illic,	Illinc,	Illuc,	Illàc,	Illorsum,
Istic,	Istinc,	Istuc,	Istàc,	Istorsum,
Ibi,	Inde,	Eò,	Eà,	—,
Ibidem,	Indidem,	Eòdem,	Eàdem,	—,
Alibi,	Aliunde,	Aliò,	Alià,	Aliorsum,
Alicubi,	Alicunde,	Aliquò,	Aliquà,	Aliquoversum.

REM. 2. *Hic, hinc, huc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istic, istinc, istuc*, to the place of the person addressed; and *illic, illinc, illuc*, to that of the person or thing spoken of.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

Aliquando, <i>sometimes.</i>	Jamjam, <i>presently.</i>	Quater, <i>four times.</i>
Aliquoties, <i>several times.</i>	Jampridem, <i>long since.</i>	Quondam, <i>formerly.</i>
Bis, (see § 119,) <i>twice.</i>	Mox, <i>immediately.</i>	Quotidie, <i>daily.</i>
Cras, <i>to-morrow.</i>	Nondum, <i>not yet.</i>	Quoties? <i>how often?</i>
Cum, <i>when.</i>	Nonnunquam, <i>sometimes.</i>	Rarò, <i>seldom.</i>
Demum, <i>at length.</i>	Nudius tertius, <i>three days ago.</i>	Rursus, <i>again.</i>
Diu, <i>long.</i>	Nunc, <i>now.</i>	Sæpe, <i>often.</i>
Dudum, <i>heretofore.</i>	Nunquam, <i>never.</i>	Semel, <i>once.</i>
Heri, <i>yesterday.</i>	Nuper, <i>lately.</i>	Semper, <i>always.</i>
Hodie, <i>to-day.</i>	Olim, <i>formerly.</i>	Statim, <i>immediately.</i>
Identidem, <i>now and then.</i>	Parumper, <i>a little while.</i>	Subinde, <i>now and then, frequently.</i>
Illico, <i>immediately.</i>	Perendie, <i>two days hence.</i>	Tamdiu, <i>so long.</i>
Interdum, <i>sometimes.</i>	Postridie, <i>the day after.</i>	Tandem, <i>at length.</i>
Interim, <i>in the mean time.</i>	Pridem, <i>heretofore.</i>	Ter, <i>thrice.</i>
Iterum, <i>again.</i>	Pridie, <i>the day before.</i>	Toties, <i>so often.</i>
Jam, <i>now.</i>	Protinus, <i>instantly.</i>	Tum, } <i>then.</i>
Jamdiu, } <i>long ago.</i>	Quamdiu? <i>how long?</i>	Tunc, }
Jamdudum, }	Quando? <i>when?</i>	Vicissim, <i>by turns.</i>
		Unquam, <i>ever.</i>

REM. 3. Some adverbs are used to denote either place, time, or order, according to the connection:—Thus,

*Ubi* may signify either where or when; *inde*, from that place or time; *hactenus*, hitherto, in regard to place or time.

REM. 4. The interrogative adverbs, like the interrogative pronouns, are often used indefinitely; as, *nescio ubi sit*, I know not where he is. (See § 137, NOTE.) They are made general by adding *vis, libet, or que*;

as, *ubivis, ubique*, every where; *undelibet*, from every where. The termination *cunque* is equivalent to the English *soever*; as, *ubicunque*, where-soever. The repetition of an adverb has sometimes the same effect; as, *quoquò*, whithersoever; *ubiùbi*, wheresoever.

### III. Adverbs of *Manner, Quality, &c.*

Adeo, <i>so, to such a pass.</i>	Nimum, <i>too much.</i>	Quomodo? <i>how? in what manner?</i>
Admodum, <i>very much.</i>	Non, <i>not.</i>	Sanè, <i>truly.</i>
Aliter, <i>otherwise.</i>	Num? <i>whether?</i>	Satis, <i>enough.</i>
An? <i>whether?</i>	Omnino, <i>altogether, only.</i>	Satiùs, <i>rather.</i>
Ceu, <i>as, like as.</i>	Palam, <i>openly.</i>	Scilicet, <i>truly.</i>
Cur? <i>why?</i>	Pariter, <i>equally.</i>	Secus, <i>otherwise.</i>
Duntaxat, <i>only, at least.</i>	Parùm, <i>little.</i>	Seorsum, <i>separately.</i>
Etià, <i>truly, yes.</i>	Paulatim, <i>by degrees.</i>	Sic, <i>so.</i>
Fere, <i>almost.</i>	Paulò, } <i>a little.</i>	Sicut, } <i>as.</i>
Ferne, <i>almost, nearly.</i>	Paulùm, }	Sicùti, }
Fortasse, <i>perhaps.</i>	Pæne, <i>almost.</i>	Sigillatim, <i>one by one.</i>
Frustra, <i>in vain.</i>	Penitùs, <i>within, wholly.</i>	Simul, <i>together.</i>
Gratis, <i>freely.</i>	Perquam, <i>very much.</i>	Solùm, <i>only.</i>
Haud, <i>not.</i>	Plerùmque, <i>for the most part.</i>	Tam, <i>so.</i>
Immo, <i>yes, truly.</i>	Potius, <i>rather.</i>	Tanquam, <i>as if.</i>
Ita, <i>so.</i>	Præsertim, <i>especially.</i>	Tantum, } <i>only.</i>
Itidem, <i>in like manner.</i>	Profectò, <i>truly.</i>	Tantummodo, }
Juxtà, <i>alike.</i>	Propè, <i>almost, near.</i>	Unà, <i>together.</i>
Magis, <i>more.</i>	Propemodum, <i>almost.</i>	Ut, <i>as.</i>
Modò, <i>only.</i>	Prorsus, <i>wholly.</i>	Uti, <i>as.</i>
Næ, <i>verily.</i>	Quàm, <i>as.</i>	Utique, <i>therefore, verily.</i>
Ne, <i>not.</i>	Quamobrem, <i>wherefore.</i>	Utpòte, <i>as, inasmuch as.</i>
Nedum, <i>much less.</i>	Quarè? <i>why? wherefore?</i>	Valdè, <i>very much.</i>
Nempe, <i>to wit, truly.</i>	Quasi, <i>as if, almost.</i>	Velut, } <i>as, like as.</i>
Nequaquam, } <i>by no means.</i>	Quemadmodum, <i>as.</i>	Velùti, }
Neutiquam, }		Videlicet, <i>certainly.</i>
Nimirum, <i>certainly.</i>		Vix, <i>scarcely.</i>
Nimis, <i>too much.</i>		

REM. 5. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, &c., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *benè, malè*. 2. Certainty; as, *certè, planè*. 3. Contingence; as, *fortè*. 4. Negation; as, *haud, non*. 5. Prohibition; as, *ne*. 6. Swearing; as, *hercle*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet, utpòte*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsum*. 9. Joining together; as, *simul, unà*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cur? quarè?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *satis, adeo*. 12. Excess; as, *valdè, maxime*. 13. Defect; as, *parùm, pæne*. 14. Preference; as, *potiùs, satiùs*. 15. Likeness; as, *ita, sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, solùm*.

### DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

#### I. From nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im*, and denote manner; as, *gregatim*, in herds; *membratim*, limb by limb; *partim*, by parts; *vicissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, *pars*, and *vici*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote manner or origin ; as, *cælitus*, from heaven ; *funditus*, from the bottom ; *radicitus*, by the roots ; from *cælum*, *fundus*, and *radix*.

3. Some are ablative cases of nouns used adverbially ; as, *modò*, only ; *vulgò*, commonly.

## II. From adjectives.

1. Those which are derived from adjectives of the first and second declension, are generally formed by adding *e* to the root ; as,

*agrè*, scarcely ; *altè*, high ; *librè*, freely ; *longè*, far ; *misèrè*, miserably ; *plenè*, fully ; from *ager*, *altus*, *liber*, *longus*, *miser*, and *plenus*. *Benè*, well, is from *bonus*, or an older form *benus*.

A few end in *iter*, *itus*, and *im* ; as,

*naviter*, actively ; *aliter*, otherwise ; *antiquitus*, anciently ; *divinitus*, divinely ; *privatim*, privately ; *singulatim*, severally ; from *navis*, *alius*, *antiquus*, *divinus*, *privatus*, and *singuli*.

Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning ; as, *durè* and *duriter*, harshly : so *cautè* and *cautim* ; *humànè*, *humaniter*, and *humanitus* ; *publicè* and *publicitus*.

2. Adjectives of the third declension form adverbs by adding *iter* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *er* only is added ; as,

*acriter*, sharply ; *feliciter*, happily ; *turpiter*, basely ; — *eleganter*, elegantly ; *prudenter*, prudently ; from *acer*, *felix*, *turpis*, *elegans*, and *prudens*.

From *omnis* is formed *omnino*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies* ; as,

*quingies*, *decies*, from *quinque* and *decem*. So *toties* and *quoties*, from *tot* and *quot*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *o* or *a* ; as, *citò*, quickly ; *continuo*, immediately ; *falsò*, falsely ; *rectà*, straight on ; *unà*, together. In like manner, *repentè*, suddenly, from *repens*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives neuter, in the singular, and sometimes in the plural ; as, *solum*, only ; *perfidum*, perfidiously ; *sublimè*, on high ; *facile*, easily ; *multa*, much ; *tristia*, sadly.

(c.) From some adjectives of the first and second declension, chiefly ordinal adjectives, forms both in *um* and *o* are used ; as, *primum* and *primò*, first ; *postrimum* and *postrimò*, finally.

NOTE 1. These adverbs are properly adjectives agreeing with some noun understood, either definite, as, *rectà*, sc. *vià*, or indefinite. Those in *o* are the most numerous. The plural forms occur chiefly in poetry.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, &c. (See § 191, REM. 1.)

The ablative in *o* is used to denote a place whither, instead of the accusative with a preposition; as, *ed* for *ad eum locum*; and the ablative in *a*, to denote by or through a place; as, *hac*; *viâ* or *parte* being understood.

IV. From participles are derived adverbs denoting manner. Those from present participles are formed by adding *er* to the root; those from perfects by adding *e*, and sometimes *im*; as,

*amanter*, lovingly; *properanter*, hastily; from *amans* and *propèrans*;—*doctè*, learnedly; *ornatè*, elegantly; *raptim*, by rapine; *strictim*, closely; from *doctus*, *ornatus*, *raptus*, and *strictus*.

The ablative in *o* of some perfect participles, like that of adjectives, is used adverbially; as, *auspicatò*, auspiciously; *consultò*, designedly.

NOTE. A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *clanculum*, privately; from *clam*;—*subtus*, beneath; from *sub*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

§ 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postridie*, *magnopère*, *summopère*, *multimòdis*, *quotannis*—of *postèro die*, *magno opère*, *summo opère*, *multis modis*, *quot annis*.

2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hodie*, *quarè*, *quomòdò*—of *hoc die*, *quòd re*, &c.

3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nudius*, *sæpenumèro*—of *nunc dies*, &c.

4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *cominus*, *eminus*, *illico*, *obviam*, *postmòdo*, *propediem*—of *con*, *e*, and *manus*; *in* and *loca*; *ab* and *viam*, &c.

5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *aliqui*, *ceterèqui*—of *ulq̃us*, *ceterus*, and *q̃ui*.

6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquandiu*, *alicubi*—of *aliquis*, *diu*, and *ubi*; *nequàquam*—of *ne* and *quisquam*.

7. Of two verbs; as, *illicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*—of *ire*, *scire*, *videre*, and *licet*.

8. Of a verb and an adverb; as, *quolibet*, *ubivis*, *undelibet*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *capib*.

9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum*, *dextrorsum*, *hòrsu*, *retrosum*, *sursum*—of *de*, *dexter*, *hic*, *retro*, *super*, and *vorsus* or *versus*.

10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdudum*, *quousque*, *sicut*.

11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *denuo*, *imprimis*—of *de novo*, *in primis*.

12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter*, *postea*, *interea*, *præterea*—of *propter quæ*, *post ea*, &c.

13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc*, *adhuc*, *derepente*, *persæpe*.

14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insuper, proctinus, inde, dein, deinde, perinde*.

15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nequibi, sicubi*—of *ne, si, and alicubi*.

16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ibidem, parumper, quandocunque, ubique, utcunque*.

17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsitan*—of *fors, sit, an; quemadmodum, quamobrem, &c.*

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *e* and *ter*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *ius*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* into *e*; as,

*durè, durius, durissimè; facillè, facilius, facillimè; acriter, acrius, acerrimè; rarè, rarius, rarissimè.*

Some adverbs have superlatives in *o* or *um*; as, *meritissimò, plurimùm, primò or primùm, potissimùm.*

If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*benè, melius, optimè; malè, pejus, pessimè; parùm, minus, minimè; multò or multum, plus, plurimùm; —, prius, primò or primum; —, ocius, ocissimè; meritò, —, meritissimò; satis, satius, —. Magis, maximè, (from *magnus*,) has no positive; *nuper, nuperimè*, has no comparative.*

*Diu* and *sæpe*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diu, diutius, diutissimè; sæpe, sæpius, sæpissimè*. A comparative *tempus*, from *tempèri* or *tempèri*, also sometimes occurs.

Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *magis* and *maximè*; as, *magis apertè, maximè accommodatè*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

Ad, to, at, for, before.	Circa, } around,	Erga, towards, opposite.
Adversus, } against,	Circùm, } about.	Extra, without, beyond,
Adversùm, } towards.	Circiter, about, near.	besides.
Ante, before.	Cis, } on this side,	Infra, under, beneath.
Apud, at, with, among,	Citra, } without.	Inter, between, among,
before.	Contra, against, opposite.	at, in time of.

Intra, within.	Post, after, since, behind.	Secundum, according to, along, next to, for.
Juxta, near.	Præter, beyond, except, contrary to, before.	Supra, above.
Ob, for, on account of, before.	Prope, nigh, by, beside.	Trans, over, beyond.
Penes, in the power of.	Propter, for, on account of, near.	Ultra, beyond.
Per, through, by, during.		
Ponè, behind.		

Eleven prepositions have an ablative after them :—

A, } from, by, after.	Cum, with.	Præ, before, for, on account of, in comparison of.
Ab, }	De, of, concerning, from, after, for.	Pro, for, before, considering, according to.
Abs, }	E, } from, of, out of,	Sine, without.
Absque, without, but for.	Ex, }	Tenus, as far as, up to.
Coram, before, in presence of.	Palam, before, with the knowledge of.	

Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative :—

In, in, into.	Sub, under, near.	Super, above.	Subter, under, beneath.
Clam, without the knowledge of.			

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and sometimes before consonants; *abs* before *q* and *t*.

*E* is prefixed only to consonants, *ex* both to vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versus*, towards, and *usque*, as far as, which by some are considered prepositions, seem to be more properly classed with adverbs. *Palam* also is commonly an adverb. *Secus*, in the sense of *by, along*, wants good authority.

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§196. Prepositions are compounded with various parts of speech. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used only before *m* and *v*; as, *amoveo, avello*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d, f, h, j, l, n, r*, and *s*; as, *abjuro, abrogo, &c.* *Abs* occurs only before *c, q*, and *t*; as, *abscondo, absque, abstineo*. In *asporto*, *b* is dropped; in *aufero* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* often changes *d* into *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accedo, affero, aggredior, allego, annitor, appono, arriigo, assiquor, attollo*. *D* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant,



and before *gn*; as, *aspergo, aspicio, agnosco, agnatus*. Before *q*, *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquiro*.

3. *Circum* usually omits *m* before a vowel; as, *circueo, circuitus*. It sometimes changes *m* into *n* before *d*; as, *circundo*.

4. *Cum* (in composition, *com*) retains *m* before *b, m, p*; as, *combibo, committo, compōno*: before *l, n, r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo, connitor, corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *condūco, conjungo, &c.* Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coēo, coopto, cogo (com ago), cognosco, cohabito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comēdo, comes, comitor*. In *comburo, b* is inserted.

5. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c, h, p, q, s, t*; as, *exeo, exigo, excurro, exhibeo, expedio, &c.* Before *f, z* is changed into *f*; as, *effero*: before *s*, it is often omitted; as, *exequor*. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ebibo, edico, &c.* These, with the exception of *n* and *r*, are also very rarely preceded by *ex*; as, *exmoveo*. *P* is sometimes preceded by *e*; as, *epōto*.

6. *In*, before *b, m, p*, changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo, immitto, impōno*: before *l* and *r*, it changes *n* into those letters respectively; as, *illigo, irretio*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignārus*. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indāgo, indigeo, indolesco*.

7. *Ob* changes *b* into *c, f, g, p*, before those letters respectively; as, *occurro, officio, ogganio, oppōto*. In *omitto*, *b* is dropped.

8. *Per* changes *r* into *l* in *pellicio* and *pelluceo*.

9. *Pro* sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prodeo, prodesse*.

10. *Sub* sometimes changes *b* into *c, f, g, m, p, r*, before those letters respectively; as, *succēdo, suffero, suggero, summoveo, supplico, surripio*. Before *c, p*, and *t*, *b* is sometimes changed into *s*; as, *suscipio, suspendo, sustollo*: it is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

11. *Trans* omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: before other consonants, it often omits *ns*; as, *trajicio, tramitto, trano, &c.*

The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

Amb, around, about.

Red or re, again, back.

Ve, not.

Dis or di, asunder.

Se, apart, aside.

12. *Amb* before a vowel is unchanged; as, *ambarvālis, ambio, ambustus*: before consonants, *b* is omitted, and *m*, except before *p*, is changed into *n*; as, *anfractus, angusto, amputo*.

13. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c, p, q, s, t*; as, *discutio, dispōno, disquiro, dissēro, distendo*: before *f, s* is changed into *f*; as, *diffēro*: in *dirimo*, *s* becomes *r*. *Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *didūco, dimitto, distinguo, dispicio*. But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j* and *r*; as, *disjungo, dijudico, dirumpo* or *dirumpo*.

14. *Red* is used before a vowel or *h*; *re* before a consonant; as, *reddāmo, redeo, redhibeo, redigo, redoleo, redundo*;—*rejicio, repōno, revertor*. But *red* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*.

15. *Se* and *ve* are prefixed without change; as, *sectdo, securus; vegrandis, vecors*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples, as in the following examples:—

1. *A*, with a noun, sometimes denotes privation; as, *amens*, mad.
2. *Ad* is sometimes intensive; as, *adāmo*, to love greatly; *adibō*, to drink much.
3. *De* often signifies downward; as, *descendo*, to descend; *decido*, to fall down. It is sometimes intensive; as, *dedāmo*, to love greatly; *demirror*, &c. Sometimes it denotes privation; as, *despēro*, to despair; *demens*, mad; *decolor*, discolored.
4. *Dis* is sometimes intensive; as, *discupio*, to desire greatly; and sometimes negative; as, *dissimilis*, unlike.
5. *E* and *ex* are sometimes intensive; as, *exoro*, to beg earnestly; *exaudio*, to hear perfectly. Sometimes they denote privation; as, *exsanguis*, bloodless; *exspes*, hopeless.
6. *In*, with adjectives, generally denotes negation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful; *indignus*, unworthy. In some compounds, it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *invocātus*, called upon or not called upon; *immutātus*, changed or unchanged, &c.
7. *Ob* sometimes denotes around; as, *obeo*, to go around; sometimes against; as, *oppōno*, to oppose; *obsto*, to withstand.
8. *Per*, with adjectives, is commonly intensive; as, *percārus*, very dear; *perfacilis*, very easy. With *quā*, it is strongly intensive; as, *perquam breviter*, with exceeding brevity. In *perfidus*, perfidious, *per* is negative.
9. *Præ*, with adjectives, is intensive; as, *præclārus*, very clear; *prævalidus*, very strong.
10. *Pro* sometimes denotes forth; as, *produco*, to bring forth; *proloquor*, to speak out.
11. *Red* is sometimes intensive; as, *redundo*, to overflow; sometimes it is negative; as, *retēgo*, to uncover; *reclūdo*, to unlock.
12. *Se*, with adjectives, denotes privation; as, *secūrus*, without care.
13. *Sub* often diminishes the meaning; as, *subrideo*, to smile; *subdulcis*, sweetish; *subtristis*, somewhat sad. It sometimes denotes motion upwards; as, *subriigo*, to raise up.
14. *Ve*, with adjectives, denotes privation; as, *vecsānus*, unsound; *vecors*, foolish.

REMARK. Prepositions in composition seem often to add nothing to the signification of the words with which they are compounded.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

Ac, <i>and, as, than.</i>	Ideo, <i>therefore.</i>	Quippe, <i>because.</i>
An, <i>whether.</i>	Ignitur, <i>therefore.</i>	Quòd, <i>in order that.</i>
Anne, <i>whether.</i>	Itaque, <i>therefore.</i>	Quòd, <i>because.</i>
Annon, <i>whether or not.</i>	Licet, <i>though.</i>	Quoniam, <i>since.</i>
At, <i>as, but.</i>	Modò, <i>provided.</i>	Quoque, <i>also.</i>
Atque, <i>and, as, than.</i>	Nam, <i>namque, for.</i>	Sed, <i>but.</i>
Atqui, <i>but.</i>	Ne, <i>lest.</i>	Seu or sive, <i>or.</i>
Attamen, <i>yet.</i>	-Ne, <i>whether.</i>	Seu...sive, <i>whether...or.</i>
Aut, <i>either, or.</i>	Nec, <i>neither, nor.</i>	Si, <i>if.</i>
Autem, <i>but.</i>	Nec...neque, <i>neither...nor.</i>	Sin, <i>but if.</i>
Cetèrùm, <i>but, however.</i>	Necne, <i>or not.</i>	Siquidem, <i>if indeed,</i>
Cùm, <i>quum, since.</i>	Neque, <i>neither, nor.</i>	<i>since.</i>
Cùm...tum, <i>both...and.</i>	Neu, <i>neither, nor, and not.</i>	Tamen, <i>however.</i>
Dum, <i>provided, while.</i>	Neu...neve, <i>neither...nor.</i>	Tametsi, <i>although.</i>
Dummòdo, <i>so that.</i>	Ni, } <i>unless.</i>	Tum...tum, <i>both...and.</i>
Enim, <i>for.</i>	Nisi, }	Ut, <i>that.</i>
Equidem, <i>indeed.</i>	Num, <i>whether.</i>	Uti, <i>that, to the end that.</i>
Ergo, <i>therefore.</i>	Quamvis, <i>although.</i>	Utrùm, <i>whether.</i>
Et, <i>and.</i>	Quando, <i>quandoquid-</i>	-Ve, <i>either, or.</i>
Et...et, <i>both...and.</i>	<i>dem, whereas, since.</i>	Vel, <i>either, or.</i>
Etiam, <i>also.</i>	Quanquam, <i>although.</i>	Verò, <i>truly.</i>
Etiamsi, <i>although.</i>	-Que...que, <i>both...and.</i>	Verùm, <i>but.</i>
Etsi, <i>though.</i>	Quia, <i>because.</i>	Veruntamen, <i>notwith-</i>
Idcirco, <i>therefore.</i>	Quin, <i>but that.</i>	<i>standing.</i>

Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following classes :—

1. **COPULATIVES**, or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly ; as, *ac, atque, et, etiam, que, quoque*, and the negative *nec* or *neque*.

2. **DISJUNCTIVES**, or such as connect things that are to be considered separately ; as, *aut, seu, sive, ve, vel*, and the negative *neve* or *neu*.

3. **CONCESSIVES**, or such as express a concession ; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*.

4. **ADVERSATIVES**, or such as express opposition ; as, *at, atqui, autem, cetèrùm, sed, tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verò, verùm*.

5. **CAUSALS**, or such as express a cause or reason ; as, *enim, etenim, nam, namque, quando, quandoquidem, quia, quippe, quòd, quoniam, quum* or *cùm, siquidem*.

6. **ILLATIVES**, or such as express an inference ; as, *ergo, idcirco, ideo, igitur, itaque, proinde, quapropter, quare, quomobrem, quocirca*.

7. **FINALS**, or such as denote a purpose, object, or result ; as, *ne, quin, quòd, quominus, ut, uti*.

8. **CONDITIONALS**, or such as express a condition ; as, *si, sin, nisi* or *ni, dummodo, or separately either dum or modò*.

9. **SUSPENSIVES**, or such as express doubt ; as, *an, anne, annon, -ne, necne, num, utrum*.

**REMARK 1.** *Ac* rarely stands before vowels or *h* ; *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.

REM. 2. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always annexed to some other word. They are called *enclitics*.

REM. 3. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, &c., and connect propositions; as, *Cæteris in rebus, cum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*; In other concerns, when misfortune comes, then damage is received.

REM. 4. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, *idcirco*, *ideo*, *namque*.

In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simples retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*), and now; *itaque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

Ah! <i>ah! alas!</i>	Euge! <i>well done!</i>	Io! <i>huzza!</i>
Atat! <i>ha! indeed!</i>	Evax! }	O! <i>oh!</i>
Au! <i>hush! whist!</i>	Evœ! } <i>huzza!</i>	Oh! <i>oh! alas!</i>
Ecce! <i>lo! behold!</i>	Ha! <i>ha! he! ha! ha!</i>	Ohe! <i>ho! hold!</i>
Ehem! <i>O strange!</i>	Hei! <i>wo! alas!</i>	Oi! <i>hoy! alas!</i>
Eheu! <i>alas!</i>	Hem! <i>ho! hold! how!</i>	Papæ! <i>O strange!</i>
Eho! <i>ehödum! soho!</i>	lo! <i>bravo!</i>	Proh! <i>oh! alas!</i>
Eja! <i>on!</i>	Heu! <i>wo! alas!</i>	St! <i>hush!</i>
En! <i>lo! behold!</i>	Heus! <i>ho there! mark!</i>	Væ! <i>wo!</i>
Eu! <i>bravo!</i>	Hui! <i>away! ho!</i>	Vah! <i>ha! alas! bravo!</i>

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus, *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *misèrum*, *miserabile*, *nefas*, when used as expressions of grief or horror.

## SYNTAX.

§ 200. Syntax treats of the construction of propositions, their connection and dependence.

A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

The predicate expresses that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, *Equus currit*, The horse runs. Here *equus* is the subject, and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as used by grammarians, must be understood to include all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the different moods.

## SUBJECT.

§ 201. I. The subject is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

The grammatical subject is either a noun, or some word standing for a noun. The logical subject consists of the grammatical subject, with its various *modifications*.

Thus, *Conscientia bene actæ vitæ est jucundissima*, The consciousness of a well-spent life is very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bene actæ vitæ* the logical, subject.

NOTE. If the grammatical subject is not modified, it is the same as the logical subject.

II. The subject is also either *simple* or *compound*.

A simple subject is a single noun or word standing for a noun, either alone or variously modified; as,

*Vita brevis est*, Life is short. *Longissima hominis vita brevis est*, The longest life of man is short. *Fugaces labuntur anni*.

A compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects, to which one predicate belongs; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant*, The moon and stars were shining. *Grammaticæ ac musicæ junctæ fuerunt*, Grammar and music were united.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* others, when they serve to explain, describe, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

*Modified Subject.*

III. A grammatical subject may be modified or limited in different ways :—

1. By a noun in the same case, annexed to it for the sake of explanation or description ; as,

*Nos consules desūmus*, We consuls are remiss. *Mucius augur multa narrāvit*, Mucius the augur related many things.

2. By the oblique case of a noun or pronoun to which the subject has some relation ; as,

*Amor multitudinis commovetur*, The love of the multitude is excited. *De victoriā Cæsaris fama perfertur*, A report of the victory of Cæsar is brought.

3. By an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle ; as,

*Fugit invīda ætas*, Envious time flies. *Ducit agmina Penthesilea furens*, Penthesilea raging leads on her troops.

4. By the relative *qui* and the words connected with it ; as,

*Leve fit quod bene fertur onus*, The burden which is well borne becomes light. *Litteræ, quas scripsisti, acceptæ sunt*.

REMARK 1. A noun or pronoun, in any case, may be modified in either of the ways above mentioned.

REM. 2. An adjective modifying a noun may itself be modified :—

(1.) By an adverb ; as,

*Erat expectatio valdè magna*, There was very great expectation.

(2.) By a noun in an oblique case ; as,

*Major pietate*, Superior in piety. *Contentionis cupidus*, Fond of contention.

(3.) By a relative or other dependent clause ; as,

*Videtur, qui impèret, dignus* ; He seems worthy to command.

(4.) By an infinitive mood, a gerund, or a supine ; as,

*Insuetus vera audire*, Unused to hear the truth. *Promptus ad agendum*, Ready to act. *Mirabile dictu*, Wonderful to be spoken.

REM. 3. A participle may be modified like a verb. See § 202, III.

REM. 4. An adverb may be modified :—

(1.) By another adverb ; as,

*Magis apertè*, More openly. *Valdè vehementer*, Very vehemently.

(2.) By a noun, pronoun, or adjective, in an oblique case ; as,

*Congruenter naturæ*, Agreeably to nature. *Optimè omnium*, Best of all.

REM. 5. A preposition may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun in an oblique case ; as,

*Longè ultra*, Far beyond. *Multò ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vcios captos*.

REM. 6. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea *tua consilia*. So *Omnia tua prava consilia*.

IV. 1. An infinitive, either alone or with the words connected with it, and also an entire clause, may be the *logical* subject of a proposition; as,

*Mentiri est turpe*, To lie is base. *Virtus est vitium fugere*, To shun vice is a virtue. *E cælo descendit*, "Nosce te ipsum." *Æquum est ut hoc facias*.

In such cases, the verb, or, if that be *esse*, the verb with its predicate noun or adjective, may be considered as the *grammatical* subject; as,

*Oratorem irasci non decet*. *Non satis est*, pulchra esse poemata.

2. In consequence of the various modifications of the grammatical subject of a proposition, the logical subject may be greatly extended.

3. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition, is put in the nominative case, except that, when the verb of the predicate is an infinitive mood, it is put in the accusative.

NOTE. In the following pages, when the term *subject* alone is used, the grammatical subject is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 202. I. The predicate, like the subject, is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

The grammatical predicate is either a verb alone, or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective. The logical predicate consists of the grammatical predicate with its various modifications.

Thus, *Scipio fudit Annibalis copias*, Scipio routed the forces of Hannibal. Here *fudit* is the grammatical, and *fudit Annibalis copias* the logical, predicate. *Romulus Romanæ conditor urbis erat*.

NOTE. If the grammatical predicate is not modified, it is the same as the logical predicate.

II. The predicate also, like the subject, is either *simple* or *compound*.

A simple predicate is one which contains a single finite\* verb; as,

*Brevis est voluptas*, Pleasure is brief. *Mors venit*, Death comes. *Mors æquo pulsat pede pauperum tabernas, regumque tures*.

A compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

*Probitas laudatur et alget*, Honesty is praised and neglected.

---

\* A verb in any mood except the infinitive, is called a *finite verb*.

*Modified Predicate.*

III. A grammatical predicate may be modified or limited in different ways :—

1. By a noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs, and verbs passive of naming, calling, &c. (see § 210, REM. 3); as,

*Incēdo regīna, I walk queen. Aristides justus est appellātus.*

2. By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Deus regit mundum, God rules the world. Ago tibi gratias. Ex voluntate fecit. Spe vivimus. Venit ad urbem.*

3. By adverbs; as,

*Sæpe venit, He often came. Litteræ facillè discuntur.*

4. By an infinitive mood; as,

*Cupit discere, He desires to learn. Probari volunt.*

REM. 1. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

REM. 2. All other words used to modify verbs, may themselves also be modified in the ways mentioned under the article *Modified Subject*, § 201, III.

## • SENTENCES. •

§ 203. 1. A sentence may consist either of one proposition, or of two or more propositions connected together.

A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple* sentence.

A sentence consisting of two or more propositions, is called a *compound* sentence, and the propositions of which it is composed are called *members*, or *clauses*.

2. The members of a compound sentence are either independent or dependent.

An independent clause is one which makes complete sense by itself. A dependent clause is one which makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

Thus, *Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse posset*; Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich. Here the former clause is independent, the latter dependent.

3. That member of a compound sentence on which the other members depend, is called the *leading clause*; its subject, the *leading subject*; and its verb, the *leading verb*.



The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive.

4. The members of a compound sentence may be connected by relative words, conjunctions, or adverbs.

An infinitive with its subject may be united with another clause without a connective.

5. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

*Bello confecto, discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*; The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nihil desperandum*, Teucro duce. Hor.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the proposition.

## APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

*Roma urbs*, The city Rome. *Nos consules*, We consuls. So *Apud Herodotum, patrem historiarum, sunt innumerabiles fabulæ*; In Herodotus, the father of history, &c. Cic. *Lapides silices*, flint stones. Liv. *Fons cui nomen Arethusa est*. Cic.

REMARK 1. A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* with it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ comitem me adjunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight. Both nouns must belong to the same part of the sentence, either subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus magister egregius*. Plin. *Philosophia magistra vitæ*. Cic.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender; as, *Duo fulmina belli, Scipiadas*; The Scipios, two thunderbolts in war (Cic.); sometimes in number; as, *Tullidola, deliciæ nostræ* (Cic.);—and sometimes in both; as, *Nate, meæ vires*. Virg.

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the

word in apposition with it; as, *Consul dixi*, sc. *ego*; (I) the consul said. *Hoc tibi juvenis Romāna indictus bellum*, sc. *nos*; (We) the Roman youth, &c. Liv.

REM. 5. A noun in apposition to two or more nouns, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribūni plebis*; M. Antony, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs.

So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicaearchum verò cum Aristoxēno, doctos sanè homines, omittāmus*. Cic.

If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legātī missi*. Liv.

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbs Patavii*; The city of Patavium. Virg. *Amnis Eridāni*. Id. *Arbor fici*. Cic. *Nomen Mercurii est mihi*. Plaut.

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition with it; as, *Corinthis Achæie urbe*; At Corinth, a city of Achæia. Tac. See §§ 221 and 254, REM. 3.

REM. 8. A proper name, after *nomen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is sometimes put in apposition with the dative, rather than with *nomen* or *cognōmen*; as, *Nomen Arctūro est mihi*, I have the name Arcturus. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen Iulo additur*. Virg. *Cui Egerio militum nomen*. Liv.

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogitet oratorem institui—rem arduam*; Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by the nouns in apposition with it; as, *Oneraria, pars maxima ad Ægimurum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsum delatæ sunt*; The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poëtæ suum quisque opus a vulgo considerari vult*. Cic. In the following example, *quisque* is in the nominative, though the word with which it is in apposition is in the ablative:—*Multis sibi quisque imperium petentibus*. Sall.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case with the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis herus est tibi?* Amphitruo, sc. *est*. Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. *Quid quaris?* Librum, sc. *quæro*. What are you looking for? A book. *Quotâ horâ venisti?* Sextâ. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cujus est liber?* Mens, (not *Mei*.) (See § 211, REM. 3.) So *cujum* for gen. *cujus*; *Cujum pecus?* an *Melibæi?* Non; *verum Ægōnis*. Virg.

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisti?* Viginti minis. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imò alio crimine. §§ 252 and 217.

## ADJECTIVES. X

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bonus vir*, A good man.

*Benigna mater*, A kind mother.

*Triste bellum*, A sad war.

*Spe amissâ*, Hope being lost.

*Bonos viros*, Good men.

*Vanæ leges*, Useless laws.

*Minacia verba*, Threatening words.

*Hæc res*, This thing.

NOTE 1. An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either modify a noun, or, with the verb *sum*, constitute a predicate. The rule for their agreement, in both cases, is, in general, the same.

NOTE 2. In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles and adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

REMARK 1. An adjective also agrees with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipsæ capellas æger ago*, sc. *ego*, *Melibæus*; (I) myself, sick, am driving my goats. Virg. *Ut se totum ei traderet*. Nep. *O me miserum* (spoken by a man), *miseram me* (by a woman). So *salvi sumus*, *salvæ sumus*, sc. *nos*, masculine or feminine.

In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumere nati*. Hor.

REM. 2. An adjective, belonging to two or more nouns, is put in the plural; as,

*Lupus et agnus siti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His genus, ætas, eloquentia prope æqualia fuere*; Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, imperia, nobilitates, honores, divitiæ in casu sita sunt*. Cic. *Huic bellæ, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuere*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra recens in corpus eunt*. Lucr.

NOTE. When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes it takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Naves captivos quæ ad Chium capta erant*, The ships and captives which were taken at Chios. Liv. *Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*. Sall.

**Exc. to REM. 2.** The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest ; as,

*Sociis et rege recepto*, Our companions and king being recovered. Virg. *Cognitum est, salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse carissimas.* Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective ; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos.* Liv. *Ria cum Lauso de Numitore sati.* Ovid.

**REM. 3.** An adjective qualifying a collective noun, is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes ; as,

*Pars certare parati*, A part prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros dilapsi, ... suam quisque spem exsequentes.* Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine vindictæ tuti.* Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb.

Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the *singular* takes the gender of the individuals ; as, *Pars arduus altis pulverulentus equis furit.* Virg.

Some other nouns have an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include ; as, *Latium Capuâque agro mulctati* ; Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Capita conjurationis virginis cæsi.* Id.

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun ; as, *Maria Tyrrhenum atque Adriaticum*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun ; as, *Nobis præsentem.* Plaut. *Absente nobis.* Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda* ; Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Veneti appellati.* Liv.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative ; as, *Mihi negligenti esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit.* Cic. *Da mihi justo sanctoque videri.* Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective ; as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris.* Liv. The adjective often agrees with the omitted subject ; as, *Expedit bonas esse vobis*, sc. *vos.* Ter. *Si civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum.* Cic.

**REM. 7. (1.)** An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood ; as,

*Boni sunt rari*, sc. *homines* ; Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos misit*, sc. *milites* ; Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, sc. *manus* ; The right (hand). *Pinguisq[ue] ferinæ*, sc. *carnis.* *Immortales*, sc. *Dii.* *Amantium*, sc. *hominum.* *Illum indignanti similem, similemque minanti aspiceres*, sc. *homini.* Virg. *Tibi primas defero*, sc. *partes.* Cic. *Respicere præteritum*, sc. *tempus*, which is often omitted. *Cognovi ex meorum omnium literis*, sc. *amicorum.* Cic. So patrilial adjectives ; as, *Missi ad Parthum Armeniumque legati*, sc. *regem.*

**NOTE 1.** The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *homines*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *amici*, *maiores*, *cives*.

**NOTE 2.** The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) Neuter adjectives are very often used alone, referring not to nouns omitted, but to objects conceived or exhibited as indefinite; as,

*Triste lupus stabulis*; The wolf, a grievous (thing) to the folds. Virg. *Labor omnia vincit*; Labor overcomes all (obstacles). Id. *Turpe ducet cedere pari*. Quinct. *Vacare culpâ est suave*. *Quæ cum ita sint*. Cic. *Pedibus per mutua nexis*. Virg.

NOTE. In most instances of this kind, the word *thing*, in English, may be supplied. Many grammarians suppose that *negotium* is understood; but that word seems not to admit such a sense.

(3.) Adjectives used without nouns often have adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things). Plin. *Familiaris meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta funebria*. Liv. *Jovis omnia plena*. Virg. See § 201, III. REM. 6.

REM. 8. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective; as, *Supremum vale dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Velle suum cuique est*. Pers. *Cras istud quando venit?* Mart. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latus*. Hor.

REM. 9. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum temporis*, for *multum tempus*; much time. Id. *rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So *plus eloquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110.) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vana rerum*, for *vanæ res*. Hor. *Pleraque humanarum rerum*. Sall. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used as noticed in REM. 7, (2.); as, *Acuta belli*. Hor. *Tellaris operta*. Virg.

The adjectives thus used in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, REM. 3, NOTE 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sonuere*. Id. *Multa deos venerati sunt*. Cic. See § 192, II. 4, (b.)

REM. 11. A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Incola turba vocant*. Ovid. *Nemo miles Romanus*. Liv.

An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Heri semper lenitas*, for *sempiterna*. Ter.

REM. 12. An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluorum nulla est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus*. Cic. *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*. Plin. See § 212, REM. 2.

When a collective noun follows in the genitive singular, the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostra civitatis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. When a possessive pronoun is used instead of the genitive of its primitive (see § 211, REM. 3.), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi*

*non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster dñorum eventus*. Liv. *Mea scripta timentis*. Hor. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id.

Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition with the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands ; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicitas*. Cic.

REM. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versa* ; as, *Ædificationis tuæ consilium for tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes violati hospitii fœdus, for violatum*. Liv. *Ad majora initia rerum ducentibus fatis, for majorem*. Id. *Iis nominibus civitatum, quibus ex civitatibus, &c. for earum civitatum*. Cæs.

REM. 15. An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry ; as, *Ecce venit Telamon propèrus* ; Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitabamus, for lætè*. Sall. *Enèas se matutinus agebat, for mane*. Virg.

So *nullus* is used for *omnino non* ; as, *Memini tametsi nullus moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Prior, primus, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially ; as, *Priori Remo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning ; as, *Pronus cecidit*. Ovid. *Frequentes convenèrant*. Sall.

In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versa* ; as, *Sic venias hodiernæ*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium parens patriæ* appellate. Plin.

REM. 16. When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions ; as, *Multà et varià et copiosà oratione*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted, as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehemens, plena veritatis*. Id.

But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun the conjunction is always omitted ; as, *Periculosissimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Malam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives ; *Externos multos claros viros nominàrem*. Cic. See § 201, II., REM. 6.

REM. 17. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extrèmus, intèmus, infimus, imus, summus, suprèmus, reliquus*, and *cetèra*, often signify the *first part, the middle part, &c.* of a thing ; as,

*Media nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The highest part of a tree. *Suprèmos montes*, The tops of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification ; as, *Ab extrèmo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

REM. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of neuter verbs, used in the passive voice, is neuter ; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscèra terræ*. Ovid.

## RELATIVES.

§ 206. REM. 19. Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong ; as,

*Puer qui legit*, The boy who reads. *Animal quod currit*, The animal

which runs. *Litteræ quas dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum qualis eram*, I am not such as I was. So *Deus cujus munere vivimus*, cui nullus est similis, quem colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus. *Addictus Hermippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquila, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

NOTE. This rule includes all adjectives, participles, and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the relative *qui*.

The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender and number, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed ; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent* ; There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Crudelissimo bello, quale bellum nulla unquam barbaria gessit*. Cic.

(2.) Usually the antecedent only is expressed ; as,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret, impërat* ; Govern your passions, which rule unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ multitudinis, quantam capit urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot capitum vivunt, totidem studiorum millia*. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, generally when the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent ; as,

*Quibus de rebus ad me scripsisti, coram videbimus* ; In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*. Liv. *Quantâ vi expetunt, tantâ defendunt*. *Qualesque visus eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tales aspicio*. Ovid.

To this head may be referred such examples as the following :—*Qui meus amor in te est, i. e. pro meo amore qui in te est* ; Such is my love for you. Cic. *Quæ tua est virtus, expugnabis, i. e. pro tua virtute, &c.*

(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun, especially when the cases are different ; as, *Ad quas res aptissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede ; as, *Quis non malârûm quas amor curas habet, hæc inter obliviscitur* ? Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed ; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun ; as,

*Qui bene latuit, bene vixit, sc. homo* ; (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculo pulvèrem Olympicum collegisse jurat, sc. homines* ; There are whom it delights, &c. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accusem, sc. id propter quod*. Cic. *Non solum sapiens valetis qui hinc absis, sed etiam beatus, sc. tu*. Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit* ; *Tyrii tenuère colônî, sc. quam or eam* ; There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed (Virg.) ; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different ; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuérant, Romanos invadunt, for et qui non in priore, &c.* Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Cum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum consulisti*, for *quæ*. Cic. *Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exibant, for iis, quæ, quisque efferre poterat, elatis*. Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative; as, *Urbem, quam statuo vestra est, for urbs*. Virg. *Naucrætem, quem convivere nolui, in navi non erat*. Plaut. *Sed istum, quem quæris, ego sum*. Id.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction*.

(7.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos, &c.*; Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quæ magna volunt*. Virg. *Calore, quem multum habet*. Cic.

This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative, or a superlative; as, *Nocte, quam in terris ultimam egit*, The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æsculapius, qui primus vulnus obligavisse dicitur*. Cic. *Consiliis pure, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nuntius dat senior*. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Cum venissent ad vada Volaterrana, quæ nominantur*. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative is joined a noun, explanatory of the antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative agrees with that noun; as,

*Santonæ non longè à Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provincia*. The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which *stute* is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitiâ, quod tempus haud longè aberrat*. Sall.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flumen est Arar quod in Rhodanum influit*. Cæs. *Ad flumen Oxum perventum est, qui turbidus semper est*. Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, &c., a noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative agrees with either; as,

*Naturæ vultus quem dixere Chaos*, The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. *Genus hominum quod Helotes vocatur*. Nep. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*; The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*. Sall. *Pecuniarum conquisitio; eos esse belli civilis nervos dicitur Mucianus*. Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

*Abundantia earum rerum quæ mortales prima putant*, An abundance of those things which mortals esteem most important. Sall. *Quantum genus est sanè varium et mistum .... qui jampridem premuntur*. Cic. *Conjuravere pauci contra rempublicam, de quâ (sc. conjuratione), quàm brevissimè potèro dicam*. Sall. *Daret ut catenis fatale monstrum, quæ, &c., sc. Cleopatra*. Hor. *Non diffidentia futuri quæ imperavisset*. Sall. *Si tempus est ullum quæ multa sunt*. Cic.



(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnes laudare fortūas meas, qui natum tali ingenio præditum habērem . sc. mei*; All were extolling my fortune, who had a son endowed with such a disposition. Ter. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui meos cives servis armātis objici noluerim.* Cic.

(13.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition, and then the relative is commonly neuter; as, *Postremo, quod difficillimum inter mortāles, gloriā invidiam vicisti*; Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men, is very difficult. Sall. *Equidem exspectābam jam tuas lītēras, idque cum multis.* Cic.

In such instances, *id* is sometimes placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Platōnis studiōsus audiendi fuit.* Cic. *Diem consumi volēbant, id quod fecerunt.* Id.

Sometimes a relative referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period. It is thus used especially before *si* and *nisi*, and sometimes before *utnam*, *ut*, *ne*, *ubi*, *cum*, *contra*, and *nunc*; as, *Quod si mundum efficiere potest concursus atomōrum, cur porticum, cur templum, cur domum, cur urbem non potest?* In regard to which, if the concourse of atoms can produce a world, why, &c. Cic. *Quod te per genium obsecro, vitæ me redde priōri.* Hor. *Quod utnam illum, cujus impio facinōre in has misērias projectus sum, eādē hęc simulāntem videam.* Sall.

*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) If the relative refers to two or more nouns of different genders, its gender will be determined by REM. 2; as, *Ninus et Semirāmis, qui Babylōna condidērunt*; Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro fundi et tibiēne, quæ sibi sumpserat.* Cic. *Ex summā latitū et lasciviā, quæ diuturna quies pepererat.* Sall.

(16.) The relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding words, *tot*, *tantus*, *talis*; but these are often omitted.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ cum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

## DEMONSTRATIVES, INDEFINITES, &c.

§§ 207. REM. 20. The adjective pronouns often agree with a noun expressed, instead of another noun understood; as, *Nec solos tangit Atreidas iste dolor*, Nor does that grief (i. e. grief on that account) affect the sons of Atreus alone. Virg.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns are sometimes used where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Quem neque fides, neque jusjurandum, neque illum misericordia, repressit*; Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter.

REM. 22. The neuters of the demonstrative pronouns are sometimes used in apposition with a dependent clause; as, *Hoc tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse*; I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing.

REM. 23. *Hic* refers to what is near, *ille* to what is remote. Hence, of two things mentioned before, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to

the former; as, *Ignavia corpus hebetat, labor firmat*; illa *matūram senectutem*, hic *longam adolescentiam reddit*: Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

Yet this rule is not always observed; as, *Sic deus et virgo est*; hic *spe celer*, illa *timore*. Ovid. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote "the one...the other."

When more than two persons or things are spoken of, *ille* refers to the most remote, *iste* to a nearer, and *hic* to the nearest object. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, &c., of some other person or thing. See § 191, REM. 2.

REM. 24. *Ille* is used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro simillimus*, Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Medea illa*. Cic. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic.

REM. 25. *Iste* often denotes contempt; as, *Impediebantur eā lege, quam idem iste tulerat*....the same wretch. Cic. Sometimes, on the contrary, it means *so great*; as, *Cū istā sis auctoritāte*, Since you are of so great authority. Cic.

REM. 26. *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but refers to something already mentioned or to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

*Is* has sometimes the sense of *talis*, such; as, *Neque enim tu is es, qui quid sis nescias*; Nor are you such a person as to be ignorant what you are. Cic.

*Is* with *et* or *que* is emphatic, equivalent to the English "and that too;" as, *Privatās causas, et eas tenues agimus*; We manage private causes, and those unimportant. Cic. *Erant in Torquāto plurimā librā nec eā vulgāres*. Id.

REM. 27. *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, also, or of *tamen*, yet, if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam iidem poētæ*; Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrātes et Tigris magno aquarū divortio iter percurrunt*; iidem (and yet) *paulatim in arcinus cōtunt*.

*Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of "at once," denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui iidem ornātū iidem versūtū dicērent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

"The same as" is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quasi* or *ut*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eādem ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputationem exponimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic.

REM. 28. *Ipsē*, when used with the substantive pronouns, sometimes agrees with them; but, when they are reflexive, and in an oblique case, it commonly agrees with the subject of the proposition; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Medici ipsi se curāre non possunt*. Sulpic. *Se ipsos omnes naturā diligunt*.

*Ipsē* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsārem occiderunt*. Cic.

*Ipsē*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness; as,

*Om ipsis nonis Sextilis*, Exactly on the fifth of August. Cic. *Triginta dies erant ipsi*, Thirty whole days had elapsed. Id.

REM. 29. The relative *quicunque* is sometimes used as equivalent to *omnis* or *quivis* ; as, *Quæ sanâri potërunt quâcunque ratione sanâbo*, What can be cured I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied ;—"in whatever way I can." So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.

REM. 30. *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular, corresponding to the English *some one* ; as, *Hereditas est pecunia, quæ morte alicujus ad quempiam pervenit jure* ; An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinâ aliquid omnium genërum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

REM. 31. *Quisquam*, any one, and *ullus*, any, are universal : they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*) ; also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine* ; as, *Neque ex castris Catilinæ quisquam omnium discesserat*, Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo casu potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci* ? Id. *Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusanis fuit, quàm quisquam superiorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen.

*Ullus* is properly an adjective, but it may be used, like any other adjective, with a noun understood. *Quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person ; as, *Cuiquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam*. *Nemo* is often used for *nullus* ; as, *nemo pictor, nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic.

REM. 32. *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with "one....another ;" as, *Aliud aliis videtur optimum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis aliunde periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another ; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium aliter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.

*Alter* is commonly used when two persons are spoken of ; as, *Uterque numerus alter alterâ de causâ habetur*. Cic.

*Alius*, repeated in different propositions, is also translated "one....another ;" as, *Aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic.

REM. 33. *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known ; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quodam tempore Metapontum venisse tecum*. Id.

*Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others* ; as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consciverunt* ; Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used as a limitation ; as, *Milvo est quoddam bellum naturale cum corvo*, .... a kind of warfare. Cic.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, any one you please, are universal ; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quivis ut perspicere possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic apud majores nostros adhibebatur peritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply ; as, *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Co-*

*rinthum*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. *Quisque* signifies *each, every one*, and generally stands without a noun ; as, *Quod cuique oblitgit, id quisque teneat* ; Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic.

It is often used with two superlatives ; as, *Optimum quidque rarissimum est*. The best things are the rarest. Cic. *Ut quisque optimè dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem timet*. Id.

With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible* ; as, *Primo quoque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

REM. 36. The possessives *meus, tuus, noster, vester*, and *suus*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives ; as, *Tulus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam vicem dolere soleo*. Cic.

But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the *objects* of an action, feeling, &c. ; as, *Nam neque tuâ negligentia, neque odio id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, Rem. 3.

These pronouns, as reflexives, are often omitted ; as, *Quo revertar ? in patriam ?* sc. *meam* ; Whither shall I return ? to (my) country ? Ovid. *Dextrâ munera porrexit*, sc. *sua*. Id.

## REFLEXIVES.

§ 208. REM. 37. *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand ; as,

*Oppidani facinus in se ac suos fedum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same ; as, *Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipse mercèdem exigit caritatis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives commonly refer to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, &c., of that subject are stated ; as, *Ariovistus prædicavit, non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse* ; Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Homërum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petivit ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent*. Id.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, &c., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause ; as, *Medeam prædicant* (sc. *homines*) *in fugâ fratris sui membra in iis locis, quâ se parens persequeretur, dissipavisse*. Cic. *Ipsam regem tradunt operatum his sacris se abdidisse*. Liv.

(3.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice ; as, *A Cæsare invitator ut sim sibi legatus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitat* ; I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence ; which denotes a thing with life ; as, *Canum tam fida custodia quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commoditates esse generatos ?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subor-

dinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to which it relates; as, *Jugurtha legatos misit qui ipsi liberisque vitam petèrent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissimè ferre homines debent, quæ ipsorum culpâ contracta sunt*.

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as, *Fratres inter se cum formâ, tum moribus similes*; Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Feras inter sese conciliat natura*. Cic. *Incidunt aliqui a doctis etiam inter ipsos mutuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as, *Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, suis verbis, adversarios ejus in fugâ esse*; Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep. But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as, *Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as, *Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut unâ cum iis profisciscantur*; The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs. In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (sc. *Ligarius*) *ut ei pacem esse expediret*. Cic. Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, neminem secum sine suâ pernicië contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suâ* to *neminem*.

(7.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as, *Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejecerunt*, Him his citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titurius quum procul Ambiorigem, suos cohortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

*Suus*, and not *hujus*, &c., is used when a noun is omitted; as, *Octavium, quem sui* (sc. amici) *Cæsarem salutabant*; Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

*Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum*, but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as, *Ptolemæus amicos Demetrii cum suis rebus dimisit*; Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit*, *favorable*; as, *Sunt et sua dona parenti*. There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Alphénus utebatur populo sanè suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua thura Sabæi*, sc. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg.

## NOMINATIVE.

### SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209X A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lego*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos legimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

REMARK 1. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as, *cupio*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *habemus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

But when emphasis or distinction is intended, they are expressed; as, *Ego reges ejeci*, *vos tyrannos introducit*; I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dico aperte*, *consules destitimus*. Cic. *Tu es patronus*, *tu pater*. Ter.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mosa profluit ex monte Vosgo*, *et in oceanum influit* (Cæs.); or (b.) in an oblique case; as, *Cursorem miserunt*, *ut id nuntiaret*, sc. *cursor*. Nep.

(2.) When it is a person or thing conceived or exhibited as indefinite.

Thus *homines* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *scrunt*, &c.; as, *Ut aiunt*, As they say. Cic. *Maximè admirantur eum*, *qui pecuniâ non movetur*. Id.

This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bavius non odit*, *amet tua carmina*, *Mævi*, sc. *homo*; May (he) who hates not Bavius, like your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastatur agri quod inter urbem ac Fidénas est*, sc. *id spatium*. Liv. *Sunt quos juvat*,...sc. *homines*; There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vetèris pocula Massici spernit*, sc. *homo*. Hor. *Here sunt quos and est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *aliqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Neque erat cur fallere vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi id valeat*. Cic. *Est, cum non est satius*, &c. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases, the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, sc. *loco*, *tempore*.

REM. 3. The nominative is often wanting:—

(1.) Before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as, *Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg.

(2.) Before the third person-singular of the passive of neuter verbs; as,

*Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orationi vehementer ab omnibus reclamatum est*. Cic. See § 184, 2.

A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) Before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Dolendum est primum ipsi tibi*, You yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Quandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv.

(4.) Before the impersonal verbs *misēret*, *pænitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*; as,

*Eos ineptiarum pænitet*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Misēret te aliorum, tui te nec misēret nec pudet*. Plaut. *Me civitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall. In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna*, *conditio*, *memoria*, &c. So in the expression *Venit in mentem*, It came into mind; as, *In mentem venit de speculo*, sc. *cogitatio*, &c. Plaut.

An infinitive or clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo modo puduit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pænitet me*, quantum profecerim. Cic.

(5.) When the subject of the verb is an infinitive or participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (See § 201, IV. 1.) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Vacare culpā magnum est solatium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Neque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. *Te non istud audivisse mirum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. "Summum jus, summa injuria," *factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium*. Id. *Ni degeneratum in aliis huic quoque decōri offecisset*. Liv. *Sin est ut velis manere illam apud te*. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydræ crescere per damnum, geminasque resumere vires*. Ovid. *Dic mihi, cras istud, Postume, quando venit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Parumne campis atque Neptūno super fusum est Latini sanguinis?* Hor.

This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Oratorem irasci non decet*; That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est*. Id. *Me pedibus delectat claudere verba*. Hor. *Interest omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Casu accidit*, ut, id quod Romæ audierat, primus nuntiaret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Facere quæ libet*, id est esse regem. Sall.

(6.) Before *potest*, *cæpit* or *cæptum est*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, *solet*, and *videtur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

*Pigere cum facti cæpit*, It began to repent him (i.e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Supientia est una, quæ præceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest*. Cic. *Tædere solet avāros impendii*. Quinct.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliōra piis*, sc. *dent*; May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Verum hæc lactenus*, sc. *diximus*. Cic. This omission is most common with the verb *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego*, sc. *sum*; For I am Polydorus. Virg. *Omnia præclara rura*, sc. *sunt*. Cic. So in compound tenses; as, *Agro mulctati*, sc. *sunt*. Liv.

REM. 5. The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive; as,

*Intèrim quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flagitare*, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui. Cæs. *Nos paridi trepidare metu*. Virg. *Id horrendum ferri*. Id. In such cases, *cæpit* or *cæperunt* is generally supposed to be understood. Sometimes other verbs may be supplied,

but often the infinitive seems to be used instead of the imperfect indicative.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person ; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent ; as,

*Ego qui lego*, I who read. *Tu qui scribis*, Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit*, The horse which runs.

REM. 7. Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths ; as,

*Quàm multa facimus causâ amicorum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends ! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est ipsi tibi*, Whoever wishes me, &c. Hor.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb ; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Vestes, quas geritis sordida lana fuit*. Ovid.

REM. 10. The verb sometimes agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with one in apposition with it ; as, *Tungri, civitas Galliae, fontem habet insignem* ; The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes a plural verb ; as,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba ruunt*. Ovid. *Pars utraq; avidi erant*. Liv. *Atria turba tenent ; veniunt leve vulgus euntque*. Ovid.

(1.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, &c., of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero and Livy, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences ; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is not expressed in its own, but in a preceding clause ; as, *Hoc idem generi humano evenit, quod in terrâ collocati sint*. Cic.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in one, and plural in another ; as, *Jam ne nocte quidem turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refracturosque carcêrem minabantur*. Liv. *Gens eodem, quæ te crudeli Daunia bello insequitur, nos si pellant, nihil abfore credunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun ; as, *Quid huc tantum hominum incidunt?* Why are so many men coming hither ? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is often used after *uterque* and *quisque*, *pars....pars*, and *alius....alius*, or *alter....alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve ; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intimus quisque libertorum vincti abreptique (sunt.)* Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant*. Liv.

This construction may be explained by the following passage, where



the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Ceteri suo quisque tempore*, adērunt. Liv. See § 204, REM. 10.

REM. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Furor iraque mentem præcipitant*, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. *Dum ætas, metus, magister*, prohibebant Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac musicæ junctæ fuērunt*. Quint.

(2.) A singular verb is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in senibus est*. Cic. *Beneficentia, liberalitas, bonitas, justitia funditus tollitur*. Id. This construction sometimes occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrasymachus, Protagoras, Prodicus, Hippias in honore fuit*. Cic. *Cur Lysias et Hyperides amatur?* Id.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te penales patritque, et patris imago, et domus regia, et in dæmo regale solium, et nomen Tarquinium creat vocatque regem*. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et ratio doctis, et necessitas barbaris, et morum gentibus, et feris natura ipsa præscripsit*; This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ego, et Cicero meus flagitabit*. Id. *Tum ætas viresque, tum avita gloria animum stimulabat*. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et facere, et pati fortia, Romanum est*. Cic.

*Unus et alter* usually takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter*, Two in succession speak briefly. Cic. *Unus et alter assuitur pannus*. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret*, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque studium privatim aut gratia occupaverunt*. Liv.

The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Decemviris neque ego neque Cæsar habiti essemus*. Cic.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a plural verb; as, *Bocchus, cum peditibus, postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt*; Bocchus, with his foot soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipse dux, cum aliquot principibus, capiuntur*. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*; If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. Cic. *Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus*. Ter. *Ego populusque Romanus bellum judico facioque*. Liv.

Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest

nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et senātus frequens restitit*. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego miserè, tu feliciter vivis*.

REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *écce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priāmus! Lo Priam! Virg. Ecce homo Catīnus! Cic. O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter.*

## PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

*Ira furor brevis est*, Anger is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vocor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regina*, I walk a queen. Virg.

So when the subject is in the accusative; *Judicem me esse, non doctōrem, volo*. Cic. *Te parentem Asiæ vis duci et haberi*. Id.

Sometimes a *dative*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, NOTE 1.

REMARK 1. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in case.

The gender and number of such adjectives, &c. are determined by § 205.

REM. 2. The noun in the predicate is sometimes in a different number from the subject; as, *Sanguis erant lachrymæ*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Ossa lapis sunt*. Id.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, &c., in the predicate agreeing in case with their subject, are,

(1.) The substantive verb *sum*; as, *Ego Jovis sum filius*. Plaut. *Disce esse pater*. Ter.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs, denoting position or motion; as, *cado, eo, evādo, existo, fugio, incēdo, jaceo, maneo, sedeo, sto, venio*, &c. Thus, *Rex circūibat pedes*, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos judicābat non posse oratōres evadere*. Cic. *Ego huic causæ patrōnus exstiti*. Cic. *Manet altā mente repositū judicium Parīdis*. Virg.

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting

(a.) To name or call; as, *appellor, dicor, nominor, nuncūpor, perhibeor, salūtor, vocor*. Thus, *Cognomīne Justus est appellātus*, He was called by the surname Just. Nep. *Aristæus olivæ dicitur inventor*. Cic. *Ego poēta salūtor*. Hor.

(b.) To choose, render, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, declaror, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renunciator*. Thus, *Dux a Romānis electus est Q. Fabius*. *Postquam ephēbus factus est*. Nep.

(c.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, credor, deprehendor, existimor, feror, habeor, judicor, numēror, putor, reperior, videor*. Thus, *Credēbar sanguinis auctor ego*. Ovid. *Malim vidēri timīdus quā parū prudens*. Cic.

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*. Cic. *Atilius prudens esse putabatur*. Id. So with *dicor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Verus patriæ dicæris esse pater*. Mart.

NOTE 2. *Audio* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque paterque audisti coram*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs, to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Comes additus Æolides*, Æolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lupus obambulabat nocturnus*. Id. *Apparet liquidò sublimis in æthere Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audivi hoc puer*. Cic. *Sapiens nil facit invitus*. Id. *Rempublicam defendi adolescens*. Id.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying need, is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful*, *necessary*, &c.; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*. Cic. *Multi opus sunt boves*. Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas opus esse*. Ter.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, i. e. *te esse uxorem*. Hor. *Retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronæpos*. Ovid.

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor gloriæ*, Love of glory.

*Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles.

*Pater patriæ*, The father of the country.

*Vitium iræ*, The vice of anger.

*Nemorum custos*, The guardian of the groves.

*Amor habendi*, Love of possessing.

In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *gloriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. See § 201, III.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of SOURCE; as, *Radii solis*. The rays of the sun;—CAUSE; as, *Dolor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—EFFECT; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—POSSESSION; as, *Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar;—OBJECT; as, *Cogitatio alicujus rei*, A thought of something;—PURPOSE; as, *Apparatus triumphi*, Preparation for a triumph;—A WHOLE; as, *Pars hominum*, A part of men;—CHARACTER; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—MATERIAL or COMPONENT PARTS; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scutorum*, A heap of shields.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective*, when it denotes the *subject* of the action, feeling, &c., implied in the noun

which it limits. It is called *objective*, when it denotes the *object* of such action, &c. ; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virorum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Junonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *providentia Dei* signifies the providence of God, or that exercised by him; *timor Dei*, fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean that felt either by themselves or by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulyssis* (Virg.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ*, (Id.) that which Æneas had received.

When ambiguity would arise, instead of the objective genitive, a preposition, with an accusative or ablative, is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*; Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Romanos*, for *Romanorum*. Nep. *Cura de salute patriæ*, for *salutis*. Cic. *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall.

REM. 3. A substantive pronoun, which limits the meaning of a noun, is put in the genitive; as,

*Cura mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Nostri nuntius*, Our messenger. Virg. *Magna mei imago*. Id.

Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Cura mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Yet the genitive sometimes occurs; as, *Tui unius studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

Sometimes, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injuria*, Injury to me. Sall.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive of a noun, also, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa regis*, for *causa regis*. Cic. *Herilis filius*, for *heri filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Herculeus labor*, for *Herculis*. Hor. *Civilis furor*, for *civium*. Hor.

REM. 5. The dative is sometimes used like the objective genitive; as,

*Exitium pecõri*, A destruction to the flock. Virg. *Præsidium reis*, A defence to the accused. Hor. *Decus amicis*. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper Deus*. Virg. *Dicor tibi frater*. Mart. *Auctor fui senatui*. Cic. *Huic causæ patrõnus exstiti*. Id. *Quem exitum tantis malis speratis?* Sall. *Romanis imperdator*. Id. *Muræna legatus Lucullo fuit*. Cic.

In these cases, the noun which is limited by the dative, denotes a character, feeling, &c., and the dative the object towards which that character, &c., is exhibited or exercised. This construction sometimes occurs with verbal nouns, whose primitives are followed by the dative; as, *Obtemperatio legibus*, Obedience to laws. Cic. *Translatio altæri*. Id. In some instances, also, an accusative follows a verbal noun; as, *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plaut.

1. Instead of the possessive and subjective genitive, also, a dative is sometimes used, as the remote object of a verb; as, *Sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pedes projecterunt*; They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body is extended, i. e. whose body is extended. Virg. *Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summa audacie*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pedum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet. Cæs. *Pulchritudine eximia femina*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo natu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *So Quinquaginta annorum imperium*. Id. *Iter unius diei*. Cic. *Galba tribus et septuaginta annis*. Tac. *Fossam sex cubitis altam*. Liv.

Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentulum nostrum*, *eximia spe*, *summæ virtutis adolescentem*. Cic. *Scrobis latus pedum duorum*, *altus dupondio et dodrante*. Plin.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, &c., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ*, .... of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri specie et colore tauri*. Id.

(2.) The genitive, in this sense, sometimes occurs without an adjective; as, *Hominem non nauci*. Plaut. *Homo nihili*. Varr. So, *Frutex palmarum altitudine*. Plin. *Transtra digiti pollicis crassitudine*. Cæs. In which examples *unius* may be understood with the genitives.

Whether the genitive or ablative is preferable in particular cases, can only be determined by reference to classical authority.

NOTE. Nouns denoting extent of time or space, after other nouns, are often put in the accusative. See § 236.

REM. 7. The noun limited is sometimes omitted; as, *O misere sortis!* sc. *hominis*; O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Dianæ*, sc. *ædem*. Ter. *Hectoris Andromachæ*, sc. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspicionis vitandæ*, sc. *causâ*. Tac.

The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujum pecus? an Melibæi? Non; verum Jægônis*, sc. *pecus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus aliam morosâ desiderat, præter hanc* (sc. *mercedem*) *laudis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The noun limited is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hæc domus est Cæsaris*, This house is Cæsar's. *Nomen auræ tam sæpe vocatum esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onerarias, quarum minor nulla erat duum millium amphorûm*, i. e. *quarum minor nulla erat quam navis duum*, &c. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, &c.; as,

*Thucydides, qui ejusdem ætatis fuit*, sc. *homo*; Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei detraxit, quod alienæ erat civitatis*, sc. *homo* or *civis*. Id. *Summi ut sint laboris efficiunt*, sc. *animalia*. Cæs. (*Claudius*) *somni brevissimi erat*. Suet. *Mirâ sum alacritate*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mobili erat*. Sall. *Non est juris sui*. Lucan. *Potestatis suæ esse*. Liv. *Suarumque rerum erant*. Id.

(3.) When it is a general word denoting thing, for which the words *part*, *property*, *duty*, *office*, *characteristic*, &c., are commonly supplied; as,

*Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Rashness is (the char-

acteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis*. Cæs. *Omnia hostium erant. A paucis emi, quod multorum esset*. Sall. This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive mood, or an entire clause; as, *Adolescentis est majores natu revereri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis, in errore perseverare*. Cic. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*. Ovid. *Negavit moris esse Græcorum, ut in convivio virorum accumbèrent mulieres*. Cic. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis esse*. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tamen officii duxit, exorare patrem*, sc. *esse*. Suet.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *facio*, and some other verbs; as, *Asiæ Romanorum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*. Nep. *Agrum suæ ditionis fecisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica laboris*, sc. *animul*; The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. *So Ei venit in mentem potestatis tuæ*, sc. *memoria*, or the like. Cic.

(6.) The limited noun is wanting also, when, instead of the genitive, a possessive adjective or pronoun is used; as, *Humānum est errare*, To err is human. Ter. *Hæ partes fuerunt tuæ*. Cic. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. See § 211, REM. 3, and 4.

NOTE. Grammarians differ in regard to the manner of supplying the word which is wanting, when it denotes a thing. Some suppose that *negotium* is understood; others supply *officium*, *munus*, *opus*, *res*, *causa*, &c. It seems, however, rather to be an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general or indefinite idea is intended. See § 205, REM. 7, (2.) The words to be supplied in English are various, according to the connection.

REM. 9. The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *Tria millia*, sc. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly possessive or subjective, and the other objective; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administrationis provincie*. Cic. *Eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying need, are rarely limited by a genitive; as, *Argenti opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse*. Id. *Proemii non semper usus est*. Quint. *Si quo operæ eorum usus est*. Liv. In a few instances, they are limited by an accusative; as, *Puero opus est cibum* (Plaut.); *Usus est hominem astutum* (Id.); but in general they are limited by an ablative. See § 243.

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is, in English, generally expressed by *of*, or by the possessive case. The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as, *Remedium doloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injuria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Potestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitatis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sororum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophorum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortaliū?* Who of mortals? *Major juvenum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimū Romanorum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecuniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubinam gentium sumus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, it commonly follows neuter adjectives and adjective pronouns, and adverbs.

REMARK 1. The nouns which denote a part are *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil*, &c.; as,

*Nemo nostrum*, No one of us. *Omnium rerum nihil est agriculturæ melius*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun. For the gender of the adjectives, See § 205, R. 12.

(1.) Partitives; as, *ullus*, *nullus*, *solus*, *alius*, *uter*, *uterque*, *utercunque*, *utrovis*, *uterlibet*, *neuter*, *alter*, *alteruter*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquis*, *quisque*, *quisquam*, *quicunque*, *unusquisque*, *quis?* *qui?* *quot?* *quotus?* *quotusque?* *tot*, *aliquot*, *nonnulli*, *plerique*, *multi*, *pauci*, *medius*. Thus, *Quisquis deorum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consulū alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hominum*, Many men. Plin.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expediti militum*, The light-armed soldiers. Liv. *Superi deorum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deorum*. Virg. *Degenères canum*. Plin. *Piscium feminae*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior juvenum*. *Oratorum prastantissimus*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singuli*; as, *Equitum centum quinquaginta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sapientum octavus*. Hor. *Singulos vestrum*. Curt.

NOTE 1. The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of two brothers; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of three or more.

In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis*, *alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two; as, *Uter nostrum?* Which of us (two?) *Quis vestrum?* Which of you (three or more?)

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used after partitives, &c., in preference to *nostrum* and *vestrum*; yet the latter sometimes occur.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium*, sc. *unus*. Hor.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis. Alter ex censoribus. Liv. Unus ex multis. Cic. Acerrimus ex sensibus. Id. Primus inter omnes. Virg. Cræsus inter reges opulentissimus. Sen. Apud Helvetios nobilissimos.*

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectores, pars in forum, pars Syracusas pergit. Liv. See § 204, REM. 10.*

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Macedonum fere omnibus persuasit, Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. Cunctos hominum. Ovid. Cunctas provinciarum. Plin.*

In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Totius autem injustitiæ nulla capitalior est, &c. Cic. Off. 1; 13. The phrase Rem nullo modo probabilem omnium (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for Rem nullo omnium modorum probabilem.*

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ, More (of) eloquence. Tantum fidei, So much fidelity. Id temporis, That time. Ad hoc ætatis. Sometimes the plural; as, Id miseriarum. Ter.*

NOTE 1. Most neuter adjectives, thus used, denote quantity; as, *tantum, quantum, aliquantum, plus, minus, dimidium, multum, nimium, plurimum, reliquum*; to which add *medium, summum, ultimum, aliud, &c.* The pronouns thus used are *hoc, id, illud, istud, quod*, and *quid*, with its compounds.

Most of these may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum, quantum, aliquantum*, and *plus*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, &c., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus, tantum spei in annum est. Sen. Quid mulieris uxorem habes? What kind of a woman.... Ter. Aliquid formæ. Cic. Quid hoc rei est? What does this mean? Ter. Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are scarcely used with a genitive, except in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the first and second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni, So much good. Si quid habes novi, If you have any thing new. Cic. Quid reliqui est? Ter. Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri, No sincerity. Cic. This construction sometimes, though rarely, occurs with an adjective of the third declension; as, Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset. Liv.*

NOTE 4. Neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrema imperii, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. Pontes et viarum angusta, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. Opæca locorum. Virg. Antiqua fœderum. Liv. Cuncta camporum. Tac. Exercent colles, atque horum asperissima pascunt. Virg. See § 205, REM. 9.*

REM. 4. The adverbs *sat, satis, parum, nimis, abunde, largè*



*ter, affatim, and partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat rationis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Satis loquentiæ, parum sapientiæ*, Enough of fluency, yet but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraudis abunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largiter*. Plaut. *Copiârum affatim*. Liv. *Cum partim illorum mihi familiarissimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. The genitives *gentium, terrarum, loci*, and *locorum*, are used after adverbs of place; as, *Usquam gentium*, Any where. Plaut. *Ubi terrarum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quod terrarum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to REM. 3.

The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi, ubinam, ubicunque, ubiubi, ubivis, usquam, nusquam, quò, quovis, quoquò, aliquò, ed, eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longè*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longè gentium*. Cic. *Vicinie* is used in the genitive after *hic* and *huc* by the comic writers; as, *Hic proxima vicinie*. Plaut. *Huc vicinie*. Ter.

NOTE 3. *Huc, ed, quò*, take also a genitive in the sense of degree; as, *Ed insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucine rerum ventimus?* Pers. *Ed miseriârum*. Sall. *Quò amentie progressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. *Loci, locorum*, and *temporis*, are used after the adverbs *adhuc, inde, interea, postea, tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*. Just. *Tunc temporis*. Id. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall.

NOTE 5. The genitive *ejus* sometimes occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus fieri possit*, As far as may be (Cic.); where some think *quod*, in the sense of *quantum*, should be read, instead of *quoad*.

NOTE 6. *Pridie* and *postridie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Pridie ejus diei*, The day before that day. Cic. *Pridie insidiarum*. Tac. *Postridie ejus diei*. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood.

NOTE 7. Adverbs, in the superlative degree, like adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optimè omnium*, Best of all. Cic. *Minimè gentium*, By no means. Ter.

## GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, or *in respect of*; as,

*Avidus laudis*, Desirous of praise.

*Appetens gloriæ*, Desirous of glory.

*Memor virtutis*, Mindful of virtue.

*Plena timoris*, Full of fear.

*Egênus aquæ*, Destitute of water.

*Doctus fandi*, Skilful in speaking.

So *Nescia mens fati*, A mind ignorant of fate. Virg. *Impotens ira*, Unable to control anger. Liv. *Homines expertes veritatis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra ferax arborum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tenax propositi vir*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Eger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Intiger vita scelerisque purus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, or *in respect of*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same.

**REMARK 1.** The adjectives whose signification is most frequently limited by a genitive, are,

(1.) VERBALS IN AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, fugax, pernix, tenax, &c.*

(2.) PARTICIPIALS in *ns*, and a few in *tus*; as, *amans, appētens, cupiens, patiens, impatiens, sitiens*;—*consultus, doctus, expertus, inexpertus, insuetus, insolitus*.

### (3.) Adjectives denoting

DESIRE and DISGUST; as, *avidus, avidus, cupidus, studiosus; fastidiosus.*

KNOWLEDGE and IGNORANCE; as, *callidus, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens; rudis, ignodrus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, &c.*

MEMORY and FORGETFULNESS; as, *memor*; *immemor*, &c.

CERTAINTY and DOUBT; as, *certus*; *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c.

CARE and NEGLIGENCE; as, *anxius, sollicitus, providus; improvidus, securus, &c.*

FEAR and CONFIDENCE; as, *avidus, timidus; trepidus, impavidus, fidens, interritus, &c.*

GUILT and INNOCENCE ; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ; innoxius innocens, insons, &c.*

PLenty and WAnt; as, *plenus, dives, satur, largus; inops, egēnus, pauper, parcus, vacuus, &c.*

Many other adjectives are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingenii*, *mentis*, *træ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *laboris*, *rerum*, *ævi*, *morum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a cause or source, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus laboris*, Weary of labor. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus maris*. Hor.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as *such*, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare terram appetens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, or *in respect of*, a different construction is used after many adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go. *Ovid. Cantare periti*. Virg. *Felicior unguere tela*. Id. *Anxius quid facto opus sit*. Sall.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, Ad rem *avidior*. Ter. *Avidus* in direptiones. Liv. *Animus capax* ad præcepta. Ovid. Ad casum fortunamque *felix*. Cic. Ad fraudem *callidus*. Id. *Diligens* ad custodiendum. Id. *Negligentior* in patrem. Just. *Vir* ad disciplinam *peritus*. Cic. Ad bella *rudis*. Liv. *Potens* in res bellicas. Id.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, humerosque dea similis*. Id. *Cetëra fulvus*. Hor. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus* in pecuniis, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius* de famâ. Quinct. *Rudis* in jure civili. Cic. *Pertus* de agriculturâ. Varr. *Prudens* in jure civili. Cic. *Reus* de vi. Id. *Purus* ab cultu humano. Liv. *Certior factus* de re. Cic. *Solicitus* de re. Id. *Super scelère suspectus*. Sall. *Inops* ab amicis. Cic. *Pauper* in ære. Hor. *Modicus* in cultu. Plin. *Ab aquis sterilis*. Apul. *Copiosus* ægrumento. Cic. *Ab equitatu firmus*. Id.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rudis*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prudens consilio*. Just. *Æger pedibus*. Sall. *Præstans ingenio*. Cic. *Modicus severitate*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est secundissimus*. Plaut.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egenus, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *copiosus, dives, secundus, ferax, immânis, inânis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, purus, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, alienus, cassus, extorris, firmus, fatus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejûnus, infirmus, liber, locuples, lætus, mactus, nudus, onustus, orbus, pollens, satiatus, tenuis, truncus, viduus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beatus, mutilus, tumidus, turgidus*.

For the construction of the ablative after the preceding adjectives see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives which are usually limited by a dative, some times take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, &c. See § 222, REM. 2.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sumito*; Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni æstimabat pecuniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc pluris est, quàm tunc fuit*. Id.

REMARK 1. This genitive may be,

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *lanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, magni, permagni, plurimi, maximi, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quanticunque, quantilibet*, but not *multi* and *majoris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, teruncii*, and also *pensi* and *hujus*.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *estimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *deputo*, *tazo*, to which may be added *refert* and *intèrest*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse faciat, tanti fuit ab amicis*; That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends Cic. *Sed quia parvi id duceret*. Id. *Honores si magni non putemus*. Id. *Non assis facis?* Catull. *Neque quod dixi, flocci existimat*. Plaut. *Illud mea magni intèrest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Parvi refert jus dici*. Id.

NOTE 1. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Nos æqui bonique factimus*. Liv. *Boni consuluit*, He took it in good part. Plin.

NOTE 2. After *estimo*, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, *nihilo*, are sometimes used; as, *Data magno æstimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. So other ablatives, when definite price is denoted. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *duco*, *habeo*, and *puto*. So *nihil* with *estimo* and *moror*.

NOTE 3. With *refert* and *intèrest*, instead of the genitive, an adverb or neuter accusative is often used; as, *Multum refert*. Mart. *Plurimum intererit*. Juv. *Tua nihil referēbat*. Ter. *Quid autem illius intèrest?* Cic.

NOTE 4. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hujus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *pretii*, *æris*, *pondëris*, *momenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing indefinite; as, *Æstimo te magni*, i. e. *hominem magni pretii*. *Scio ejus ordines auctoritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni momenti*. The words *assis*, &c., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun, as *pretio*, *rem*, &c.

For *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, denoting *price*, see § 252.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor*, *miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret*, *pænitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Miseremini sociōrum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Miserescite regis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Tui me misēret*, *mei piget*, I pity you, and am sorry for myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pænitet*. Cic. *Fratris me pudet pigetque*. Ter. *Me civilitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall. So the passive; *Nunquam suscepti negotii eum pertasum est*. Nep. *Lenitudinis eorum pertasa*. Tac. *Miseritum est me tuorum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te fratrum miseretur*. Cic.

*Miserescit* is sometimes used in the same manner; as, *Nunc te miserescat mei*. Ter. *Misereo*, in the active voice, also occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipsæ sui misēret*. Lucr. *Pertasus ignaviam suam* occurs in Suetonius.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on an indefinite subject which is omitted. See § 209, REM. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive, an infinitive or clause is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pudebit*. Cic. *Non pænitet me quantum profecerim*. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative, especially a neuter pronoun; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pænitet*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudet?* Ter.

*Misēret* occurs with an accusative, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedem vicem misēret me*. Ter.

These verbs also take an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229. REM. 6.

(2.) *Satāgo* is followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

*Is satāgit rerum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately. *Agito*, with *sat*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sat tute tuarum rerum*. Plant.

§ 216. *Recordor*, *memīni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Hujus meriti recordor*, I remember his merit. Cic. *Omnes gradus ætātis recordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Memīni vivōrum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Numeros memīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Cinnam memīni*, I remember Cinna. Cic. *Reminisci vētēris famæ*. Nep. *Reminisci amicos*. Ovid. *Injuriarum obliscitur*. Nep. *Obliscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. These verbs seem sometimes to be considered as active, and sometimes as neuter. As active, they take an accusative regularly; as neuter, they take a genitive, denoting that in respect to which memory, &c. are exercised; as, *Obliscī controversiarum*, To be forgetful of (in respect of) controversies.

REM. 2. *Recordor* and *memīni*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Petimus ut de suis liberis .... recordentur*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Memīni*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Neque hujus rei memīnit poetā*. Quint. *Meministi de exsulibus*. Cic. For the genitive with *venit in mentem*, see § 211, REM. 8, (5.)

§ 217. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, are followed by a genitive denoting the crime; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He accuses me of theft. *Aliūrum accusat probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum inertie condemno*. Cic.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accuso*, *ago*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *cito*, *defero*, *incrēpo*, *incuso*, *insimūlo*, *postūlo*, and more rarely *alligo*, *anquiro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *increpito*, *urgeo*, *interrogo*.

Convicting; *convinco*, *coarguo*, *prehendo*.

Condemning; *damno*, *condemno*, *infāmo*, and more rarely *judico*, *noto*, *plector*.

Acquitting; *absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*, and rarely *solvo*.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used; as, *Accusare de negligentia*. Cic. *De vi condemnati sunt*. Id. *De repetundis est postulatus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*; as, *In quo te accuso* (Cic.); and after *libero*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scelere liberati sumus*. Cic.

With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Liberare culpā*. Cic. *Crimen quo argui posses*. Nep. *Proconsulem postulaverat repetundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scelus*, *maleficium*, *peccatum*, &c.; as, *Me peccato solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimine* and *nomine*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere aliquem crimine ambitus*. Liv. *Nomine sceleris conjurationisque amnati*. Cic.

REM. 3. The punishment is expressed either by the genitive, the ablative, or the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Damnātus longi labōris* (Hor.); *Quadrupli condemnāri* (Cic.); *Damnāre pecuniā* (Just.), *ad pœnam* (Traj. in Plin.), *in metallum* (Plin.);—sometimes, though rarely, by the dative; as, *Damnātus morti*. Lucr. In like manner, *caput* is used in the genitive or ablative; as, *Duces capitis damnātos*. Nep. *Nec capite damnāder*. Cic. So with some other verbs besides those of accusing, &c. *Quem ego capitis perdam*. Plaut. *Me capitis periclitātum memīni*. Apul. With *plecto* and *plector*, *caput* is used in the ablative only.

REM. 4. *Accūso*, *incūso*, *insimūlo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accūsas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incusavēras*. Ter. *Sic me insimulāre falsum facinus*. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. The following verbs of accusing, &c., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*calumnior*, *carpo*, *corripio*, *crimīnor*, *culpo*, *excūso*, *multo*, *punio*, *reprehendo*, *sugillo*, *tazo*, *tradūco*, *vitupēro*; as, *Culpāre infecunditatem agrōrum*. Colum. *Excūsāre errōrem et adolescentiam*. Liv.

This construction also occurs with some of the verbs before enumerated; as, *Ejus avaritiam perfidiāque accusārat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte multantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing are followed by a genitive denoting that in respect to which the admonition is given; as,

*Mīlites temporis monet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admonēbat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ*. Sall.

REMARK 1. The verbs of admonishing are *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, *commonefacio*. Instead of the genitive, they sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De eade Telluris me admōnes* (Cic.);—sometimes a neuter accusative of an adjective pronoun or adjective; as, *Eos hoc moneo* (Cic.); *Illud me admoneo* (Id.); *Multa admōnemur* (Id.);—and rarely a noun; as, *Eam rem nos locus admonuit*. Sall.

REM. 2. These verbs, instead of the genitive, are often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Soror monet succurrere Lauso Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to succor Lausus. Virg. *Monet, ut suspiciones vitet*. Cæs. *Monet rationem frumenti esse habendam*. Hirt. *Immortalia ne speres monet annus*. Hor.

§ 219. *Refert* and *intērest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Humanitātis refert*, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Intērest omnium rectè facere*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil refert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Tua et mea maxime intērest, te valere*. Cic. *Magis reipublicæ intērest quàm mea*. Id.

*Refert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the adjective pronouns.

REM. 2. In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammar

rians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with an indefinite noun understood; as, *Intèress meæ*, i. e. *est inter meæ*; It is among my concerns. *Refert tua*, i. e. *refert se ad tua*; It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causâ, &c.*, understood.

REM. 3. Instead of a genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad honorem meum intèress quàm primum urbem me venire* (Cic.); *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem refert* (Plaut.);—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur retulit?* (Plaut.);—or a dative; as, *Dic quid refert intra naturâ fines viventium*. Hor.

REM. 4. These verbs often have a nominative, especially a neuter pronoun; as, *Id meâ minime refert*. Ter. *Hoc vehementer intèress reipublicæ*. Cic. *Non quò meâ interesset loci naturâ*. Id.

For the genitives *tanti, quanti, &c.*, after *refert* and *intèress*, see § 214.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrucior, excrucio, fallo, pendeo*, which are followed by *anîmi*; *decipior, desipio, fallor, fastidio, invideo, miror, vereor*; as, *Absurdè facis qui angus te anîmi*. Plaut. *Me anîmi fallit*. Lucr. *Decipitur laborum*. Hor. *Desipiebam mentis*. Plaut. *Justitiæ ne prius mirer belline laborum*. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstineo* (Hor.), *desino* (Id.), *desisto* (Virg.), *laudo* (Sil.), *levo* (Plaut.), *participo* (Id.), *præhabeo* (Sil.), *purgo* (Hor.) *Regnavit populorum* occurs in Horace, for which some manuscripts read *regnator*.

3. Some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, to want, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo, careo, compleo, expleo, impleo, egeo, indigeo, saturo, scateo*; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*, He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explese flammæ*. Virg. *Egeo consilii*. Cic. *Non tam artis indigent quàm laboris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Potior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis potiri*, To gain possession of the city. Sall. *Potiri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum* (Cic.) *Potio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc potitui servitutis*, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *potitus est hostium* signifies, "he fell into the hands of the enemy."

## GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. I. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitat Mileti*, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Romæ faciam?* What can I do at Rome? Juv.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithacæ vivere*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcyræ fuimus*. Id. *Pompeium Cypri visum esse*. Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considere Apollo*. Virg. *Non Libyæ*. Id. *Romæ Numidiæque*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though

rarely, used; as, *Rex Tyro decēdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Corintho et Athēnis et Lacedæmōne nunciāta est victoria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abydo fecerat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Romā nullum habemus*. Vitruv. *Non ante Tyro*. Virg.

REM. 3. The genitives *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *humi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tenuit se domi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir domi clarus*. Liv. *Unde semper militiæ et domi fuimus*, We were always together both at home and abroad. Ter. *Belli spectata domique virtus*. Hor. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used only when opposed to *domi*.

(1.) *Domi* is thus used with the possessives *meæ*, *tuæ*, *sua*, *nostræ*, *vestræ*, and *alienæ*; as, *Domi nostræ vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tanquam meæ domi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod alienæ domi fieret invisere*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, with or without a preposition, is used; as, *In viduâ domo*. Ovid. *Paternâ domo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meâ in domo*. Hor. *In domo suâ*. Nep. So, instead of *humi*, *humo* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In humo arenosâ*. Ovid. *Sedere humo nudâ*. Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *domi* or *in domo* is used; as, *Deprehensus domi Cæsâris*. Cic. *In domo Cæsâris*. Id. *In domo ejus*. Nep.

(3.) The ablative *domo* for *domi* also occurs; as, *Ego id nunc exerior domo*. Plaut. *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy, Lib. 9. 26—*Domi belloque*.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *humi*; as, *Sacra terræ celavimus*. Liv. *Vicinie* occurs in Plautus—*Proximæ viciniæ habitat*.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *domi*, *militiæ*, &c., are supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe*, *oppido*, *adibus*, *solo*, *loco*, *tempore*, &c.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, REM. 4.

III. The genitive plural is sometimes used after the preposition *tenuis*, as, *Cumdrum tenuis*, As far as Cumæ (Cæl.); *Crurum tenuis* (Virg.); *Latèrum tenuis* (Id.);—sometimes, also, though rarely, the genitive singular; as, *Corcyræ tenuis*. Liv.

## DATIVE.

### DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 222. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the object or end to which the quality is directed; as,

*Utilis agris*, Useful to the fields. Juv. *Jucundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus quieti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.



REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying advantageous, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal, and their opposites, also those signifying near, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio ingrāta Gallis*, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labōri inhābilis*, Unsuitable to labor. Cōlam. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Aptum tempōri*. Id. *Malo pronus*. Sen. *Promptus seditiōni*. Tac. *Civis facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsu veris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concolēres corpōri*. Colum. *Multis bonis fletibilis*. Hor.

Many adjectives of other significations are also followed by a dative of the end or object.

After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi creditilis sermo*, A speech credible to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusāni nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussis magistratum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv.

REM. 2. The adjectives *æqualis*, *affinis*, *aliēnus*, *communis*, *fidus*, *par*, *proprius*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *superstes*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Similis tui*, Like you. Plaut. *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Affinis Cæsāris*. V. Max. *Cujusque proprium*. Cic. *Superstes omnium*. Suet. *Tui fidissima*. Virg.

But most of these, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æqualis ejus*, His equal. Cic. So in English, "his like," "his survivor," &c.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the end or object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying advantageous, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the purpose or end with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad penas, ad præmia velox* (Ovid.); *Ad aliquem morbum proclivior* (Cic.); *Ad omne facinus paratus* (Id.); *Pronus ad fidem* (Liv.);—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, sometimes have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*; as, *Fidelis in filios*. Just. *Mater acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Gratus erga me*. Cic. *Gratum adversus te*. Id. So *Dissimilis in dominum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, &c., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Inter eos communis*. Id. *Inter se diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Propior* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quod vitium propius virtutem*

*erat. Sall. Ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Cæs. Ager, qui proximus finem Megalopolitidarum est. Liv.*

REM. 6. Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentaneus, discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem parem cum libèris fecisti. Sall. Consentaneum cum iis litèris. Cic. Civitas secum discors. Liv. So alienus and diversus with a or ab*; as, *Alienus a me (Ter.)*; *A ratione diversus (Cic.)*; or without a preposition; as, *Alienum nostrâ amicitia. Id.*

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter omnibus idem. Virg. Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti. Hor.* In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτός*, and is equivalent to *quod facit is, qui occidit. Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui, ac, atque, ut, or quàm*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*; as, *Eodem mecum patre. Tac. Similis and par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

NOTE. Nouns are sometimes followed by a dative of the object; as, *Virtutibus hostis. Cic. Caput Italia omni. Liv. See § 211, REM. 5.*

## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* or *end, to or for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea domus tibi patet, My house is open to you. Cic. Pars optare locum tecto, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. Tibi seris, tibi metis; You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut. Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum, It is lawful to no one to lead an army against his country. Cic. Hoc tibi promitto, I promise this to you. Id. Hæret latèri letâlis arundo. Virg. Surdo fabulam narras. Hor. Mihi responsum dedit. Virg. Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves. Id. Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam. Cic. Aptat habendo ensem. Virg.*

The dative is thus used after active and neuter verbs, both personal and impersonal, and in both voices.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many neuter verbs are translated into English by an active verb, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of an active verb.

Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, and their contraries, also to assist, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, govern the dative; as,

*Ille tibi favet, She favors you. Ovid. Mihi placebat Pomponius, minime displicebat. Cic. Qui sibi fidit. Hor. Non licet sui commodi causâ nocere altèri. Cic. Non invidetur illi etati sed etiam favetur. Id. Desperat salutis suæ. Id. Neque mihi vestra decreta auxiliantur. Sall. Imperat aut seroit collecta pecunia cuique. Hor. Obedire et parere voluntati. Cic. Quoniam factioni inimicorum resistere nequivèrit. Sall. Mihi minabatur. Cic. Irasci inimicis. Cæs.*

So *Adûlor*, *blandior*, *commôdo*, *faveo*, *gratificor*, *grator*, *gratûlor* and its verbal *gratulabundus*, *ignosco*, *indulgeo*, *palpor*, *parco*, *plaudo*, *studeo*, *subparasitor*; *amûlor*, *incommôdo*, *invideo*, *noceo*.—*Placeo*, *libet* or *lubet*; *displiceo*.—*Credo*, *fido*, *confido*; *despêro*, *diffido*.—*Adminiculor*, *auxilior*, *medeor*, *medicor*, *opitulor*, *patrocînor*.—*Impêro*, *mando*, *modêror* (to restrain), *præcipio*, *tempêro*.—*Auscullo*, *morigêror*, *obedio*, *obsecundo*, *obsequor*, *obtempêro*, *pareo*.—*Ancillor*, *fumûlor*, *ministro*, *servio*, *inservio*.—*Refrâgor*, *reluctor*, *renitor*, *repugno*, *resisto*, and, chiefly in the poets, *bello*, *certo*, *luctor*, *pugno*.—*Minor*, *commînor*, *intermînor*.—*Irascor*, *succenseo*, to which may be added *convicior*, *degenêro*, *excello*, *nubo* (to marry), *præstôlor*, *prævaricor*, *recipio* (to promise), *renuncio*, *respondeo*, *suadeo*, *persuadeo*, *dissuadeo*, *supplicor*, and sometimes *lateo* and *deceit*.

(1.) Many of the above verbs, instead of the dative, are sometimes followed by an accusative; as, *adûlor*, *auscullo*, *blandior*, *degenêro*, *despêro*, *indulgeo*, *lateo*, *medeor*, *medicor*, *modêror*, *præstôlor*, *provideo*, &c.; as, *Adulâri* aliquem. Cic. Tac. *Hanc cave degenêres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo* me. Ter. *Hujus adventum præstôlans*. Cæs. *Providere* rem frumentariam. Id.

Others, as active verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impêro*, *mando*, *ministro*, *minor*, *commînor*, *intermînor*, *præcipio*, *recipio*, *renuncio*, &c.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*. Cæs. *Ministrare* victum alicui. Varr. *Deflagrationem urbi et Italiae toti minabatur*. Cic.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as active verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *delecto*, *juvo*, *lædo*, *offendo*, &c. *Jubeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes, though rarely, by the accusative alone, or the dative with an infinitive; as, *Jubeo* te *benè* operare. Cic. *Lex jubet ea quæ facienda sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exurgere*. Tac. *Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidere* cursu. Ovid.

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annueceptis*, Favor our undertakings. Virg. *Românisequitibus lîtræ afferuntur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Antecellere* omnibus, To excel all. Id. *Anteculit iræ religionem*. Nep. *Audetque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, duces ducibus comparare*. Liv. *Imminet his aer*. Ovid. *Pecôri signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intervenit*. Liv. *Interdixit histrionibus scenam*. Suet. *Meis commodis officiis et obstat*. Cic. *Cum se hostium telis objecissent*. Id. *Posthabui mea seria ludo*. Virg. *Certamini præsedit*. Suet. *Hibernis Labiænum præposuit*. Cæs. *Vobis profuit ingenium*. Ovid. *Misêris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis subsidia submittibat*. Cæs. *Timidis supervenit* Ægle. Virg. So

1. *Accedo*, *accresco*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *adequillo*, *adhæreo*, *adjaceo*, *adno*, *adnato*, *adsto*, *adstipulor*, *adsum*, *adversor*, *affulgeo*, *allabor*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arrideo*, *aspiro*, *assentior*, *assideo*, *assisto*, *assuesco*, *assurgo*;—*addo*, *affero*, *affigo*, *adjicio*, *adjungo*, *adhibeo*, *admoveo*, *adverto*, *aligo*, *appono*, *applico*, *advolto*, *aspergo*.

2. *Antecedo*, *antecello*, *anteo*, *antesto*, *antevenio*, *anteverto*,—*antefero*, *antehabeo*, *antepôno*.

3. *Cohæreo*, *colludo*, *concino*, *congruo*, *consentio*, *consôno*, *convivo*, and, chiefly in the poets, *coeo*, *concumbo*, *concurro*, *contendo*;—*compâro*, *compôno*, *confêro*, *conjungo*.

4. *Incido, incumbo, indormio, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, innascor, innotor, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invado, invigilo, illacrimo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo, insum;—immisceo, impōno, imprimo, infēro, ingēre, injicio, includo, insēro, inspergo, inūro.*

5. *Intercedo, intercedo, interjaceo, intermicio, intersum, intervenio;—interdico, interpono.*

6. *Obambulo, oberro, obequito, obluctor, obmurmuro, obrepro, obsto, obsisto, obstrepro, obsum, obtrecto, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, officio;—obduco, oblicio, offēro, offundo, oppōno.*

7. *Postfēro, posthabeo, postpono, postpūto, postscribo.*

8. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, prasideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsum, prævaleo, prævertor;—præfēro, præficio, præpono.*

9. *Procumbo, proficio, propugno, prosum, prospicio, provideo.*

10. *Succedo, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, subleo, subjaceo, subrepro, subsum, subvenio;—subdo, subjūgo, submitto, suppono, substerno.*

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, supervivo.*

REMARK 1. Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum*, and *contra*, are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, desum, delabor, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradico, contraŕeo*; as, *Serta capiti delapsa*, The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Nunqui nummi exciderunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur*. Plin.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, de, or ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abigo, abrogo, abscindo, aufēro, adimo, arceo, defendo, demo, derogo, detrāho, eripio, eruo, excutio, eximo, extorqueo, extrāho, exuo, surripio*. Thus, *Nec mihi te eripient*, Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium pecōri defendite*. Virg. *Hunc arcēbis pecōri*. Id.

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *di* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with a preposition; as, *differo, discrepo, discordo, dissentio, dissideo, disto*; as, *Quantum simplex hilarisq̄ nepōti discrepet, et quantum discordet parvus avāro*. Hor. So likewise *misceo*; as, *Mista modestiæ gravitas*. Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated. Sometimes, also, one of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vocem timidas advertitis aures*. Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit*. Nep. *Infērunt omnia in ignem*. Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat ad amnem*. Virg. *Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello*. Cic.

REM. 5. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions, either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt*, The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque Isocrātem attēte præcurrit*. Cic. So *præeo, præsto, prævertō, præcello*.

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene, and male*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Et naturæ et legibus satisfacit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ*, It is honorable to benefit the state. Sall. *Maledicit utrique*. Hor. So *satisdo, benedico, malefacio*.

These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *satis*, *benè*, and *malè*, but on the simple verb.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets; as, *Neque cernitur ulli*, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuarum audita mihi neque visa sororum*. Id. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with a preposition. See § 248.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Semel omnibus calcanda est via leti*, The way of death must once be trod by all. Hor. *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summorum hominum sibi tuenda esse dicit*. Id. *Dolendum est tibi ipsi*. Id. *Faciendum mihi putavi, ut responderem*. Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi*, *vobis*, *nobis*, *hominibus*, &c., may be supplied.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative, an ablative with *a* or *ab*; as, *Deus est venerandus a nobis*. Cic.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant*. Virg. *Ad prætorem hominem trazit*. Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriones*. Cæs. *In conspectum ventre*. Nep.

*So curro, duco, fero, festino, fugio, inclino, lego, pergo, porto, præcipito, propèro, tendo, tolo, vado, verto*.

So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, &c.; as, *Eurum ad se vocat*. Virg. *Provocasse ad pugnam*. Cic. *So animo, hortor, incito, invito, lacesso, stimulo, suscito*; to which may be added *attineo, conformo, pertineo*, and *specto*.

But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clamor in celo*. Virg. *Dum tibi litæ meæ veniant*. Cic. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit mihi in mentem*. Cic. *Venit mihi in suspicionem*. Nep. *Eum venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat*. Cæs. *Propinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a possessor;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi domi pater*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mitia poma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Gratia nobis opus est tuâ*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocentiam plus periculi quàm honoris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas regiibus esse manus?* Ovid. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fore*, *suppeto*, *desum*, and *defit*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus*. Hor. *Si mihi cauda foret, cercopithæcus eram*. Mart. *Defuit ars vobis*. Ovid. *Non defore Arsacidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non defit*. Virg.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the object to which, the other the end for which, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxime est curæ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spero nobis hanc conjunctionem voluptati fore*, I hope that this union will bring pleasure to us. Id. *Matri puellam dono dedit*. Ter. *Fabio laudi datum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi vertunt*. Plaut. *Id tibi honori habetur*. Cic. *Maturavit collæ ventre auxilio*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *fore*, *fi*, *do*, *duco*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *proficiscor*, *venio*, *appōno*, *assigno*, *cedo*, *compāro*, *pateo*, *suppedito*, and perhaps some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the end is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as, *Exemplo est formica*, The ant is (serves) for an example. Hor. *Absentium bona divisui fuere*. Liv. *Reliquit pignori putamina*. Plaut.

REM. 3. The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, &c. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum*; instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as, *Ignavia erit tibi magno dedecori*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est argumento*; This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Universos curæ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno usui*, .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnopere cordi est, mihi vehementer displicet*; What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, &c. Id.

Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, &c., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Cum solvendo civitates non essent*, .... not able to pay. Cic. *Divites, qui oneri ferendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restinguendo igni furent*. Liv. *Radix ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a nominative is sometimes used; as, *Amor est exitum pecori* (Virg.); or an accusative, with or without a preposition; as, *Se Achilli comitem esse datum dicit ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Remis in clientelam dicābunt*. Cæs.

REM. 5. The dative of the object after *sum*, often seems rather to depend upon the dative of the end, than upon the verb; as in the example *Ego omnibus meis exitio fuero* (Cic.), in which *omnibus meis* has the same relation to *exitio* that *pecori* has to *exitium* in the above example from Virgil. For the use of the dative after a noun, see § 211, REM. 5.

NOTE 1. The dative is sometimes used after the infinitive, instead of the accusative, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. See §§ 205, REM. 6, and 239, REM. 1.

NOTE 2. In such expressions as *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, *Cui cognomen Iulo additur*, the proper name is put in the dative in apposition with that which precedes, instead of taking the case of *nomen* or *cognomen*. See § 204, REM. 8.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the end or object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as, *Proximè castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Congruenter naturæ*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Propius stabulis armenta tenerent*. Virg. *Vitæque hominum amice vivere*. Id. *Bene mihi, bene vobis*. Plaut. *So obviam*; as, *Mihi obviam venisti*. Cic.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they are rather used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Væ victis!* Liv. *Væ te!* also occurs in Plautus.

NOTE. The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes redundant, or to affect the meaning but little; as, *Fur mihi es*, .... in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille mihi liber, cui mulier impërat?* Cic. *Tongilium mihi eduxit*. Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sebösus!* Cic. *Hem tibi talentum argenti Philippicum est*. Plaut. *Sibi is* sometimes subjoined to *suus*; as, *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*. Plaut. *Sibi suo tempore*. Cic.

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of an active verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Legatos mittunt*, They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus*, The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da veniam hanc*, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitati sunt*, They imitated him. Cic.

REMARK 1. An active verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco amentis*, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum melioribus*, Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucris luctu*, Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs which are considered active in one, are used as neuter in the other. Hence, in translating active Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me cavëret*, That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are neuter, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by active verbs.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum senätus, quem (sc. dare) videntur, dabit*. Liv.

2. *Dico*, and verbs of similar meaning, are often omitted; as, *Quid multa? quid? Ne multa*, sc. *dicam*. *Quid (sc. de eo dicam) quod salus scörum in discrimen vocätur?* Cic.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipitat*, sc. *se*. Virg. *Tum prora avertit*. Id. *Eo lavätum*, sc. *me*. Hor. The reflexives are usually wanting after certain verbs; as, *aboleo*, *abstineo*, *augeo*, *celero*, *continuo*, *declino*, *decöquo*, *flecto*, *deflecto*, *inclino*, *lavo*, *lazo*, *moveo*, *muto*, *præcipito*, *remitto*, *ruo*, *turbo*, *verto*, *deverto*, *reverto*; and more rarely after *moveo*, *converto*, and many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, or easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad*

*quos scribam, nescio, sc. litéras. Cic. De quo et tecum egi diligenter, et scripsi ad te. Id. Benè fecit Silius. Id.*

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more clauses may supply the place of the accusative ; as,

*Da mihi fallère. Hor. Reddes dulces loqui, reddes ridère decòrum. Id. Cupio me esse clementem. Cic. Athenienses statuerunt ut naves conscenderent. Id. Vereor ne a doctis reprehendar. Id. Sometimes both constructions are united ; as, Dè iram miserantur inànem ambòrum, et tantos mortalibus esse labores. Virg.*

In such constructions, the *subject* of the clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the verb ; as, *Nòsti Marcellum, quàm tardus sit, for Nòsti quàm tardus sit Marcellus. Cic. Illum, ut vivat, optant. Ter. Rem frumenturiam, ut satis commòdè supportàri posset, timère dicebant. Cæs.*

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs *misèret, pœnitèt, pudet, tædet, and piget*, likewise *miserescit, miserètur, and pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling ; as,

*Eòrum nos misèret, We pity them. Cic. See § 215, (1.) Veritum est also occurs with such an accusative ; Quos non est veritum. Cic.*

REM. 7. *Juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit, and prætèrit*, also, are followed by an accusative of the person ; as,

*Te hilàri ànimo esse valdè me juvat, That you are in good spirits delights me. Cic. Fugit me ad te scribère. Cic. Illud alterum quàm sit difficile, non te fugit, nec verò Cæsàrem sefellit. Id.*

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *interest*, see § 219, REM. 1.

For the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6,) (b.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call, to choose, render or constitute, to esteem or reckon, are followed by two accusatives denoting the same person or thing ; as,

*Urbem ex Antiòchi patris nomíne Antiochiam vocàvit, He called the city Antioch, &c. Just. Me consùlem fecistis. Cic. Sulpicium accusatòrem suum numeràbat, non competitòrem. Id. Cùm vos testes habeam. Nep.*

For the verbs included in this rule, see § 210, REM. 3, (3.)

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood ; as, *Ne me existimàris ad manendum esse propensìorem. Cic. Eum avàrum possùmus existimàre. Id. Mercurium omnium inventòrem artium ferunt ; hunc viàrum atque itinèrum ducem arbitrantur. Cæs.*

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, &c. ; as, *Talem se imperatòrem prèbuit, He showed himself such a commander. Nep. Quare ejus fugà comitem me adjungèrem. Cic. Homìnum opinio socium me ascribit tuis laudibus. Id. Præsta te eum qui mihi es cognitus. Cic. Filiam tuam mihi uxòrem posco. Plant. Petit hanc Saturnia munus. Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.*



§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *celo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of a person, the other of a thing; as,

*Rogo te nummos*, I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce deos veniam*, Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum legent quis musicam docuerit Epaminondam*, When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antigonus iter omnes celat*, Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flagito*, *efflagito*, *obsecro*, *oro*, *exoro*, *percontor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *postulo*, *precor*, *deprecor*, *rogo*, and *interrogo*; of teaching, *docceo*, *edocceo*, *dedocceo*, and *erudio*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Cingo* occurs once with two accusatives; *Arma Tribunitium cingere digna latus*. Mart.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of a person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non debēbam abs te has litteras poscere*. Cic. *Veniam orēmus ab ipso*. Virg. *Istud volebam ex te percontari*. Plaut.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative of a thing, the ablative with *de* is also used after many of the above verbs; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrogem*. Cic. *De itinere hostium sententiam edocet*. Sall. *Basius noster me de hoc libro celavit*. Cic. Sometimes also a dependent clause.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exigo*, *peto*, *quæro*, *scitor*, *sciscitor*, which take an ablative of the person with a preposition; *imbuo*, *instituo*, *instruo*, &c., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed.

REM. 5. Many other active verbs with the accusative of a person, sometimes take an accusative of *nihil*, of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, &c., or of adjectives of quantity; as,

*Fabius ea me monuit*, Fabius reminded me of those things. Cic. *Non quo me aliquid juvare posses*. Id. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortatus*. Sall. *Id adjata me*. Ter. *Nec te id consulo*. Cic. *Consulo* and *moneo* are also found with a noun denoting the thing in the accusative; as, *Consulam hanc rem amicos*. Plaut. *Eam rem nos locus admonuit*. Sall.

A preposition may often be understood before the above neuter accusatives. See § 235, REM. 5.

By a similar construction, *genus* is sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive; as, *Scis me orationes, aut aliquid id genus scribere*. Cic. *Nullas hoc genus vigilias vigilarunt*. Gell. So *Omnes mulieres secus*. Suet.

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam vivere*, To live a life. Plaut. *Furere furem*. Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnabo*. Plaut. *Pugnare praelia*. Hor. *Lusum insolentem ludere*. Id. *Si non servitatem serviat*. Plaut. *Queror haud faciles questus*. Stat. *Juravi verissimum jussurandum*. Cic. *Ignotas jubet ire vias*. Val. Flacc. *Ut suum gaudium gauderemus*. Cœl. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter*. Cic.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used in an active sense, and are therefore followed by an accusative. • Neuter verbs

are also sometimes followed by an accusative, depending on a preposition understood. The following are examples of both constructions :—

With *oleo* and *sapio*, and their compounds, *redoleo*, *resipio*;—*Olet unguenta*, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Oratiōnes redolentes antiquitatem*. Cic. *Mella herbam eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva picem resipiens*. Id. So *Sitio honōres*. Cic. *Nec vox homīnem sonat*. Virg. *Sūdāre mella*. Id. *Morientem nomīne clamat*. Id. *Quis pauperiem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una manet nox*. Id. *Ingrāti animi crimen horreo*. Cic. *Ego meas queror fortūnas*. Plaut. *Pastōrem, saltāret uti Cyclōpa, rogābat*. Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclōpa movētur*. Id. *Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi*. Hor. *Nec tu id indignāri posses*. Liv. *Quod dubitas ne feceris*. Plin. *Nihil labōro*. Cic. *Corýdon ardebat Alexin*. Virg. *Stygias juravimus undas*. Ovid. *Navigat æquor*. Virg. *Currimus æquor*. Id. *Pascuntur sylvas*. Id. *Multa alia peccat*. Cic. *Exsequias ite frēquenter*. Ovid. *Devenēre locos*. Virg.

Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambūlo*, *calleo*, *doleo*, *equito*, *gaudeo*, *gemo*, *lateo*, *latro*, *nato*, *palleo*, *pereo*, *depereo*, *procedo*, *sibilo*, *tremo*, *trepido*, *vado*, *venio*, &c.

In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob*, *propter*, *per*, *ad*, &c., may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id*, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quicquid*, *nihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *multa*, *pauca*, *alia*, *cetēra*, and *omnia*.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans* have two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as, *Omnem equitātum pontem transducit*, He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Hellespontum copias trajecit*. Nep.

So *Pontus scopūlos superjācit undam*. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *indūco* with *animum*; as, *Id animum advertit*. Cæs. *Id quod animum induxerat paulisper non tenuit*. Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego te manum injiciam*.

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as, *Magicas accingier artes*, To be prepared for magic arts. Virg. *Classis circumvehitur arcem*. Liv. *Vectem circumjectus fuisset*. Cic. *Locum prætervectus sum*. Cic.

But after most active verbs compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is repeated; as, *Cæsar se ad nemīnem adjunxit* (Cic.); or a dative is used; as, *Hic dies me valdè Crasso adjunxit*. Id. See § 224.

(3.) Many neuter verbs take an accusative when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, but these sometimes become active; as, *Gentes quæ mare illud adjacent*, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obequitāre agmen*. Curt. *Incedunt mæstos locos*. Tac. *Transilui flammās*. Ovid. *Succedere tecta*. Cic. *Ludōrum diebus, qui cognitionem intervenērant*. Tac. *Adire provinciam*. Suet. *Caveat ne prælium inseat*. Cic. *Naves paratas invenit*. Cæs. *Ingrēdi iter pedibus*. Cic. *Epicuri horti quos modò præteribāmus*. Id. *Leōnes subiēre jugum*. Virg. *Fama allabitur aures*. Id. *Illoquor te*. Id.

REMARK 1. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which take an ablative after them, are at times followed by an accusative; as, *Neminem convēni*, I met with no one. *Cic. Qui societatem coiēris*. *Id. Aversāri honōres*. *Ovid. Evaditque celer ripam*. *Virg. Excedere numerum*. *Tac. Extre limen*. *Ter. Tibur præfluunt aquæ*. *Hor.*

REM. 2. The preposition is often repeated after the verb, or a different one is used; as, *In Galliam invāsit Antonius*. *Cic. Ad me adire quosdam memini*. *Id. Ne in senātum accedērem*. *Cic. Regina ad templum incessit*. *Virg. Juxta genitōrem astat Lavinia*. *Id.*

NOTE. Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative like the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Quid tibi huc receptio ad te est meum virum?* Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? *Plaut. Quid tibi hanc aditio est?* *Id. Vitabundus castra*. *Liv.*

§ 234. I. When the active voice takes an accusative both of a person and thing, the passive retains the latter; as,

*Rogātus est sententiam*, He was asked his opinion. *Liv. Interrogātus causam*. *Tac. Segētes alimentaque debita dives poscebātur humus*. *Ovid. Motus doctri gaudet Ioncos matura virgo*. *Hor. Omnes belli artes edoctus*. *Liv. Nosne hoc celatos tam diu?* *Ter. Multa in extis monēmur*. *Cic.*

NOTE. As the object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive, the passive is not followed by an accusative of the object.

In other respects, the government of the active and passive voices is, in general, the same.

REMARK 1. *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in the passive; as, *Induitur atras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. *Ovid. Thorāca indutus*. *Virg. Exuta est Roma senectam*. *Mart. So cingo*, which occurs once in the active voice with two accusatives; as, *Inutile ferrum cingitur*. *Virg. See § 231, REM. 1.*

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa novis rebus quum sit agendum*. *Lucr.*

II. An adjective, verb, and participle, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

*Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. *Virg. Os humerosque deo similis*. *Id. Micat auribus et tremat artus*. *Id. Cetera parce puer bello*. *Id. Sibylla colla tumentem*. *Id. Expleri mentem nequit*. *Id. Picti scuta Labici*. *Id. Fractus membra*. *Hor. Maximam partem lacte vivunt*. *Cæs.*

This construction, which is probably of Greek origin, is usually called *SYNECDOCHE*. It is chiefly used by the poets: the accusative seems to depend on a preposition understood.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertia vivitur ætas*. *Ovid. Bellum militabitur*. *Hor. Dormitur hiems*. *Mart. Multa peccantur*. *Cic. Aditur Gnossius Minos*. *Sen. Ne ab omnibus circumsteteretur*. *Cæs. Hostes invadi posse*. *Sall. Campus obitur aqua*. *Ovid. Plures incuntur gratia*. *Cic.*

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *ponè*, *post*, *præter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *ultra*; as,

*Ad templum*, To the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes*, Against the enemy. Liv. *Cis Rhenum*, This side the Rhine. Cæs. *Intra muros*. Cic. *Penes reges*. Just. *Propter aquæ rivum*. Virg. *Inter agendum*. Id., *Ante domandum*. Id.

REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places: *citra* also with other words, as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Padum*. Liv. *Citra Veliam*. Cic. *Tela hostium citra*. Tac.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a plural accusative alone; as, *Inter me et Scipionem*. Cic. *Inter natos et parentes*. Id. *Inter nos*. Id.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via ducit in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Exercitus sub jugum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibit imāgo*. Virg. *Mediâ in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Ariovistus*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliâcis mœnibus gerere*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*,—with the ablative, *in*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venire*. Phæd. *Nationes quæ in amicitiam populi Romani, ditionemque essent*. Id. *Sub jugo dictator hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem consedissee*. Cæs.

*In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in horas*. Ovid. *Hostilem in modum*. Cic. *Quod in bono servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eâ conditione*. Ter. *Sub pœnâ mortis*. Suet.

In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; denoting *near*, *about*, either the accusative or ablative; as, *Sub tempore*, At the time. Lucan. *Sub lucem* (Virg.), *Sub luce* (Liv.), About daybreak.

(3.) *Super* is commonly followed by the accusative; but when it signifies either *on* or *concerning*, it takes the ablative; as,

*Super labentem culmina tecti*, Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Super tenero prosternit gramine corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Id. *Multa super Priamo rogitans super Hectore multa*, .... concerning Priam, &c. Id. The compound *desuper* is found with the accusative, and *insuper* with the accusative and ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes the ablative; as,

*Subter terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densâ testudine*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed either by the accusative or ablative ; as,

*Clam vos*, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam patre*. Ter. *Clam* also occurs with a genitive—*Clam patris* (Ter.) ; and even with a dative—*Mihi clam est*. Plaut.

REM. 3. The adverbs *versus* and *usque* are sometimes used with an accusative, which depends on a preposition understood ; as, *Brundisium versus*. Cic. *Terminos usque Libyæ*. Just. *Usque Ennam profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.

REM. 4. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind ; as, *Multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *adem*. Sall.

REM. 5. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood. The preposition cannot, however, always be properly expressed, in such instances ; *ut* is to be used, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the case of synecdoche, see § 234, II. The following examples may here be added :—*Homo id ætatis*. Cic. *Quid tibi ætatis videor* ? Plaut. *Profectus est id temporis*. Cic. *Illud horæ*. Suet. *Devenire locos*. Virg. *Propter montem*. Sall. *Proximè Pompeium sedebam*. Cic. *A te bis terve summum literas accepi*. Id. *Idne estis auctores mihi* ? Ter. *Vix equidem ausim affirmare quod quidam auctores sunt*. Liv. In most of these, *ad* may be understood.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after other nouns and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative ; as,

*Vixi annos triginta*, I have lived thirty years. *Decreverunt intercalarium quinque et quadraginta dies longum*, They decreed an intercalary month forty-five days long. Cic. *Annos natus viginti septem*, Twenty-seven years old. Id. *Dies totos de virtute disserrunt*. Id. *Duces qui undæ cum Sertorio omnes annos fuerant*. Cæs. *Biduum Laodiciæ fui*. Cic. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id. *Duas fossas quindécim pedes latas perduxit*, He extended two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Cum abessem ab Amāno iter unius diēi*. Cic. *Tres pateat cæli spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. *A portu stadia centum et viginti processimus*. Cic. *Vixit annis viginti novem, imperavit triennio*. Suet. *Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum distans*. Liv. *Ventidius bidui spatio abest ab eo*. Cic.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit other nouns, are often put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, REM. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed, may be expressed by an ordinal number ; as, *Nos vicesimum jam diem patimur hebescere aciem horum auctoritatis*. Cic. *Punico bello duodecimum annum Italia urebatur*. Liv.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains ; as, *Castra quæ abierant bidui*, sc. *spatium* or *spatio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Cæsâris castris consedit.* Cæs.

For *abhinc*, with the accusative, see § 253, REM. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, REM. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos aluimus*,....during ten years. Cic. *Quæ inter decem annos facta sunt.* Id. *Sulcum in quatuor pedes longum cum feceris.* Colum.

#### ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town in which the motion ends is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Regulus Carthaginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam flectit iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Romam proficiscitur.* Sall. *Romam erat nunciatum.* Cic. *Messanam litêras dedit.* Id.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, &c.; as, *Iter est mihi Lanuvium.* Cic. *Cæsarem iter habere Capuam.* Id.

REM. 2. The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting *into*, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abii.* Plaut. *Ad*, when expressed before the name of a town, denotes not *into*, but *to* or *near*; as, *Cæsar ad Genèvam pervenit.* Cæs. *Cum ego ad Heracleam accederem.* Cic.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam.* Hor.

REM. 4. *Domus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*Ite domum*, Go home. Virg. *Galli domos abierant.* Liv. *Rus ibo.* Ter. When *domus* is limited by a genitive, or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introto in nostram domum.* Plaut. *Venisse in domum Leccæ.* Cic. *Ad eam domum profecti sunt.* Id. *In domos supêras scandere cura fuit.* Ovid.

*Domus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Domum reditiõnis spe sublatâ.* Cæs. So, *Reditus Romam.* Cic.

REM. 5. Before all other names of places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *domus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiâ transis in Eurôpam.* Curt. *Te in Epirum venisse gaudeo.* Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Inde Sardiniam cum classe venit.* Cic. *Italiam Lavinâque venit litôra.* Virg. *Navigare Egyptum pergit.* Liv. *Rapidum veniêmus Oaxen.* Virg. The names of nations are used in the same manner; as, *Nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt.* Cæs. *Nos ibimus Afros.* Virg. So *insûlas rubri maris navigant.* Plin.

#### ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. The adverbs *pridie* and *postridie* are often followed by the accusative; as, *Pridie eum diem*, The day before that day. Cic. *Pridie Idus.* Id. *Postridie ludos.* Id. *Postridie Calendas.* Liv.

The accusative, in such examples, depends on *ante* or *post* understood. For the genitive after *pridie* and *postridie*, see § 212, REM. 4, NOTE 6.

The adverb *benè* is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Propino, benè vos, benè nos, benè te, benè me, benè nostram Stephanium*. Plaut. *Benè Messalam*. Tibull.

2. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, *O*, *heu*, and *pro*, are sometimes followed by the accusative; as,

*En quatuor aras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O præclârum custodem!* Cic. *Heu me infelicem!* Ter. *Pro Deûm hominumque fidem!* Cic.

So also *ah*, *eh*, and *hem*; as, *Ah me me!* Catull. *Eheu me misèrum!* Ter. *Hem astutias!* Id.

The accusative is also used in exclamations without an interjection; as, *Misèram me!* Ter. *Homīnem gravem et civem egregium!* Cic.

### SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Molestè Pompeium id ferre constabat*, That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hac nomīne appellâri fas est*. Id. *Miror te ad me nihil scribère*, I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jubet esse patentés*. Virg.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adolescentis majores natu verèri*, sc. *eum*. Cic. *Doctōris intelligentis est natūrâ suâ ducē utentem sic instituère*. Id. *Expēdit bonas esse vobis*, sc. *vos*. Ter. *Armâri Volseōrum edice maniplis*. Virg.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum susceptūrum (esse)*, sc. *me*, I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posse negabat*, sc. *se*. Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general indefinite word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud iracundum esse, aliud irātum*, sc. *homīnem*. Cic.

The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 201, IV.

For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

### VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro*, also *ah*, *au*, *ehem*, *eh*, *eho*, *ehōdum*, *ej*, *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, *ohe*, and *vah*, are often followed by the vocative; as,

*O formōse puer!* O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte*

*Jupiter!* Cic. *Ah virgo infelix!* Virg. *Heus Syre!* Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Mart.

The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O misera sortis!* sc. *homines*. Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom a proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

### ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *a*, *ab*, or *abs*; *absque*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, *palam*, *præ*, *pro*, *sine*, *tenus*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fuga*, From flight. Id. *Palam populo*. Liv. *Sine labore*. Cic. *Capulo tenus*. Virg.

For *in*, *sub*, *super*, *subter*, and *clam*, with the ablative, see § 235, (2,) &c.

REMARK 1. *Tenus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive, chiefly the genitive plural. See § 221, III.

REM. 2. The adverbs *procul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on a preposition understood; as, *Procul mari*, sc. *a*; Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nobis habitat*, sc. *cum*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those which are followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Cum coram sumus*. Cic. *Cum fratre an sine*. Id.

REM. 4. The ablative is often used without a preposition, where, in English, a preposition must be supplied. This occurs especially in poetry. In some such cases, a preposition may properly be introduced in Latin; in others, the idiom of that language does not permit it.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *a*, *ab*, *abs*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, and *super*, are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sedibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non absteineant*. Cic. *Detrahunt naves scopulo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Navigressus est*. Nep. *Excedere finibus*. Liv. *Cæsar prælio supersedere statuit*. Cæs.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or a different one is used; as, *Detrahère de tua fama nunquam cogitavi*. Cic. *Ex oculis abierunt*. Liv. *Exire a patriâ*. Cic. *Exire de vitâ*. Id.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites degressi ad pedes*, sc. *equis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos*, sc. *vitâ*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, REM. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, REM. 1.



ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES,  
AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are usually limited by the ablative; as,

*Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc animis opus nunc pectore firmo*. Virg. *Naves, quibus proconsuli usus non esset*; Ships, for which the proconsul had no occasion. Cic. *Nunc viribus usus, nunc manibus rapidis*. Virg.

REMARK 1. *Opus* and *usus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Ita facto et maturato opus esse*, That there was need of so doing and of hastening. Liv. *Usus facto est mihi*. Ter. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento* (Cic.); *Opus sibi esse domino ejus invento* (Liv.);—or a supine is used; as, *Ita dictu opus est*. Ter.

For the genitive and accusative after *opus* and *usus*, see § 211, REM. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are only used with the verb *sum*. *Opus* is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate, of that verb; *usus* the subject only. *Opus* is rarely followed by an ablative, except when it is the subject of the verb. The thing needed may, in general, be put either in the nominative or the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est* (Cic.), or *Duce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those which denote quantity, as *tantum, quantum, plus*, &c.; as, *Quod non opus est, asse carum est*. Cato apud Sen.

For the ablative of character, quality, &c., limiting a noun, see § 211, REM. 6.

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and fretus*, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Dignus laude*, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox populi majestate indigna*, A speech unworthy of the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ eo contentæ non quærunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo scelere præditus*. Id. *Plerique ingenio freti*. Id.

REMARK 1. The adverb *dignè*, like *dignus*, takes the ablative after it; as, *Peccat uter nostrum cruce dignius*. Hor.

REM. 2. *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cogitationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis*. Cic. *Indignus avorum*. Virg.

Instead of an ablative, they often take an infinitive, or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Erat dignus amari*. Virg. *Dignus qui impéret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam palum in parietem*. Plaut.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and dignor*, are followed by the ablative; as,

*His vocibus usa est*, She used these words. Virg. *Frui voluptate*, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido potiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurâ*. Virg. *Me dignor honore*. Id. *Homines honore dignantur*. Cic.

So the compounds *abutor*, and rarely *deutor, perfruor, defungor*, and *perfungor*.

REMARK 1. The above verbs, except *dignor*, instead of an ablative,

sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem medici utuntur*. Varr. *Ingenium frui*. Ter. *Datāmes militāre munus fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram potitāram putem*. Cic. *Sacras lauros vascar*. Tibull. *Potior* is, also, found with the genitive. (See § 220, 4.) *Dignor* is used both as active and passive.

II. *Lætor, gaudeo, glorior, jacto, nitor, sto, fido, confido, muto, misceo, epûlor, vivo, assuesco*, and *consto* (to consist of), are often followed by the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Lætor tuâ dignitate*, I rejoice in your dignity. Cic. *Gaude tuo bono*. Id. *Sud victoriâ gloriārî*. Cæs. *Jactat supplicio levando*. Cic. *Niti æquitate*. Id. *Censōris opiniōne standum non putāvit*. Id. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Corpōris firmitate confidēre*. Cic. *Uram mutat strigili*. Hor. *Genus pugnæ quo assueverant*. Liv. *Quidquid auro et argento constāret*. Suet.

REMARK 1. *Gaudeo* is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, *Gavisos homines suum dolorem*. Cic. See § 232, (2.) *Fido, confido*, and *assuesco*, often take the dative. See § 223, REM. 2,

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *lætor* and *gaudeo* usually take *de*; *glorior* and *jacto*, *de* or *in*; *nitor, sto, fido* and *confido*, *in*; *assuesco*, *in* or *ad*; *misceo, cum*; and *consto, ex*.

III. The ablative without a preposition is used after *sum*, to denote the situation or circumstances of the subject of the verb; as,

*Tamen magno timōre sum*, Yet I am in great fear. Cic. *Quanto fuërim dolōre meministi*. Id. *Maximo honōre Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. *Ut meliōre simus loco, ne optandum quidem est*. Cic.

But the preposition *in* is often used before such ablatives, especially if an adjective or pronoun is not joined with them; as, *Sum in expectatiōe omnium rerum*. Cic. *Etsi erāmus in magnâ spe*. Id.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting origin are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *natus, prognātus, satus, creātus, cretus, editus, genitus, generātus, ortus*; to which may be added *oriundus*.

Thus, *Nate deâ!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantālo prognātus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Satus Nereide*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rege*. Id. *Alcandōre creti*. Virg. *Editæ regibus*. Hor. *Diis genite*. Virg. *Argolico generātus Alemōne*. Ovid. *Ōrtus nullis majoribus*. Hor. *Cælesti semine oriundi*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after *nascor*; as, *Ut patre certo nascerēre*. Cic. So, *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. The prepositions *a* or *ab, de, e* or *ex*, are often expressed after these participles, especially in prose.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, &c.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the cause, manner, means, and instrument, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Animus æger avaritiâ*, A mind diseased through avarice. Sall. *Pallere metu*, To be pale through fear. Ovid. *Quod sævitâ temporis non capi potërat*. Sall.—*Omnibus modis miser sum*, I am every way miserable. Ter. *Silentio auditus est*, He was heard in silence. Cic. *Lento gradu procedit*. Val. Max.—*Amicos observantiâ, rem parsimoniâ retinuit*; He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrôque decori*. Virg. *Vi morbi consumptus es*. Cic. *Ægrescit medendo*. Virg.—*Trabs saucia secûri*, A tree cut with the axe. Ovid. *Cæsus est virgis*, He was beaten with rods. Cic. *Laniabant dentibus artus*. Virg.

REMARK 1. When the *cause* is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob*, *propter*, or *per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos decipi*. Ter. These prepositions, and *a* or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, and *præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adulterium cæsi*. Virg. *Nec loqui præ morore potuit*. Cic.

REM. 2. After active verbs, the *cause* is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by the ablatives *causâ*, *gratiâ*, &c., with a genitive; as, *Si hoc honoris mei causâ suscepëris*. Cic. With *causâ*, &c., the adjective pronoun is commonly used, for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse meâ causâ, molestè fero*. Cic. Sometimes the ablative with *ductus*, *motus*, *captus*, &c., is used; as, *Mihi benevolentia ductus tributabat omnia*. Cic.

REM. 3. The *manner* is often expressed with *cum*, especially when an adjective is joined with it; as, *Quum vidëret oratôres cum severitate audiri*. Cic. *Magno cum metu dicere incipio*. Id. Sometimes also with *e* or *ex*; as, *Ex industriâ*, On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quint.

REM. 4. The *means* is often expressed by *per* with an accusative; as, *Quod per scelus adeptus est*. Cic. When it is a voluntary agent, it can only be so expressed, or by the ablative *opërâ* with a genitive or possessive pronoun; as, *Per præcônem vendere aliquid*. Cic. *Opërâ eorum effectum est*. Just. *Non meâ opërâ evenit*. Ter. Yet persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depopulatus erat*. Cic.

REM. 5. The *instrument* is rarely used with a preposition. The poets, however, sometimes prefix to it *a* or *ab*, and even *sub*, and sometimes other prepositions; as, *Trajectus ab ense*. Ovid. *Exercere solum sub vomere*. Virg. *Cum*, with the instrument, is seldom used except by inferior writers; as, *Cum voce maximâ conclamare*. Gell.

§ 248. I. The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clodius me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clodio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudatur* ab his, *culpatur* ab illis. Hor.

REMARK 1. The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Probitas laudatur*, sc. *ab hominibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur*. Virg. *Toto certatum est corpore regni*. Id.

The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Cum omnes in omni genere scelërum volutentur*, sc. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are often followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus perit* ab Annibale, *M. Marcellus* was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir* ab hoste cadat. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec conjūge captus*. Ovid. *Colitur linigēra turbā*. Id.

For the dative of the agent after the passive voice, and participles in *du*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of an active verb in the passive voice, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as (in the active voice), *Terror conficit omnia* (Lucan.);—(in the passive), *Maximo dolore conficior*. Cic. *Frangi* cupiditate. Id.

But the involuntary agent is sometimes considered as voluntary, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, *A voluptatibus deseri*. Cic. *A naturā datum hominī vivendi curricūlum*. Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting that *with* which the action of a verb is performed, though not the instrument, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

REMARK 1. This construction is used with verbs signifying to fill, to furnish, to load, to array, to adorn, to enrich, and many others of various significations; as,

*Terrōre implētur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruxere epulis mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animū his opinionibus imbuas*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumulat altaria donis*, He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis*. Id. *Me tanto honore honestas*. Plaut. *Equis Africam locupletavit*. Colum. *Studium tuum nullā me novā voluptate affecit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit umbris*. Lucr.

REM. 2. Several verbs, denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

II. A noun denoting that in *accordance* with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. Cic. *Instituto suo Cæsar copias suas eduxit*; Cæsar, according to his practice, led out his forces. Cæs. *Id factum consilio meo*. Ter. *Poem fecit his conditionibus*. Nep.

The prepositions *de*, *ex*, and *pro*, are often expressed with such nouns.

III. The ablative denoting *accompaniment*, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*; Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lælio*. Cic. *Julium cum his ad te literis misi*. Id. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. Id. But *cum* is sometimes omitted, especially before words denoting military forces; as, *Ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contenderunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto exercitu profectus*. Liv.

§ 250. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

*Pietâte filius, consiliis parens*; In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Reges nomine magis quàm imperio*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppidum nomine Bibraz*. Cæs.—*Jure peritus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pedibus æger*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crine ruber, niger ore*. Mart. *Fronte latus*. Tac. *Majore natu*. Cic. *Maximus natu*. Liv.—*Animo angere*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contremisco totâ mente et omnibus artibus*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Aliëro oculo capitur*. Liv. *Ingeniû laude floruit*. Cic. *Pollere nobilitate*. Tac. *Animoque et corpore torpet*. Hor.

REMARK 1. To this principle may be referred the following rules:—

(1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

*Domus plena servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Ferax sæculum bonis artibus*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba fratribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arboribus solum*. Colum.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Scatentem belluis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs redundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinâ, lacte, caseo, melle*. Cic.—*Virum qui pecuniâ eget*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Carere culpâ*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolescentia indiget illorum bonâ existimatione*. Id. *Abundat audaciâ, consilio et ratione deficitur*. Id.

To this rule belong *abundo, exubero, redundo, scateo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo*;—*careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

REM. 2. The genitive is often used to denote in what respect, after adjectives and verbs; (see §§ 213 and 220;) sometimes, also, the accusative. See § 234, II.

REM. 3. The ablative denoting in respect to, or concerning, is used after *facio* and *sum*, without a preposition; as, *Quid hoc homine faciatis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciat auro*. Plaut. *Metum cepèrunt quidnam se futurum esset*. Liv. In this construction, the preposition *de* seems to be understood, and is sometimes expressed; as, *Quid de Tulliolâ meâ fiet*. Cic.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to deprive, to free, to debar, to drive away, to remove, and others of similar meaning. Thus,

*Nudantur arbôres foliis*, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me liberâ metu*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tunc eam philosophiam sequere, quæ spoliât nos judicio, privat approbatione, orbat sensibus?* Cic. *Solvit se Teucria luctu*. Virg. *Te illis sedibus arcêbit*. Cic. *Q. Varium pellere possessionibus conatus est*. Id. *Quod M. Catonem tribunatu tuo remooisses*. Id. *Me leves chori secernunt populo*. Hor.

To this rule belong *fraudo, nudo, orbo, privo, spolio*;—*arceo, expedio, interclúdo, laxo, levo, libero, moveo, removeo, pello, prohibeo, &c.*

REMARK 1. Most of the above verbs are more or less frequently followed by *a, ab, de, e, or ex*; as, *Arcem ab incendio liberavit. Cic. Solvère bellum ex catenis. Auct. ad Her. Remove te a suspiciōe. Cic.*

For *arceo, &c.*, with the dative, see § 224, REM. 2.

REM. 2. The active verbs *induo, exuo, dono, impertio, adspargo, inspergo, interclúdo, circumdo, prohibeo*, instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Unam (vestem) juveni induit*, He puts one upon the youth. Virg. *Donare munera civibus*, To present gifts to the citizens. Cic.

*Interclúdo* is sometimes used with a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Quibus cum aqua et igni interdixissent. Cæs.*

*Abclúdo* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdicare se magistratû. Cic. Abdicare magistratum. Sall.*

#### ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The price of a thing is put in the ablative, except when expressed by the adjectives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris*; as,

*Cum te trecentis talentis regi Cotto vendidisses*, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam*, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse vendis. Plin. Constitit quadringentis millibus. Varr. Denis in diem assibus animam et corpus (militum) aestimari. Tac. Vendo meum non pluris quam ceteri, fortasse etiam minōris. Cic.*

REMARK 1. *Tantidem, quancunque, quantiquanti, and quantvis*, compounds of *tanti* and *quanti*, are also put in the genitive; as, *Tantidem frumentum emerunt quantidem..... Cic. Majōris* also is thus used in Phædrus; *Multō majōris alapæ mecum veneunt.*

REM. 2. When joined with a noun, *tanti, quanti, &c.*, are put in the ablative; as, *Quam tanto pretio mercatus est. Cic. Cum pretio minōre redimendi captivos copia fieret. Liv. Tanto, quanto, and plure*, are sometimes, though rarely, found without a noun; as, *Plure venit. Cic.*

REM. 3. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, tantulo, minimo, plurimo, vili, nimio*. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *pretio, ære*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo pretio ea vendidisse. Cic.*

REM. 4. With *valco* an accusative is sometimes used; as, *Denarii dicti, quod denos æris valebant. Varr.*

#### ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the time at or within which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto decessit*, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore, At this time. Cic. Tertiâ vigiliâ eruptionem fecerunt*, They made a sally at

the third watch. Cæs. *Ut hième naviges*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *His ipsis diebus hostem persēqui*. Cic. *Proximo triennio omnes gentes subegit*. Nep. *Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet*. Sall. *Ludis mane servum quidam egerat*, On the day of the games.... Liv. So *Latinis, gladiatoribus, comitiis*, denote the time of the Latin festivals, the gladiatorial shows, &c.

REMARK 1. When a precise time is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative; as, *Aliquot ante annos*. Suet. *Paucis ante diebus*. Liv. *Paucos post dies*. Cic. *Multis annis post Decemvīros*. Id.

Sometimes *quàm* and a verb are added to *post* and *ante* with either the accusative or the ablative; as, *Ante paucos quàm periret menses*. Suet. *Paucis post diebus quàm Lucā discesserat*. Cic. *Post* is sometimes omitted before *quàm*; as, *Die vigesima quàm creātus erat*. Liv.

Instead of *postquam*, *ex quo* or *quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative, may be used; as, *Octo diebus, quibus has līteras dabam*, Eight days from the date of these letters. Cic. *Mors Roscii, quadriduo quo is occisus est, Chrysogōno nuntiātur*. Id.

REM. 2. Precise *past* time is often denoted by *abhinc* with the accusative or ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti abhinc annos quatuordēcim*. Cic. *Comitiis jam abhinc triginta diebus habitis*. Id.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id temporis*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, REM. 3.

REM. 4. The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by *in* or *de*, with the ablative; as, *In his diebus*. Plaut. *In tali tempore*. Liv. *De tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit*. Cæs. *Surgunt de nocte latrones*. Hor. So with *sub*; *Sub ipsa die*. Plin.

The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiam partem nationum subegit intra viginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra decimum diem, quàm Pheras venerat*; Within ten days after.... Liv.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, or extent of space, see § 236.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Babylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Thebis nutritus an Argis*, Whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor.

REMARK 1. The ablative *rure*, or more commonly *ruri*, is used to denote in the country; as, *Pater filium ruri habitare jussit*. Cic.

REM. 2. The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciavit*. Suet.

Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *domus* and *humus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative. See § 221.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries and of all other places in which any thing is said to be done, except those of towns, and *domus* and *rus*,

the preposition *in* with the ablative is commonly used; as, *Aio hoc fieri in Græciâ*. Plaut. *Lucus in urbe fuit*. Virg.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Milites stativis castris habebat*. Sall. *Magnis in laudibus fuit totâ Græciâ*. Nep. *Insidia terrâ marique factæ sunt*. Cic. *Navita puppe sedens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte viâ sacrâ*. Hor. *Urbe totâ*. Cic.

For names of countries in the genitive, see § 221, REM. 1.

§ 255. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town whence the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

*Brundisio profecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Corintho arcessivit colonos*, He sent for colonists from Corinth. Nep.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *domo*, *humo*, and *rure* or *ruri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Domo profectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit humo juvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rure huc advēnit*. Ter. *Si ruri veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *domus* with *unde*; as, *Qui genus? unde domo?* With an adjective, *rure*, and not *ruri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns, and *domus*, and *humus*, *ab* or *ex* is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriâ profectus*. Cic. *Ex domo*. Id. *Ab humo*. Virg.

REM. 3. With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab* or *ex* is commonly expressed; as, *Ex Asiâ transis in Europam*. Curt. *Ex castris proficiscuntur*. Cæs.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litrææ Macedoniâ allatæ*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advēnit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Itæ sacris, properatæ sacris, laurumque capillis pontæ*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes prosiluisse suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quàm*, *atque*, &c., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

The comparative degree is followed by the ablative, when *quàm* is omitted; as,

*Nihil est virtute formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio comior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. An object which is compared with the subject of a proposition by means of the comparative degree, is usually put in the ablative without *quàm*; as,

*Sidère pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*. Ter. *Albânum, Mæcenas, sive Falernum te magis appositis delectat*. Hor.

REM. 2. An object compared with a person or thing addressed, is also put in the ablative without *quàm*; as, *O fons Bandusia splendidior vitro!* Hor.



REM. 3. *Quàm* is sometimes used when one of the objects compared is the subject of a proposition, and then both are in the same case, either nominative or accusative; as, *Oratio quàm habitus fuit miserabilior*. Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem ampliorem quàm eam*. Id.

REM. 4. If neither of the objects compared is the subject of a sentence or a person addressed, *quàm* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the other object; as, *Non opinor negatûrum esse te, hominî non gratiosiori*, quàm Cn. Calidius est, *argentum reddidisse*. Cic. *Ego hominem callidorem vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*. Ter.

The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multò majori, quàm Africanus fuit, tamen (me) non multò minorem quàm Lælium adjunctum esse patiâre*. Cic.

REM. 5. But when the former object of comparison is in the accusative, though not the subject of the verb, the latter, if a relative pronoun, is put in the ablative without *quàm*; as, *Attalo, quo graviorem inimicum non habui, sororem dedit*; He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, &c. Curt.

This construction is often found with other pronouns, and sometimes with a noun; as, *Hoc nihil gratius facere potes*. Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiorem memoriâ tuâ*. Id. *Exegi monumentum ære perennius*. Hor. *Majora viribus audes*. Virg. *Nullam sacrâ vite prius severis arborem*. Hor.

REM. 6. *Plus, minus, and amplius*, are often used without *quàm*, and yet are commonly followed by the same case as if it were expressed; as,

*Hostium plus quinque milia cæsi eo die*, More than five thousand of the enemy were slain that day. Liv. *Ferre plus dimidiâtî mensis cibaria*. Cic. *Non amplius quingentos cives desiderâvit*. Cæs. *Sedecim non amplius legionibus defensum imperium est*. Liv. *Madefactum iri minus triginta diebus Græciam sanguine*. Cic. The ablatives in the last two examples do not depend upon the comparatives, but may be referred to § 236.

Before the dative and vocative, *quàm* must be expressed after these words.

The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in navi fui*. Ter. *Triennio amplius*. Cic.

REM. 7. *Quàm* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *major, minor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minores octonâm denum annorum neu majores quinum quadragenum,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age*. Liv. *Ex urbano exercitu, qui minores quinque et triginta annis erant, in naves impositi sunt*. The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, REM. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum*. Liv. *Annos natus magis quadraginta*. Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or clause, *quàm* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo majus quàm ut faveat oratori auditor*. Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opiniône, spe, expectatiône, fide*,—*dicto, solito*,—*æquo, credibili, and justo*,—are used in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opiniône celerius venturus esse dicitur.... sooner than is expected*. Cæs. *Dicto citius tumida æquora pluat*. Virg. *Injurias gravius æquo habere*. Sall.

These ablatives supply the place of a clause: thus, *gravius æquo is*

equivalent to *gravius quàm quod æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too* or *rather*, as in the above example—"He lived too freely," or "rather freely." So *tristior*, sc. *solito*, rather sad.

REM. 10. With *inferior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullâ arte cuiquam inferior*. Sall. The ablative is also found, but usually *inferior* is followed by *quàm*.

REM. 11. *Quàm pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quàm pro numëro pugnantium*. The battle was more severe than was to be expected, considering the number of the combatants. Liv.

REM. 12. When two different qualities of the same object are compared, both the adjectives which express them are put in the positive degree with *magis quàm*, or in the comparative connected by *quàm*; as, *Perfectam artem juris civilis habebitis, magis magnam atque ubèrem, quàm difficilem atque obscuram*. Cic. *Triumphus clarior quàm gratior*. A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv.

REM. 13. *Magis* is sometimes expressed with a comparative; as, *Quis magis queat esse beator?* Virg.

So also the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ ceteris fortior exsurgit*. Apul. *Scelere ante alios immanior omnes*. Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante alios cœrissimus*. Nep. Yet these prepositions denote comparison with a positive, and therefore seem redundant in such examples. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* may be construed like comparatives, and is sometimes, though rarely, followed by the ablative; as, *Necesse putes alium sapientem bonoque beatum*. Hor.

REM. 15. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes used after the comparative degree, like *quàm*; as, *Arctius atque hedera procerâ adstringitur ilex*. Hor.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative.

(1.) *Absolute difference* is usually denoted by nouns; as, *Minor uno mense*. Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipède quàm tu longior*. Plaut. *Hibernia dimidio minor quàm Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minoris constabit*. Cic. *Quàm molestum est uno digito plus habere!*....to exceed by a finger, to have six fingers. Cic. *Supèrat capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) *Relative difference* is denoted by neuter adjectives of quantity, and pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *nimio*, *aliquanto*, *altèro tanto* (twice as much); as, *Quanto sumus superiōres, tanto nos submissius geramus*; The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves. Cic. *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa est major*. Cic. *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarus*. Id. *Iter multo facilius*. Cæs. *Parvo brevius*. Plin. *Eo magis*. Cic. *Eo minus*. Id. *Via altèro tanto longior*. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv. Relative difference is also expressed by the phrase *multis partibus*; as, *Numëro multis partibus esset inferior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *tantum*, *quantum*, and *aliquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Aliquantum est ad rem avidior*. Ter. So the adverb *longè*; as, *Longè nobilissimus*. Cæs.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythagōras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit*; Tarquinius Superbus reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy. Cic. *Lupus, stimulante fame, captat ovile*; Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Hac oratione habitā, concilium dimisit*. Cæs. *Galli, re cognitā, obsidionem relinquunt*. Id. *Virtute exceptā, nihil amicitia præstabilius putetis*. Cic.

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause introduced by *cum*, or some other conjunction. Thus, for *Tarquinio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habitā, cum hanc orationem habuisset*, or *cum hæc oratio habitā esset*,—*concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as, *Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem*. Mart. *Irrupturis tam infestis nationibus*. Liv. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officii præceptis tradendis, philosophum se audeat dicere*. Cic.

REM. 3. A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause.

Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle; a substantive pronoun being sometimes put in the ablative absolute, though referring to the subject, or some other word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides*. Cic. *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, signa sustulit*. Cæs. *Me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. *Latos fecit, se consule, fastos*. Lucan.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the principal verb, is the same as that of the participle. If the perfect is used, it denotes an action prior to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagōras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit*; Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius Superbus. *Galli, re cognitā, obsidionem relinquunt*; The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege.

REM. 5. The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice. Thus, for "Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces," we find, "*Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequēbatur omnibus copiis*."

As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, the agent with *a* or *ab* not being expressed after this participle, as it usually is after the passive voice.

Thus, *Cæsar*, his dictis, *concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, "*Cæsar, having said this, or this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly."

As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar*, hæc locutus, *concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque.....agros Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis, ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Orta luce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel elapso animo, nulum residere sensum*. Cic. *Tam multis gloriam ejus adeptis*. Plin. *Litteras ad exercitus, tanquam adepto principatu, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent*; What they could do, a youth (being) their leader. Cæs. *Me suasore atque impulsore, hoc factum*. Plaut. *Annibæ vivo*. Nep. *Invitâ Minervâ*. Hor. With names of office, the ablative absolute often denotes the time of an event; as, *Romam venit* Mario consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Non-dum comperto quam in regionem venisset rex*. Liv. *Audito venisse nuncium*. Tac. *Vale dicto*. Ovid. *Haud cuiquam dubio quin hostium essent*. Liv. *Juxta periculoso vera an ficta promeret*. Tac.

REM. 9. The noun is, in some instances, wanting; as, *In amnis transgressu, multum certato, Bardesanes vicit*. Tac. *Difficilis mihi ratio, cui, errato, nulla venia, rectè facto, exigua laus proponitur*. Cic. *Sereno per totum diem*. Liv.

This use of *certato* and *errato* corresponds to the impersonal construction of the passive voice of neuter verbs, while *facto* and *sereno* may be referred to some general word understood.

REM. 10. The ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar, quanquam obsidione Massiliæ retardante, brevi tamen omnia subegit*. Suet. *Decemviri non ante, quam perlatis legibus, deposituros imperium esse aiebant*. Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses may be divided, in regard to their connection, into two classes. Those which belong to the same class are called *similar*; those which belong to different classes are called *dissimilar*.

Of the first class are the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *futures*, with the periphrastic forms in *sim* and *fuërim*. Of the second class are the *imperfect*, the *perfect indefinite*, and the *pluperfect*, with the periphrastic forms in *essem* and *fuissem*.

I. Similar tenses only can, in general, be made to depend on

each other, by means of those connectives which are followed by the subjunctive mood.

1. In clauses thus connected, the present, perfect, and the periphrastic forms with *sim* and *fuërim*, may depend on,

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non sum ita hebes, ut istuc dicam.* Cic. *Quantum dolorem acceperim, tu existimare potes.* Id. *Nec dubito quin reditus ejus reipublicæ salutæris futurus sit.* Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis provisum est, ut ne quid agere possint.* Id. *Quis musicis, quis huic studio literarum se dedidit, quin omnem illarum artium vim comprehendërit.* Id. *Defectiones solis prædictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ, quando futuræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillimè, quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuërit paucitas, judicabit.* Id. *Ad quos dies rediturus sim, scribam ad te.* Id. *Si sciëris aspidem latere uspiam, et velle aliquem super eam assidere, cujus mors tibi emolumentum factura sit, impròbè fecëris, nisi monueris, ne assideat.* Id.

2. So the imperfect, pluperfect, and periphrastic forms with *essem* and *fuissem*, may depend on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facërem, vel jam effecissem.* Cic. *Non enim dubitabam, quin eas libenter lecturus esses.* Id.

(2.) The PERFECT INDEFINITE; as, *Veni in ejus villam ut libros inde promërem.* Id. *Hæc cum essent nuntiata, Valerius classem ex templo ad ostium fluminis duxit.* Liv. *Ne Clodius quidem de insidiis cogitavit, siquidem exiturus ad cædem e villâ non fuisset.* Cic.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor cepërat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audiëram, quàm a te liberaliter esset tractatus.* Cic. *Non satis mihi constitërat, cum aliquâne animi mei molestiâ, an potius libenter te Athënis visurus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. When the present is used in narration for the perfect indefinite, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Legatos mittunt, ut pacem impetrarent.* Cæs.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is not confined to the present; as, *Sunt philosophi et fuërun, qui omnino nullam habere censërent humanarum rerum procuratiõnem Deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. The perfect indefinite is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite. See § 260, I. REM. 1.

These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *In Æquis variè bellatum est, adeo ut in incerto fuërit, vicissent, victine essent.* Liv. *Factum est, ut plus quàm collægæ Miltiades valuërit.* Nep.

The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the perfect indefinite, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil miseriti sunt, ut incursiões facërent et Veios in animo habuërint oppugnare.* Liv.

REM. 4. As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictores quoque eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te leviter accusans in eo, quòd de me citò credidisses.* Id.

REM. 5. The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a tense of present or past time, according as it is used in a definite or indefinite sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quæ ratio et doctrina præscripsêrit*. Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista loca venisse, ubi aliquid sapere viderere*. Id.

But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to REM. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales essent satis ostendisse*. Cic.

II. Dissimilar tenses may be made dependent on each other, in order to express actions whose time is different.

Hence, the present may be followed by the imperfect or pluperfect, to express a contingency dependent upon some condition not actually existing; as, *Nemo dubitare debet, quin multos, si fieri posset, Cæsar ab inferis excitaret*. Cic. So the perfect indefinite may be followed by the present, to express the present result of a past event; as, *Tanti sonitus fuêrunt, ut ego brevior sim, quodd eos usque istinc exauditos putem*. Cic.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative mood is used in independent and absolute assertions. It is often employed, also, in conditional and dependent clauses, to denote that which is supposed or admitted; as, *Si vales, bene est*. Cic. It may likewise be used in interrogations; as, *Quid agis, ecquid commoddè vales?* Plin.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) The present is sometimes used for the future; as, *Quàm mox navigo Ephësum?* How soon do I sail for Ephesus? Plaut.

(2.) The perfect for the pluperfect; as, *Sed postquam aspexi, illico cognovi*. But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter. This is the usual construction after *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ut semel*, *quum primum*, *simul ac*, and *simul atque*, in the sense of *when*, *as soon as*, in direct narration.

(3.) The pluperfect for the perfect; as, *Dixêrat, et spissis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg.

(4.) The future for the imperative mood; as, *Valêbis*, Farewell. Cic.

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de oratorum animo et injuriis vidêro*, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time, but by the *future perfect*, if the one must be completed before the other is performed. This verb in English is usually put in the present tense; as, *Faciàm si potêro*; I will do it, if I can, i. e. if I shall be able. So, *Ut sementem fecêris, ita meles*. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability, or ad-

vantage of an action not performed, the indicative is used, while in English the potential, in such cases, is more common; as, *Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed &c.*, I might speak of the numerous pleasures of husbandry, but &c. Cic. *Æquius huic Turnum fuerat se opponere morti*. Virg. This construction occurs with *debeo, possum, decet, licet, oportet, necesse est; æquum, consentaneum, longum, melius, optimum, par, satis, satius—est, erat, &c.*; and in the periphrastic conjugation with participles in *du*.

REM. 4. The past tenses of the indicative are often used for the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause; as, *Si non alium longè iuctaret odorem, laurus erat,....* it would have been a laurel. Virg. *Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent*. Id. *Pons publicus iter pæne hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset Horatius Cocles*. Liv. *Si mens non læva fuisset, impulêrat*. Virg. Sometimes also in the condition; as, *At fuerat melius, si te puer iste tenebat*. Ovid. See § 261.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

It takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or at least in such as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive often *implies* the existence of an action or state, *without directly asserting* it. When this is the case, its tenses are commonly to be translated in the same manner as the corresponding tenses of the indicative; as,

*Cùm esset Cæsar in Gallia*, When Cæsar *was* in Gaul, not *might be*. Cæs. *Rogas me quid tristis ego sim....* why I am sad. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this sense, its tenses have, in general, the same limitation in respect to time as those of the indicative, but the imperfect is commonly used rather than the perfect, to denote indefinite past action; as, *Quo factum est, ut brevi tempore illustrarêtur*; By which it happened that, in a short time, he became famous. Nep.

REM. 2. The subjunctive, in such cases, depends upon the particles and other words to which it is subjoined, and its meaning must be carefully distinguished from that which is stated in the following rule.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*. In this use, it *does not imply* the existence of the action or state which the verb expresses.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present, in this sense, may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mediocribus et quibz ignoscas vitiis teneor*; I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi veniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as,

*Si fata fuissent ut cadērem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sanior essem*; If I could, I would be wiser. Ovid. *Cetūros rapērem et prosternērem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect relates either to past or future time; as, *Errārim fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin. *Videor sperāre posse, si te vidērim, ea facillē (me) transitūrum....* if I can see you.... Cic.

(4.) The pluperfect relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se factūros esse, cum ille vento Aquilōne venisset Lemnum....* when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfect subjunctive, in Latin, is sometimes employed, where, in English, the pluperfect would be used; as, *Quod si quis deus dicēret, nunquam putārem me in academiā tanquam philosophum disputatūrum*, If any god had said....I never should have supposed.... Cic.

On the other hand, the pluperfect in Latin is sometimes used, where the imperfect is commonly employed in English; as, *Promisit se scriptūrum, quum primum nuntium accepisset....* as soon as he (should have) received the news.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive may be used to denote a supposition; as, *Vendat aedes vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixerit Epicūrus*, Grant that Epicurus has said. Id.

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used to soften an assertion; as, *Nemo istud tibi concēdat, or concesserit*; No one would grant you that. *Volo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, *Velim obvias mihi lītras crebrō mittas*, I could wish that you would frequently send letters to meet me. Cic. The perfect, used in this sense, has often the force of the present; as, *Quis enim hoc tibi concesserit?* Cic.

REM. 5. The present and perfect tenses are also used in questions which imply a doubt respecting the probability or propriety of an action; as, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam numen Junōnis adoret præterea?* Who will henceforth adore the divinity of Juno? Virg. *Quidni, inquit meminērim?* Cic.

REM. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, a request, a command, or a permission; as,

*Ne sim salvus*, May I perish. Cic. *In media arma ruāmus*, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, scelestē*; Do not touch me.... Ter. *Faciāt quod lubet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used, and sometimes the pluperfect; as, *Ipse vidērit*, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Fuisset*, Be it so, or It might have been so. Virg. *Vidērint sapientes*. Cic.

*Ne* is commonly employed as a negative, rather than *non*, in this use of the subjunctive.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by some other tense of that mood; as, *Tantum moneo hoc tempus si amisēris, te esse nullum unquam magis idoneum reperturum*; I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.



(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* or *fuërim*, *essem* or *fuissem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura*, He does not doubt that Troy would soon be destroyed. Cic. See *Periphrastic Conjugations*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *dus*, but by *futurum sit* or *esset*, with *ut*; as, *Non dubito quin futurum sit, ut laudetur*; I do not doubt that he will be praised.

REM. 8. The imperfect, when relating to past or present time, and also the pluperfect, both when they stand alone, and in conditional clauses with *si*, &c., as also after *utinam* and *O! si*, imply the *non-existence* of the action or state denoted by the verb; the present and perfect do not decide in regard to its existence; as,

*Nollem datum esse*, I could wish it had not been paid. Ter. *Nolim datum esse*, I hope it has not been paid. *Utinam jam adesset*, I wish he were now present. Cic. *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, I hope that thing is a pleasure to him. Id.

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodosis*.

1. In conditional clauses with *si*, *ni*, *nisi*, *quasi*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, and *etiamsi*, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in the *protasis*, when the action or state supposed does not or did not exist. The same tenses are used in the *apodosis*, to denote that, if the action or state expressed in the *protasis* did exist, or had existed (the contrary of which is implied), another action or state would exist or would have existed; as,

*Nisi te satis incitatum esse confiderem, scriberem plura*; Did I not believe that you had been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does believe*, and therefore *will not write*. *Ea si de me uno cogitasset, nunquam illius lacrimis ac precibus restituissem*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in the *protasis*, when the action or state supposed may, or may not exist, or have existed; as,

*Omnia brevia tolerabilia esse debent, etiamsi maxima sint*, ..... although they may be very great. Cic. *Etsi id fugerit Isocrates, at non Thucydides*; Although Isocrates may have avoided that..... Id.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, &c.; as, *Si vales, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirabatur quid esset, ex hoc tempore miretur potius*..... Id.

REM. 2. The subjunctive after *si*, &c., implies a greater degree of contingency than the indicative. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action, the indicative must be used, if its exist-

ence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hîc sis, aliter sentias*; If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulêrint*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atridæ*, i. e. *si possint* Virg.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quò*, *quîn*, and *quomînus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituêrem, scripsi*; I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnandum, quò fiant acriôres*; They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut*, denoting a result, often relates to *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmôdi*, &c., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic erit gratum, ut grâtius esse nihil possit*; That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita hebes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Neque tam erâmus amentes, ut explorâta nobis esset victoria*. Id. *Tantum indulsit dôlôri, ut eum piêtas vincêret*. Nep. *Ita and tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epaminondas fuit disertus, ut nemo ei par esset*. Id.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying *although*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*; Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens*, *it remains*, *it follows*, &c.; as,

*Quî fit, ut nemo contentus vivat*? How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic contigit, ut patriam ex servitute in libertatem vindicâret*. Nep. *Sequitur igitur, ut etiam vitia sint parca*. Cic. *Reliquum est, ut egomet mihi consulam*. Nep. *Restat igitur, ut motus astrôrum sit voluntarius*. Cic. *Extremum illud est, ut te orem et obsecrem*. Id.

To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases:—*fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, occurrit, contingit, evenit, usu venit, rarum est, sequitur, futurum est, reliquum est, relinquitur, restat, superest, caput est, extremum est, opus est, est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting *willingness*, *unwillingness*, or *permission*; also after verbs of *asking*, *advising*, *reminding*, &c., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

*Quid vis faciam?* What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Incedite feriant sine litora fluctus.* Virg. *Tentes dissimulare rogat.* Ovid. *Id sinas oro.* Id. *Se suadere, dixit, Pharnabazo id negotii daret.* Nep. *Accedat oportet actio varia.* Cic. *Fac cogites.* Id.

Verbs of willingness, &c., are *volo, nolo, malo, permitto, patior, sino, licet, veto, &c.*; those of asking, &c., are *rogo, oro, moneo, jubeo, mando, peto, precor, censeo, suadeo, oportet, necesse est, &c.*

REM. 5. *Ne* (lest) expresses a purpose negatively; as,

*Cura ne quid ei desit.* Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Ut ne* are frequently used for *ne*; as, *Opera detur, ut judicium ne fiant.* Id.

REM. 6. *Ne* is often omitted after *cave*; as,

*Cave putes,* Take care that you do not suppose. Cic.

REM. 7. After *metuo, timeo, vereor*, and other expressions denoting fear, *ne* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that not*; as,

*Milo metuēbat, ne a servis* indicaretur, Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Pavor erat, ne castra hostis* aggrederetur: Liv. *Illā duo vereor, ut tibi* possim concedere, I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *ne* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nominem.* Liv.

REM. 9. *Quò* (that, in order that), especially with a comparative; *non quò*, or *non quòd* (not that, not as if), followed by *sed*; and *quominus* (that not), after clauses denoting hindrance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Adjuta me, quò id* fiat facilius; Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. *Non quò republicā sit mihi quicquam carius, sed desperatis etiam Hippocrates* vetat adhibere medicinam. Cic. *Non quòd sola* ornent, *sed quòd* extellant. Id. *Neque recusavit, quò minus legis* pœnam subiret. Nep.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo, nullus, nihil....est, reperitur, inventur, &c.*; *vix est, agrè reperitur, &c.*; as, *Messanā nemo venit, quin vidērit, i. e. qui non vidērit*; No one came to Messina who did not see. Cic. *Nego ullam picturam fuisse....quin* conquiesceret, i. e. *quam non, &c.* Id. *Nihil est, quin malè* narrando possit depravari. Ter.

2. For *ut non*, after *non dubito, non est dubium, facere non possum, fieri non potest; nihil, haud multum, haud procul, or minimum....abest; nihil prætermitto, non recuso, temperare mihi non possum, vix, agrè, &c.*; as,

*Facere non possum quin ad te* mittam, i. e. *ut non, &c.* Cic. *Ego nihil prætermisi, quin Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione* avocarem. Id. *Prorsus nihil* abest *quin* sim miserimus. Id. *Quis igitur dubitet quin in virtute* divitiæ positæ sint? Id. *Ego vix teneor quin* accurrā. Id.

§ 263. 1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam, uti, and O! si*; as,

*Utinam minus vitæ cupidī fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached

to life! Cic. *O si solita quicquam virtutis adesset!* Virg. The tense is determined by § 260, II. REM. 8.

2. *Quamvis*, however; *licèt*, although; *tanquam, quasi, ac si, ut si, velut si, veluti*, and *ceu*, as if; *modò, dum*, and *dummòdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis i le felix sit*, However happy he may be. Cic. *Veritas licèt nullum defensorem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Me omnibus rebus, juxta ac si meus frater esset, sustentavit*; He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Omnium honesta negant dummodo potentiam consequantur*; They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id. *Dum mihi animum reddas*. Hor.

*Quamvis* (although) has commonly the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fueris suavor, approbator certè fuisti*. Cic. Sometimes also the indicative; as, *Felicem Nioben, quamvis tot funèra vidit*. Ovid.

*Quamquam* (although), in Tacitus, and in other later writers, is sometimes used with the subjunctive.

3. After *antèquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive; but when one thing is declared to be necessary or proper to precede another, the subjunctive is used; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu natus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos, priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent*. Virg. *Priusquam incipias, consulto opus est*; Before you begin, there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. *Dum, donec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic veniret, locum relinquere noluit*; He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil puto tibi esse utilius, quàm operiri quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit*. Id.

5. *Quum* or *cùm*, when it signifies a relation of time, takes the indicative; when it denotes a connection of thought, the subjunctive; as,

*Cùm est allatum ad nos, graviter commotus sum*; When it was reported to us, I was greatly moved. Cic. *Cùm tot sustineas et tanta negotia, peccem, si morer tua tempora, Cæsar*; Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time, Cæsar. Hor.

REMARK 1. *Cùm*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *since* or *although*. It is sometimes used as equivalent to *quòd* (because), and then takes the indicative; as, *Cùm te semper dilexi, necesse est ut sim totus vester*. Cic.

REM. 2. In narration, *cùm* is usually joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, even when it relates to time; as,

*Gracchus, cùm rem illam in religionem populo venisse sentiret, ad sendum retulit*. Cic. *Alexander, cùm interemisset Clitum, viz manus a se abstinuit*. Id.

In most instances of this construction, the event denoted by the subjunctive seems to relate to that expressed in the clause on which the subjunctive depends, not only in regard to *time*, but also as, in some sense, a *cause*. In general, when the attention is directed chiefly to the *time* at which an action occurred, the indicative in any tense may be used; when to the *action* itself, the subjunctive; as, *Hæc cum scriberem jam tum existimabam ad te orationem esse perlata*. Cic. *Cum sciret Clodius iter necessarium Miloni esse Lanuvium, Romæ subito ipse profectus est*. Id.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. 1. When the relative *qui* follows *tam*, *adeo*, *tantus*, *talis*,—or *is*, *ille*, or *hic*, in the sense of *talis*,—and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quis est tam Lynceus qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut in tantis*....; Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble in such darkness. Cic. *Talem te esse oportet, qui ab impiorum civium societate sejungas*. Id. *At ea fuit legatio Octavii, in qua periculi suspicio non subesset*, i. e. *ut in ea*. Id. *Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui fratris carissimi mœrore non movear*, i. e. *ut ego non movear*. Id.

Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quæ studiis in magnum certamen excesserit*, i. e. *talis ut*....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. So *quis sum*, for *num talis sum*; as, *Quis sum, cujus aures ladi nefas sit?* Sen.

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quanquam* *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis egregii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*; Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pumice postulas, qui ipsus sitiatis*. Plant. *Nihil molestum quod non desideres*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sine molestia tua fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. *Sestius non venerat quod sciam*....so far as I know. Id.

4. The relative, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, &c.; I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Audita voce præconis majus gaudium fuit quam quod universum homines caperent*; Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a demonstrative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui cum absentem accusarent*;

The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes iter faciant.* Cæs.

So with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsacum ei (Themistocli) rex dondrat, unde vinum sumeret, i. e. ex quâ or ut inde, &c.* Nep.

6. A relative clause after an indefinite general expression, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Fuerunt eâ tempestate, qui dicèrent*; There were some at that time who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetentior famæ videretur*; There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Erunt, qui existimari velint.* Cic. *Si quis erit, qui perpetuam orationem desideret, alterâ actione audiet.* Id. *Venient legiones, quæ neque me inultum, neque te impunitum patiantur.* Tac. So after *est*, in the sense of "there is reason why;" as, *Est quod gaudeas*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam domum.* Id. *Si est quod desit, ne beatus quidem est.* Cic.

The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, adest, præsto sunt, existunt, exoriuntur, inveniuntur, reperiuntur, si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus veniet, &c.*

The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant*, There are resources whence this may be done. Ter. *Est ubi id isto modo valeat.* Cic.

The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi, &c.*, when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orationes quædam, quas Menocrito dabo.* Cic.

The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui*, even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos juvat.* Hor.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*; There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*; There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor.* Id. *Nihil est, quod non alicubi esse cogatur.* Id. *In foro vix decimus quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat.* Plaut. *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mali, quod non dixeris?* Ter.

General negatives are *nemo, nullus, nihil, unus non, alius non, non quisquam, vix ullus, nec ullus, &c.*, with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quenquam, &c.* Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis, quantus, uter, ecquis, numquis, an quisquam, an aliquis, quotus quisque, quotus, &c.*, with *est*; *quot, quàm multi, &c.*, with *sunt*.

1. The same construction is used after *non est, nihil est, quid est, numquid est, &c.*, followed by *quod, cur, or quare*, and denoting "there is no reason why," "what cause?" "is there any reason?" as, *Quod timeas, non est*; There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas.* Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.

So after *non habeo, or nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accussem.* Cic. *Nihil habeo, quod scribam.* Id.

NOTE. The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions

included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses what is intended to be *affirmed* of the subject of the antecedent clause; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*; There is no one who is ignorant, *i. e.* no one is ignorant. Cic. *So Sunt, qui hoc carpant*; There are some who blame this, *i. e.* some blame this. Vell.

If the relative clause is to be construed as a *part of the logical subject*, it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum est*; Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Peccavisse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*; I think I have erred in having left you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*; You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art thoroughly. Id. *O fortunâte adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homërum præcônem invenëris*! Id.

Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut, quippe, or utpöte—qui*, is used; generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Convivia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nisi raro venisset*. Cic. *Neque Antonius procul abërat, utpöte qui magna exercitû sequeretur*. Sall.

9. After *dignus, indignus, aptus, and idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando impëret, dignus esse*; He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Pompeius idoneus non est, qui impetret*. Id. *Et rem idoneam, de quâ quëratûr, et homines dignos, quibuscum disseratur, putant*. Id.

NOTE. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus libertate dignus fuit, cui nostra salus cara non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

10. A relative clause, after *unus* and *solus*, restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hæc est una contentio, quæ adhuc permansërit*; This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Voluptas est sola, quæ nos vocet ad se, et alliceat supërta naturâ*; Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper habiti sunt fortissimî, qui summam imperiî potirentur*; Those have always been considered the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Ut quisque maximè laboraret locus, aut ipse occurrëbat, aut aliquos m'itebat*. So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, *Si qui rem malitiosius gessisset, dedecus existimabant*. Cic.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

A question is indirect when its substance is stated without the interrogative form ; as,

*Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit* ; The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Credibile non est*, quantum scribam ; It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rogitas* ? Do you ask me who I am ? Plaut. *Nec quid scribam, habeo* ; Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Doce me*, ubi sint dii ; Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Quam pridem sibi hereditas venisset, docet*. Id. *Nunc accipe*, quare desipiant omnes. Hor. *Id utrum illi sentiant, an verò simulent, tu intelliges*. Cic. *Quæro, num tu senatui causam tuam permittas*. Id. *Vides, ut altâ stet nive candidum Soracte*. Hor. *Nescit, vilâne fruatur, an sit apud manes*. Ovid.

All interrogatives may be thus used in indirect questions ; as,

*Quantus, qualis, quot, quotus, quotuplex, uter ; quis, qui, cujus ; ubi, quò, unde, quò, quorsum, quamdiu, quamludum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quomobrem, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut, quàm, quantopère, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, unnon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is sometimes used in such constructions ; as, *Vide avaritia quid facit*. Ter.

REM. 2. In double questions, the first may be introduced by *utrum, num*, or the enclitic *ne* ; and, in such case, the second is usually introduced by *an* ; as, *Multum intèrest, utrum laus imminuatur, an salus deseratur*. Cic. The first question is sometimes without any interrogative particle, and the second is then introduced by *an* or *ne* ; as, *Nunc habeam filium, necne, incertum est*. Ter.

REM. 3. *Dubito an, haud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative ; as, *Dubito, an hunc primum omnium ponam* ; I am inclined to place him first of all. Nep.

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *aliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb ; as, *Lucus, nescio quo casu, nocturno tempore incensus est*. Nep.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive ; as,

*Quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum, quàm esse aliquod numen, quo hæc regantur* ? For what can be so clear as that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed ? Cic. *Illud sic fere definiti solent, decorum id esse, quod consentaneum sit hominis excellentiæ*. Id. *Audiam quid sit, quodd Epicurum non probes* ; I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussit ut, quæ venissent, naves Eubæum peterent*. Liv.



A clause, thus connected to a preceding dependent proposition, is sometimes called an *intermediate* clause.

To this rule belongs the construction of the *oratio obliqua*, or indirect discourse, that is, the relating the words or sentiments of another, not in the exact form in which they were expressed or conceived, but in that of narration. Thus, Cæsar said, "I came, I saw, I conquered," is direct,—Cæsar said, that he came, saw, and conquered, is indirect discourse.

2. In the *oratio obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quinctilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *oratio directa*, the latter of the *oratio obliqua*;—*Antonius inquit, "Ars eorum rerum est, quæ sciuntur;"* Antonius says, "Art belongs to those things which are known." Cic. *Antonius inquit, artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur;* Antonius says, that art belongs to those things which are known. Quinct.

So, *Socrâtes dicere solebat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes;* Socrates was accustomed to say, that all are sufficiently eloquent in that which they understand. Cic. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret aruspex, aruspicem cum vidisset.* Id. *Negut jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnare cum hoste.* Id. *Indignabuntur ibi esse imperium, ubi non esset libertas.* Liv. *Itaque Athenienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile qui dem (esse) putaverunt.* Cic.

REMARK 1. When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *oratio directa*, to denote liberty, power, &c., the same remains in the *oratio obliqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariomistus respondit, quum vellet, congrederetur;* To this Ariovistus replied, that he might meet him when he pleased. Cæs. In the *oratio directa*, this would be *congrederiâris*. So, *Is ita cum Cæsare agit, ne aut suæ magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret.* Id. See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *oratio obliqua*, either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the words or sentiments of a third person are stated in *oratio obliqua*, *sui* and *suus* are commonly used in references made to him. See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *oratio directa* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Imperavit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret statuas;* Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood

of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to ; as,

*Socrātes accusātus est, quōd corrupēret iuventutē* ; Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocābant, cuius ad solenne venissent* ; They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. Here the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. The indicative, in such cases, would render the writer responsible for the truth of the allegation.

In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico, puto, arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner ; as, *Quum enim, Hannibālīs permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quōd se oblitum nescio quod dicēret*,.....because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used, in the second person, to express a command, an exhortation, or an entreaty ; as,

*Nosce te*, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento serbare mentem*, Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ades*, Come hither. Virg. *Pasce capellus, et potum pastas age, et inter agendum occursdre capro caveto*. Id.

The plural form in *tote* is rare ; as, *Facitōte*. Ovid. *Petitōte*. Id.

The third person expresses only a command, and is chiefly used in enacting laws ; as,

*Virgīnes vestāles in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve* ; as,

*Ne tanta animis assuescīte bella*. Virg. *Ne crede colorī*. Id. *Homīnem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito*. Cic.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty. See § 260, II., REM. 6. Sometimes also the future indicative. See § 259, REM. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple imperative, *fac* with the subjunctive is used ; as, *Fac erudias*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. So *noli* with the infinitive, and *cave* with the subjunctive, with or without *ne* ; as, *Noli putāre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cave existimes*, Do not think. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 268. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected ; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere acriù cessabit turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victorem victæ succubuisse queror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senibus audisse dicébant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Audiet cives acuisse ferrum iuventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—*Negat sese verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audiërat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimabitis nihil horum vos visuros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. The present infinitive is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *memini*; but the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me memini dicere*, I remember *my saying* this. Cic. *Teucrum memini Sidonâ venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg.

So, also, with *recordor*;—*Recordor longè omnibus unum anteferre Demosthënem*. Cic.

When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *memini*; as, *Meministi me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

REM. 2. On the other hand, the perfect sometimes occurs where, in English, the present would be used; as, *Fratres tendentes Pelion imposuisse Olympo*,....endeavoring to place.... Hor. *Magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg.

REM. 3. The present is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Destne fata deùm flecti sperare*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojano a sanguine duci audiërat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum dare dixit*, i. e. *se daturum esse*. Ter.

REM. 4. Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futurum esse* or *fore*, followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Nunquam putavi fore, ut supplex ad te venirem*; I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspikor fore, ut infringatur hominum improbitas*. Id.

This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed.

The perfect participle with *fore* is also used to denote a future action in the passive voice; as, *Quoddã vidëret nomïne pacis bellum involutum fore*. Cic.

REM. 5. The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labores suscepturum fuisse, si iisdem finibus gloriam meam quibus vitam essem terminaturus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, &c. Cic. *Ut perspicuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta acerbitas injuriæ fuisset, nunquam illos in eum locum progressuros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

*Futurum fuisse*, also, with *ut* and the subjunctive, is used in this sense;

as, *Nisi nuncii essent allati, existimabant plerique futurum fuisse, ut oppidum caperetur*,.....that the town would have been taken. Cæs. This form is necessary in the passive voice.

REM. 6. The perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional clause; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vitam filiae suae cariorum fuisse, si libera ac pudica vivere licitum fuisset*; (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv.

This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary when the verb has no future participle; as, *Si tenuisset Slesichorus modum, videtur proximus æmulari Homërum* potuisse; He seems to have been able, i. e. it seems that he would have been able, to rival Homer, if, &c. Quinct.

§ 269. The infinitive mood, in Latin, is often used, not indefinitely, but with a subject of its own in the accusative case. See § 239.

The infinitive *passive* of a neuter verb, like the third person singular of that voice, is sometimes used without a subject; as, *Vides toto properari litore*, You see that haste is made..... Virg. See §§ 209, REM. 3, (2), and 239, REM. 3.

The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, REM. 5.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb; as,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet me conservari*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Nunquam est utile peccare*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Æquum est, peccatis veniam poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. See § 201, IV.

REMARK 1. In such constructions, when no subject is expressed before the infinitive, an indefinite word for person or thing, or a reflexive pronoun, is commonly implied.

Thus, in the last two examples, as the propositions are true in their widest application to moral beings, *quenquam* may be understood before *peccare* and *reddere*.

REM. 2. The infinitive is often the subject of a proposition when the substantive verb with an adjective forms the predicate, and also when the verb in the sentence is impersonal, or is used impersonally, either in the active or passive voice; as, *Cui verba dare difficile est*. Ter. *Mendacem memorem esse oportet*. Quinct. *Neque est te fallere cuiquam*, sc. *pote*. Virg. *Non enim me hoc jam dicere pudebit*. Cic. See § 209, REM. 3, (5.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licere cuiquam in nave capillos deponere*. Ter.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may depend upon a verb; as,

*Hæc vitare cupimus*, We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poetas omnino non conor attingere*, I do not attempt to read the poets at all. Id. *Sententiam valere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spero te valere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun; as,

*Dignus amari*, Worthy to be loved. Virg. *Audax omnia perpēti*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare*, Skilful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum*. Hor. *Indocilis pauperiem pati*. Id. *Lenis recludere*. Id. See § 213, REM. 4, (1.) *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Iniit consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id.

REM. 2. The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in vehement interrogations or exclamations; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam, nec posse Italiâ Teucrorum avētere regem?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking, nor be able.....? Virg. *Me misērum! te in tantas ærumnas propter me incidisse!* Cic.

So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said, saying, &c.*, are often omitted; as, *Id facile effici posse*, sc. *dixit*. Nep. *Quem signum datūrum fugientibus?* Curt.

REM. 3. The infinitive is sometimes omitted; as, *Ei provinciam Numidiam populus jussit*, sc. *dari*. Sall. In the compound forms of the infinitive, *esse* and *fuisse* are commonly omitted; as, *Sed de eâ re legatos missuros dixerunt*, sc. *esse*. Nep.

§ 271. The infinitive without a subject is only used after certain verbs, especially such as denote desire, ability, intention, or endeavor; as,

*Cupio, opto, volo*, and its compounds; *possum, queo, nequeo, valeo*; *cogito* (to design), *decerno* (to determine), *juro, conjuro, propōno, statuo*, and *constituo* (to determine), *studeo* (to intend); *conor, pugno* for *conor, tendo, contendo, tento, &c.*; to which may be added *audeo, consuesco, insuesco, cæpi, debeo, destino, desisto, disco, doceo, dubito, habeo* for *possum* or *debeo, incipio, intermitto, nescio, paro, parco, prætermitto, recuso, soleo, vereor*, and the passives *audior, cogor, credor, dicor, existimor, feror, negor, nuntior, perhibeor, putor, trador, and videor*.

The poets, also, use the infinitive after *fuge* and *parce* for *noli*, and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo, horreo, metuo, memini, obliviscor, quero, reformido, refugio, tempéro, timeo*, and some others. It is also used, in a few instances, after verbs of motion, to denote a purpose; as, *Introitū vidēre*, He came in to see. Ter. *Non te frangere persēquor*. Hor.

REMARK 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with a conjunction; and with some of them, this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne dicēret, recusavit*. Cic.

REM. 2. The passives in the above list may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. The former construction is more common, especially with *videor*. Thus we may say, *Mater Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, or *Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniæ vixisse*; The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living.....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living..... Nep.

REM. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

Sometimes, even when the subject remains the same, the infinitive takes a pronoun as its subject, especially after *cupio, volo, malo, conor, and studeo*; as, *Cupio me esse clementem*. Cic. *Omnis homines, qui sese student præstare ceteris animalibus*. Sall.

§ 272. The infinitive with the accusative depends on verbs and phrases which denote either the exercise of the senses or intellectual powers, or the communication of thought to others; as,

*Videbat, id sine rege Persarum non posse fieri*; He saw that that could not be done without the aid of the king of the Persians. *Nep. Credunt se negligi*, They believe themselves to be neglected. *Ter. Ea te ex literis cognoscere arbitror*, I suppose that you know those things by means of letters. *Cic. Me in ejus potestate dixi fore*. *Id. Affirmant militum jacere animos*. *Liv. Sæpe venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere, satis te tibi vixisse*. *Cic. Eam pugnam ad Perusiam pugnātam (esse), quidam auctores sunt*. *Liv.*

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodilum violātum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocodilum violasse*. *Cic.*

REM. 2. After verbs of the above significations, the conjunction *that*, in English, is not represented in Latin by a corresponding conjunction, as *ut* or *quod* followed by the indicative or subjunctive; but, instead of that construction, the subject following *that* is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The infinitive with the accusative is sometimes translated by a similar form in English, but usually either by the indicative or potential, according to its connection; as,

*Te tuā virtute frui cupimus*; We wish you to enjoy, or that you may enjoy.... *Cic. Miror te ad me nihil scribere*...that you do not write... *Id. Audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*...that she would not be given.... *Ter.*

REM. 4. As the present infinitive denotes unfinished action, and relates to the time of the verb on which it depends, it expresses unfinished *past* action, and corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a past tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem facere*, He said that Cæsar was doing. *Cæs.* In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a past tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem fecisse*, He said that Cæsar had done.

REM. 5. The present infinitive after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as,

*Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. *Virg. Arma rutilare vident*. *Id. Videbis collucere faces*. *Id. Nec Zephyros audis spirare*? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? *Id. Sæpe hoc majores natu dicere audivi*. *Cic.*

In the following example, the infinitive and present participle are used in the same construction:—*Medium video discedere cælum palantesque polo stellas*. *Virg.*

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, &c. (see § 262); but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive.

1. The subjunctive is commonly used after verbs of *endeavouring, aiming, and accomplishing*.

Such are *facio, efficio, perficio, studeo; id, hoc or illud ago; opëram do, meditör, curo, in animum induco, consilium capio, nitor, contendo, video* (to take care), *nihil antiquius habeo quàm, &c.*; as, *Eloquentiâ perfecit, ut auxilio sociörum Lacedæmonii privarentur*. Nep.

*Facio* with *ut* and the subjunctive is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invitus quidem feci, ut L. Flaminium e senätu ejicerem, for invitus ejeci*. Cic.

*Facio*, when used of a writer, in the sense of *introduces or represents*, is sometimes joined with a participle; as, *Lælium et Scipiönem facimus admirantes*. Cic. *Efficio*, in the sense of *proving*, takes an infinitive, as, *Dicæarchus vult efficere animos esse mortâles*. Id.

2. Verbs signifying *to request, to demand, to admonish, to advise, to commission, to encourage, to command*, and the like, when the purpose of the request, &c., is to be expressed, usually take after them the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*; as,

*Te non hortor solüm sed etiam oro, ut totâ mente in rempublicam incumbas*. Cic. *Monet, ut suspiciönes vitet*. Cæs. *Voluseno mandat, ut ad se revertatur*. Id.

*Nuntio, scribo*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc nunc non ut facias, sed ut te facere et fecisse gaudeas, scribo*. Cic. *Misit qui diceret, ne discederet*. Nep.

*Jubeo* commonly takes the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive, especially when used absolutely, or without the person being expressed to whom the command is given; as, *Jubete istos exire foras*. Ter. *Sive jubebat ut facerem quid*. Hor.

3. In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, or duty; as,

*Virginiius unum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiebat: respicerent tribunäl homines castellum omnium scelërum*. Liv.

On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used, after a verb of asking, commanding, &c., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Orâbat ne se ut parricidam libëräm aversarentur: sibi vitam filiæ suâ cariörem fuisse si ....* Liv. See § 266, 2, REM. 1.

4. Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the accusative and infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

Such are *volo, nolo, malo, opto, permitto, patior, sino, licet, oportet*, and *necesse est*; as, *Optâvit ut in currum patris tolleretur*. Cic. *Quis Antonio permisit, ut partes faceret?* Id.

An infinitive passive without a subject, is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit relictas, sc. esse ancillas*. Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum tamen oportuit, sc. esse*. Id. *Non putâbant de tali viro suspiciönibus oportere judicari*. Nep.

Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. After verbs denoting *joy* or *grief*, *surprise* or *wonder*, either the accusative with the infinitive, or *quod* with the indicative or subjunctive, may follow.

Such are *gaudeo*, *delector*, *gratum est mihi*, *doleo*, *angor*, *indignor*, *miror*; as, *Angor animo non armis egere rempublicam*. Cic. *Gaudeo tibi jucundas meas esse litteras*. Id. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi*. Id.

After *doleo*, *gaudeo*, and other neuter verbs, the clause containing the accusative with the infinitive is not the object of the verb, but of some preposition understood, as *propter*, &c. See § 232, (2.)

6. The particle *that*, in English, is represented in Latin by *quod*, when a demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc*, *illud*, *istud*, &c., precedes, or is to be supplied. In such case, *quod* is followed by the indicative; as, *Illud quoque nobis accedit incommodum*, *quod M. Junius hoc tempore abest*. Cic.

*Quod*, in the beginning of a sentence, in the sense of *as to*, especially in the epistolary style, is followed by an indicative. See § 206, (14.) *Quod* (that) is generally explanatory, or denotes a cause; *ut* (that), a purpose or result.

NOTE. The construction of the infinitive resembles that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender.

Thus, like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, *Totum hoc philosophari displicet*. Cic. See § 205, REM. 8.

It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cujus non dimicare fuit vincere*. Val. Max.

It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, REM. 3, (5,) and 220, REM. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accepisse meas litteras gaudeo*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Videre est perspicere aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, REM. 1.

It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Præter plorare*. Hor. See § 235.

It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audito regem in Siciliam tendere*. Sall.

It sometimes, also, denotes a purpose, like a participle in *dus*; as, *Loricam donat habere viro*. Virg.

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Quidam*, poetæ nominatus; A certain one, called a poet. Cic. *Catulorum oblita leana*, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Faventes rebus Carthaginiensium*, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sidera palmas*. Virg. *Accusatus rei capitalis*. Cic. *Omina doctus*. Stat. *Casus abies visura marinos*. Id. *Carituri arbore montes*. Ovid. *Parcendum est teneris*. Juv. *Utendum est ætate*. Ovid.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in refer-



ence to the time of the verb with which they are connected ; as,

*Simul hoc dicens attollit se. Virg. Tum ad Thræeam in hortis agentem missus est. Tac. Turnum fugientem hæc terra videbit. Id. Qui missus ab Argis Italâ consederat urbe. Id. Lamia munere adilitatis perfunctus, petit præturam. Cic. Jussas cum fide pœnas luam. Hor. Juvénis medius moritûrus in hostes irruit. Virg. Peritûrus injecit sese in agmen. Id. Illu tibi ventûra bella expedit. Id.*

REMARK 1. The present participle sometimes denotes that which is about to be done ; as, *Interclusit hiems, et terruit Auster euntes, ....* as they were on the point of going. Virg.

REM. 2. The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose ; as, *Cunctis num lecti navibus ibunt, orantes veniam, et templum clamore petebant, ....* to sue for favor.... Id.

REM. 3. The perfect participle passive often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive ; as, *Notus evolat picæd tectus caligine ....* covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid.

REM. 4. *Habeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination, forms a periphrasis, instead of the verb of the participle ; as, *Clodii animum perspectum habeo, cognitum, judicatum ; for persperi. Do, reddo, curo, and facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles ; as, *Missam iram faciet, for mittet. Ter.*

REM. 5. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used to supply the place of a verbal noun in *io* or *us* ; as, *Ante Romam conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Post genus hominum natum. Id. Post sacra constituta. Id.*

REM. 6. The future active participle often denotes intention or purpose ; as,

*Ad Jovem Hammônem pergît consulturus de origine sua ;* He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult him about his origin. Just.

REM. 7. The participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose, when joined with verbs signifying to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake, &c.

Such are *do, trado, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, condâco, loco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinquo, curo, deosco, rogo ;* as, *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trucidandos Cethægo. Cic. Quod utendum acceperis, reddito. Id.*

REM. 8. The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of necessity or propriety ; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of possibility ; as,

*Is venerandus a nobis et colendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Delenda est Carthago*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc speranda fuerunt. Virg. So with est used impersonally ; as, Utrum pace nobis an bello esset utendum. Cic.*

Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification ; as, *Facta narrâbas dissimulanda tibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Bruto prius hæc hujus maxime conservandi generis et nominis. Cic.*

REM. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action. See § 275, II.

For the dative of the agent after participles in *dus*, see § 225, III.

3. Participles are often employed instead of conditional, explanatory, adversative, and other dependent clauses; as,

*Curio, ad focum sedenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt*. Cic. *Tridui viam progressi, rursus revertētur*, for, *cum progressi essent*. Cæs. *Plura locuturos abire nos iussit*, .... when we were going to say more.

If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257.

NOTE. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amavisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, REM. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Metus parendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effëror studio patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pelendi consulatū gratiā*. Sall. *Venit ad recipiendum pecunias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *dus*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by an infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occupandi*; A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*, .... of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas erudiendi gratiā missus*, .... for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante domandum*. Virg.

REM. 3. As the infinitive is used as the subject or object of a verb, so the gerund-supplies the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative, of a verbal noun of similar meaning.

II. Instead of the gerund of an active verb with its object in the accusative, the participle in *dus* is often used, the object taking the case in which the gerund would have been, and the participle agreeing with it; as,

*Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Reparandarū classium causā* (Suet.), for *reparandi classes*. *Perpetiendū labōri idoneus*. Colum. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnantā Capuā duces Romanos abstrahere*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, and *potior*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc utenda idonea*. Ter. *Iustitiæ fruendæ causâ*. Cic. *In omni munere fungendo*. Id.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendi ratio* (Cic.), not *alicujus*. *Artem et vera et falsa dijudicandi* (Id.), not *verborum dijudicandorum*.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ablative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used:—

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or adjectives; as,

*Amor habendi*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet natura, ut aliarum omnium rerum, sic vivendi modum*. Cic. *Barbæra consuetudo hominum immolandorum*. Id. — *Venandi studiosi*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insuetus navigandi*. Cæs. *Peritus civitatis regendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are, *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cupiditas*, *facultas*, *gratia*, *locus*, *licentia*, *modus*, *occasio*, *otium*, *potestas*, *spes*, *studium*, *tempus*, *venia*, *vis*, *voluntas*.

(2.) The adjectives which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire*, *knowledge*, *remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, *peritus*, *imperitus*, *insuetus*, *certus*, *rudis*, &c. See § 213, REM. 1, (3.)

(3.) The genitive plural sometimes depends upon a gerund in *di*, instead of being joined with the gerundive; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*. Cic. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*. Plaut. *In castra venturum sui purgandi causâ*. Cæs. This construction is most common with pronouns.

(4.) The gerund in *di*, for the gerundive, is sometimes found also with pronouns of the singular number and feminine gender; as, *Quoniam tui videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Ego ejus videndi cupidus rectâ consequor*. Ter. In these examples, *tui* and *ejus* are feminine.

(5.) The gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency*, without any noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat*. Sall. *Causa* or *gratia* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed; as, *Maneat provincialibus potentiam suam tali modo ostentandi, sc. facultas*. Tac. *Cum haberem in animo navigandi, sc. propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used especially after adjectives signifying *usefulness* or *fitness*, and also after verbs, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta emporeticu est inutilis scribendo*. Plin. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumphari accipiundo, nec scribæ referendo sufficerent*. Liv. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Id.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently de-

pendis are, *studeo* ; *intentus sum* ; *impendo*, *consumo* or *instumo*, *tempus* ; *opëram do*, *desum*, *sum* (signifying *to serve for*, *to be adequate to*), *facio*, and *sufficio*.

The dative after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on an adjective understood. See § 227, REM. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office ; as, *Decemviri legibus scribendis*. Liv. So, *Comitia creandis decemviris*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative, than by the dative ; as, *Pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta*. Cic.

(4.) Instead of the gerund or gerundive after adjectives, the poets sometimes use the infinitive, in imitation of the Greek construction ; as, *Audax omnia perpëti*, i. e. *ad omnia perpëtienda*. Hor. See § 270, REM. 1.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad* or *inter*, and sometimes *ante*, *circa*, or *ob* ; as,

*Ad pœnitendum propërat, qui citò judicat*. Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum*, While drinking. Just. *Ad castra facienda*. Cic. *Ob absolvendum*. Id.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, means, or instrument ; as,

*Aristotëlem non deterruit a scribendo*. Cic. *Ex assentando*. Ter. *Non videor a defendendis hominibus discedëre*. Cic. *Crescit eundo*. Virg. *Rem querunt mercaturis faciendis*. Cic. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficias pleniorë*. Id.

This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum* ; as, *Pro vapulando*. Plaut. *Cum loquendo*. Quinct.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs ; as,

*Non Graiis servitum matrïbus ibo*, I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Eurypylum citatum oracula Phœbi mittimus*, We send Eurypylus to consult the oracle of Apollo.. Id.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the *purpose* of the motion ; as,

*Te id admonitum venio*. Plaut. *Cubitum discessimus*. Cic. *Ire deiectionis monumenta regis*. Hor. So after participles ; as, *Patriam defensum revocatus*. Nep. *Spectatum admissi*. Hor.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion ; as, *Do filiam nuptum*. Ter. *Vos ultum injurias hortor*. Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the supine is formed ; as, *Ne bonos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum iuit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; thus, "I suppose (that it is going by me), i. e. that I am going to see Brutus."

REM. 4. Instead of the supine in *um* after a verb of motion, a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad*, or in the genitive with *causâ* or *gratiâ*, also the subjunctive with *ut* or *qui*, and a present or future participle active, may be used to express a purpose. For the gerund and gerundive, see § 275; for the subjunctive with *ut*, § 262,—with *qui*, § 264; and for participles, § 274.

The infinitive, also, is sometimes used by the poets, instead of the supine, to express a purpose. See § 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful*, *agreeable*, *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitu atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Locus aditu difficilis*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis*, *arduus*, *asper*, *bonus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *sedus*, *gravis*, *honestus*, *horrendus*, *incredibilis*, *jucundus*, *injucundus*, *memorabilis*, *pulcher*, *rarus*, *turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; as,

*Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice. In many cases, however, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. It seems not to differ in its nature from other verbal nouns in *us*, of the fourth declension. In the expressions, *Obsonātu redeo* (Plaut.), *Cubitu surgat* (Cato), *obsonātu* and *cubitu*, though following verbs, are by some considered as supines, by others as nouns depending on a preposition understood.

The supine in *u*, even when it follows adjectives, might, as a verbal noun, be referred to § 250.

REM. 4. Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, celerim cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proseriptione dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint.

The construction with *ad* and the gerund, or with *sum* and the infinitive, is used by the best writers after *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive. See § 264, 9.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs ; as,

*Benè mones*, You advise well. Ter. *Fortissimè urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Malè narrando*. Ter. *Longè dissimilis*. Cic. *Valdè benè*. Id.

REMARK I. Adverbs sometimes, also, modify nouns ; as,  
*Homèrus planè oràtor*. Cic. *Admòdum puella*. Liv. *Nihil admòdum*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adverbs may also modify adjective pronouns, and prepositions ; as,

*Planè noster*. Cic. *Paulò ultra eum locum*. Cæs.

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation ; as,

*Non parère noluit*, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignòra mali*, Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Nec verò non omni supplicio digni*. Cic. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. So, *nonnulli*, some ; *nonnunquam*, sometimes.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative ; as,

*Nemo non videt*, Every one sees. Cic. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative ; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat* ; Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. Two negatives, however, though connected as above specified, sometimes strengthen the negation ; as, *Neque ille haud objiciet mihi*. Plaut. *Jura te non nocitùrum homini nemini*. Id. Especially are *neque*, *nec*, and sometimes *non*, thus used after a negative, instead of *aut* or *vel* ; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*. Virg. *Neminem, non re, non verbo, non vultu dentque offendi*. Cic. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque manceps factus est*. Nep.

REM. 6. *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non modò* or *non solùm*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem* ; as,

*Mihì non modò irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impùne licet*, .... not only not to be angry, but.... Cic. *Cùm senatui non solùm juvare rempublicam, sed ne lugere quidem liceret*. Id.

*Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modò* when followed by *sed* or *verùm* with *etiam* ; as, *Qui non modò ea futura timet, verùm etiam fert, sustinetque præsentia* ; Who not only does not fear.... Cic.

REM. 7. *Facilè*, in the sense of *undoubtedly*, *clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import ; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facilè doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facilè princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Adverbs are sometimes equivalent to phrases containing an antecedent and a relative, both of which would be in an oblique case.

When thus resolved, the antecedent will be found to modify some word in its own clause, and the relative to serve both as a connective for a subsequent clause, and a modifier of some word contained in it. Hence, such adverb serves the threefold purpose of a connective and a double modifier; as,

*Ed postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsides poposcit*; After Cæsar came thither, he demanded hostages (Cæs.); i. e. *Obsides poposcit post id tempus, in quo ed pervēnit*; He demanded hostages after the time at which he came thither; where *post id tempus* modifies *poposcit*, and *in quo* serves as a connective, and also modifies *pervēnit*.

Frequently, for greater precision, an additional adverb is introduced, which, in the resolution of the phrase, stands in, and sometimes supplies, the antecedent clause; as, *Ed postquam pervēnit, tum obsides poposcit, ... then* he demanded hostages; i. e. *Obsides poposcit tempore, post id tempus in quo ed pervēnit*; He demanded hostages at a time subsequent to the time at which he came thither. So, *Cum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur* (Cic.), i. e. *Detrimentum eo tempore accipitur, in quo venit calamitas*.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, and some others, connect words which are in the same construction.

Words are in the same construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, the same moods of verbs, and adverbs and prepositions relating to the same word; as,

*Pulvis et umbra sumus*, We are dust and shade. Hor. *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*. Cic. *Aggère jacto turribusque constitutis*. Cæs. *Clarus et honoratus vir*, An illustrious and honorable man. Id. *Cæsar Remos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus*. Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem colui et dilexi*. Cic. *Cum triumphum egeris, censorque fueris, et obieris legatus*. Id. *Cum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi poneret*. Cæs. *Adeas animo, et omitte timorem*. Cic. *Ea videre ac perspicere potestis*. Id. *Graviter et copiose dixisse dicitur*. Id. *Cum fratre an sine*. Id.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the copulative conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *etiam*, *que*, *nec*, *neque*, the disjunctives *aut*, *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *vel*, *neve*, *neu*, and also *quàm*, *præterquam*, *nisi*, *an*, *nempe*, *quavis*, *nedum*, *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, and, in general, such as, when used to connect clauses, do not imply a dependence of the following upon the preceding clause. To these may be added the adverbs of likeness, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c.; as, *Nec census, nec clarum nomen avörum, sed probitas magnos ingeniumque facit*. Ovid. *Philosophi negant quenquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapientem*. Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*. Id.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et reipublicæ interest*. Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro*. Id. (See §§ 221 and 254.) *In Mettii descendat judicis aures, et patris et nostras*. Hor. See § 211, REM. 3.

REM. 3. The above conjunctions connect not only single words, but clauses whose construction is the same; that is,

whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood ; as,

*Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes ;* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non coquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Ludi decem per dies facti sunt, neque res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut altâ stet nive candidum Soracte, nec jam sustineant onus silvæ laborantes, geluque flumina constitèrint acuto.* Hor. *Intelligitis et animum ei præsto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse.* Cic.

REM. 4. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by the above conjunctions ; as, *Disce nec invidias.* Pers.

REM. 5. The indicative and subjunctive may also be thus connected, if the clause of the latter is not dependent ; as, *Nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted ; as, *Cui Romæ domus, uxor, libèri, procurator esset.* Cic. *Quæ vitia sunt non senectutis, sed inertis, ignavæ, somniculosæ senectutis.* Id. *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit.* Id.

REM. 7. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly ; as, *Et pecunia persuadet, et gratia, et auctoritas dicentis, et dignitas, et postremo aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tamen tutum.* Cic. *Neque nata est, et æterna est.* Id. *Et tibi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. *Res ipsa aut inevitabit aut dehortabitur.* Id.

In like manner *nunc, . . . nunc, simul, . . . simul, partim, . . . partim, quâ, . . . quâ, tum, . . . tum, cum, . . . cum,* are used before words or clauses. *Tum, . . . tum* not only signify *both, . . . and,* but also *at one time, . . . at another time.* *Cum, . . . tum* generally give a greater emphasis to the latter word or clause, which is often increased by the addition of *verò, certè, præcipuè, imprimis, maxime, &c.* ; as, *Luxuria, cum omni ætati turpis, tum maxime senectuti fœdissima est.* Cic.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu*, rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed ; as, *Mars sive Mavors.*

REM. 9. *Ac* and *atque* signify *as* and *than* after adjectives and adverbs denoting similarity or dissimilarity ; as, *Similiter facis ac si me roges, . . . as if you should ask me.* Cic. *Me colit æquè atque patrônum suum, . . . as much as, . . .* Id. *Si aliter scribo ac sentio,* If I write otherwise than I think. Id. *Illi sunt alio ingenio atque tu.* Plaut.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF WORDS.

§ 279. 1. In English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject*, and the words which modify or limit it ; next, the *verb* and its modifiers ; then the *object* of the verb ; and last, *prepositions*, and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers ; then the *oblique cases*, and other words which depend upon or modify the verb ; and last of all, the *verb*.



This arrangement, however, though common, is by no means invariable, since it is a general rule, that *the most emphatic word in a sentence is to be placed first.*

### 3. Connectives generally stand at the beginning of a clause.

The following connectives may stand either in the first or second place, and sometimes in the third :—*equidem, ergo, etēnim, etiam, ideo, igitur, itaque, licet, namque, quia, quamquam, quippe, quoniam, saltem, sed, tamen, ut, utpote*, and some others.

*Autem, enim*, and *verò* (but), commonly occupy the second place, sometimes the third ; as, *Ille enim revocatus resistere cepit. Cæs. Ego verò vellem, affuisses. Cic.* The enclitics *que, ne, ve*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause.

*Quidem* and *quoque* are subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause ; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem verò Oppianicus. Cic. Me scilicet maxime, sed proxime illum quoque fefellissem. Id.*

In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word ; as, *Ne ad Catōnem quidem provocābo. Cic.*

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together ; as, *Homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt. Cic. Equites alii alio dilapsi sunt. Liv.*

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other ; as, *Dum tacent, clamant. Cic. Fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet. Id.*

6. *Inquam* and usually *aio*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted ; as, "*Non nosti quid pater,*" inquit, "*Chrysippus dicat.*" Hor. "*Quid,*" aio, "*tua crimina prodis?*" Ovid.

7. Adjectives are commonly placed after their nouns, especially when any thing is dependent on them. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both ; as, *Ulla officii præcepta. Cic. Tuum erga dignitatem meam studium. Id.*

Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus, medius, &c.* (see § 205, REM. 17), usually precede their nouns ; as, *Ea res. Cæs. His ipsis verbis. Cic. Media nox. Cæs. Reliqua Ægyptus. Cic.*

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected ; as, *Vir clarissimus. Cic. Vis tempestatis. Cæs.*

9. When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last ; as, *Marcus Tullius consul. Sall. Opes irritamenta malorum. Ovid.*

In the arrangement of names of persons, the *prænomen* stands first, next the *nomen*, third the *cognomen*, and last the *agnomen* ; as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.* The *prænomen* is usually denoted by a letter.

10. Oblique cases precede the words upon which they depend, but they follow prepositions ; as,

*Populi Romani laus est. Cic. Laudis avidi, pecuniæ liberales. Sall. Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus æquus. Sen. Monumentum ære perennius. Hor. Hanc tibi dono do. Ter.—Ad meridiem spectans. Cic. Extra periculum. Id.*

Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last ; as, *Incerta fortuna. Liv. Nec tibi plus cordis, sed minus oris inest. Ovid.*

When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by

which the noun is modified; as, *A primâ luce ad sextam horam.* Liv. *Ad privatum dolorem fuit luctuosum.* Cic. *Ad animi mei latitiam.* Id.

Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective, or a genitive by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullâ in re.* Cic. *Iustis de causis.* Id. *Suos inter æquales.* Id.

*Per*, in adjurations, is often separated by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro.* Ter.

*Tenus* and *versus* follow their cases, and sometimes other prepositions, especially when joined with relative pronouns.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jugurtha, ubi eos Africâ decessisse ratus est, neque propter loci naturam Circum armis expugnare possit, manui circumdat.* Sall. *Servire magis quâm imperare parâti estis.* Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir gravis et sapiens.* Cic. *Clarus et honoratus vir.* Id.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognoscas.* Sall. *Litteras ad te misi, per quas gratias tibi egi.* Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se, suus, qui*, ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque debet tueri.* Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suarum cuique rerum cura.* Id. *Severitas animadversionis infimo cuique gratissima.* Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Malè parâ malè dilabuntur.* Cic. *Nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissimè facturi essent.* Sall.—*Imperium facîle iis artibus retinetur, quibus initio partum est.* Id. *Sed maxime adolescentium familiaritates appetebat.* Id. *Non tam in bellis et in præliis, quâm in promissis et fide firmiorem.* Cic.

In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat.* Cic.

16. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise from a regard to the harmony of the sentence, from poetic license, or from the following rule, which sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding:—

The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse videtur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. In a regular period, the leading verb is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as,

Pausanias, *cum semianimis de templo elatus esset*, confestim animam efflavit; Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep. Ego, *si ab improbis et perditis civibus rempublicam tenēri vidērem, sicut et meis temporibus scimus, et nonnullis aliis accidisse acceptimus*, non modò præmiis, *quæ apud me minimum valent*, sed ne periculis quidem compulsus ullis, *quibus tamen moventur etiam fortissimi viri*, ad eorum causam me adjungērem. Cic.

2. If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same word depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, Antigonus, *quum adversus Seleucum Lysimachumque dimicaret*, in prælio occisus est. Nep.

So, also, when the word which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, Manlio, *quum dictator fuisset*, Marcus Pomponius tribunus plebis diem dixit. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, Latæ (sunt) deinde leges, *non solum quæ regni suspiciōne consulem absolvent, sed quæ adeo in contrarium vertent, ut popularem etiam facerent*. Liv.

The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after a long one.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. The analysis of a proposition, or of a compound sentence, consists in dividing it into the several parts of which it is composed, and pointing out their mutual relations.

In analyzing a proposition, it is first to be divided into its logical subject and predicate. See §§ 200, 201, 202.

If the logical subject consists of more than one word, its grammatical subject should be pointed out, and distinguished as simple or compound. See § 201, I. II.

When the grammatical subject is determined, the words which modify or limit it should next be specified, and then the words which modify them, and so on, until the logical subject is exhausted. See § 201, III.

In analyzing the logical predicate, the grammatical predicate should first be mentioned, then the words which modify or limit it, and their modifiers, until the logical predicate is exhausted. See § 202.

In analyzing a *proposition*, the rules for the agreement and dependence of words should be given, and likewise their various inflections.

The analysis of a *compound sentence* requires, first, its resolution into its several component propositions; and, secondly, their analysis in the manner before mentioned. See § 203.

In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses supplied. See § 203, 3.

When the compound sentence is resolved, the connection of the clauses should be pointed out, and whether they are dependent or independent. See § 203, 2. In either case, the connective words, if any, should be mentioned, and the connection, if any exists, with the preceding sentence. See § 203, 4. When clauses are dependent, the relation in which they stand should be explained, the character of the connectives stated, and the rules for the moods of the verbs given. See §§ 262—266 and 272, 273.

The following are examples of the analysis of simple and compound sentences:—

1. *Savius ventis agitatur ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

*Ingens pinus* is the logical subject; *savius ventis agitatur* is the logical predicate.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*: this is modified by *ingens*.<sup>a</sup>

The grammatical predicate is *agitatur*: this is modified by *savius*<sup>b</sup> and *ventis*.<sup>c</sup>

*Pinus* is a common noun,<sup>d</sup> of the second and fourth declension,<sup>e</sup> feminine gender,<sup>f</sup> and nominative case.<sup>g</sup>

*Ingens* is an adjective, of the third declension, and of one termination,<sup>h</sup> in the nominative case, feminine gender, agreeing with *pinus*.<sup>i</sup>

*Agitatur* is an active<sup>k</sup> frequentative<sup>l</sup> verb, of the first conj. from *agito*, derived from *ago* [Name its principal parts], formed from the 1st root, [Give the formations of that root.] It is in the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with *pinus*.<sup>m</sup>

*Savius* is an adverb, in the comparative degree, from *savè* or *saviter*,<sup>n</sup> derived from the adjective *savus*,<sup>o</sup> modifying the verb *agitatur*.<sup>p</sup>

*Ventis* is a common noun, of the second declension,<sup>q</sup> masculine gender,<sup>r</sup> in the plural number, ablative case.<sup>s</sup>

2. *Mithridates, duarum et viginti gentium rex, totidem linguis jura dixit*; Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

The logical subject is *Mithridates duarum et viginti gentium rex*.

The logical predicate is *totidem linguis jura dixit*.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridates*: this is modified by *rex*.<sup>t</sup> *Rex* is limited by *gentium*,<sup>u</sup> which is itself limited by *duarum* and *viginti*.<sup>v</sup> *Et* connects *duarum* and *viginti*.<sup>w</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 201, III. 3.

<sup>f</sup> § 29, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 187, II. 1.

<sup>q</sup> § 38.

<sup>t</sup> § 201, III. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 202, III. 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 201, IV. 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 209.

<sup>r</sup> § 46.

<sup>u</sup> & REM. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 202, III. 2.

<sup>h</sup> § 111.

<sup>n</sup> § 194.

<sup>s</sup> § 247.

<sup>v</sup> § 278.

<sup>d</sup> § 26.

<sup>l</sup> § 205.

<sup>o</sup> § 192, II.

<sup>p</sup> § 201, III. 1.

<sup>e</sup> § 99.

<sup>q</sup> § 141, I.

<sup>u</sup> § 277.

<sup>w</sup> § 201, III. 2.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*, which is limited by *jura*<sup>o</sup> and *linguis*,<sup>a</sup> and the latter by *totidem*.

*Mithridates* is a proper noun,<sup>b</sup> of the third declension,<sup>c</sup> masculine gender,<sup>d</sup> and nominative case.

*Rex* is a common noun, 3d dec.,<sup>e</sup> masc. gen.,<sup>d</sup> in apposition with *Mithridates*.

*Gentium* is a com. noun, 3d dec.,<sup>e</sup> fem. gen.,<sup>a</sup> in the genitive plural,<sup>f</sup> limiting *rex*.<sup>h</sup>

*Dudrum* is a numeral adj., of the cardinal<sup>i</sup> kind, in the genitive case, fem. gen., agreeing with *gentium*.<sup>m</sup>

*Et* is a copulative conjunction.<sup>n</sup>

*Viginti* is a cardinal numeral adjective indeclinable,<sup>i</sup> limiting *gentium*.<sup>m</sup>

*Dixit* is an active verb,<sup>o</sup> of the third conjugation,<sup>p</sup> from *dico* [Give the principal parts],<sup>q</sup> formed from the second root [Give the formations of that root], in the act. voice., ind. mood, perf. indefinite tense,<sup>r</sup> sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Mithridates*.<sup>s</sup>

*Jura*, a com. noun, 3d dec.,<sup>i</sup> neut. gen.,<sup>u</sup> plur. num., acc. case, the object of *dixit*.<sup>v</sup>

*Linguis*, a com. noun, 1st dec., fem. gen.,<sup>u</sup> plural num., ablative case.<sup>w</sup>

*Totidem*, an adj., indeclinable,<sup>y</sup> in the plural number, limiting *linguis*.

3. *Romāna pubes, sedāto tandem pavore, postquam ex tam turbīdo die serēna et tranquilla lux rediit, ubi vacuam sedem regiam vidit, etsi satis credēbat patribus, qui proximi stetērant, sublimem raptum procellā; tamen, velut orbitātis metu icta, mœstum aliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* Liv.

The preceding compound sentence constitutes a period,<sup>z</sup> and it may be resolved into the following clauses:—

1. *Romāna pubes tamen, velut orbitātis metu icta, mœstum aliquamdiu silentium obtinuit*,—which is the leading clause.<sup>aa</sup>

2. *sedāto tandem pavore,*

3. *postquam ex tam turbīdo die serēna et tranquilla lux rediit,*

4. *ubi vidit,*

5. *vacuam (esse) sedem regiam,*

6. *etsi satis credēbat patribus,*

7. *qui proximi stetērant,*

8. *sublimem raptum procellā.*

In the preceding clauses, the predicates are printed in Italics.

The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pubes*, which is limited by *Romāna* and *icta*. *Icta* is modified by *velut* and *metu*, which last is limited by *orbitātis*. The grammatical predicate of that clause is *obtinuit*: this is limited by *aliquamdiu* and *silentium*, which is itself limited by *mœstum*.

*Pubes*, a collective noun,<sup>bb</sup> 3d dec.,<sup>cc</sup> fem. gen.,<sup>dd</sup> sing. num., nom. case.

*Romāna*, a patial<sup>ee</sup> adj., of the 1st and 2d dec.,<sup>ff</sup> fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pubes*.<sup>gg</sup>

*Tamen*, an adversative conjunction,<sup>hh</sup> relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause,

a § 202, III. 2.	g § 77.	n § 198, 1.	t § 76.	v § 115, 3.	aa § 62.
b § 25.	h § 62.	o § 141.	u § 66.	z § 230.	ab § 104.
c § 73.	i § 83.	p § 149.	w § 229.	aa § 203, 3.	ac § 105.
d § 28.	k § 211.	q § 158.	x § 38, 41.	bb § 26.	ad § 205.
e § 78.	l § 117, 118.	r § 145, IV.	y § 247.	cc § 73.	ae § 198, 4.
f § 204.	m § 205.	s § 209.			

and denoting that the predicate of this clause is true, notwithstanding the concession made in that clause.

*Velut*, an adverb, modifying *icta*.<sup>a</sup>

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, 3d conj.<sup>b</sup> [Principal parts in both voices], fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pubes*.<sup>c</sup>

*Metu*, an abstract noun,<sup>d</sup> 4th dec.,<sup>e</sup> masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case.<sup>f</sup>

*Orbitâtis*, an abstract<sup>d</sup> noun, derived from *orbus*, 3d dec.,<sup>e</sup> fem. gen.,<sup>h</sup> sing. num., gen. case, limiting *metu*.<sup>i</sup>

*Obtinuit*, an active verb of the 2d conj.,<sup>k</sup> from *obtineo*, compounded of prep. *ob* and *teneo*!<sup>l</sup> [Give the principal parts, and the formations of the second root],<sup>m</sup> in the active voice, ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pubes*.<sup>n</sup>

*Aliquandiu*, an adverb, compounded of *aliquis* and *dîu*,<sup>o</sup> and limiting *obtinuit*.<sup>p</sup>

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d dec., neut. gen.,<sup>q</sup> sing. num., acc. case, the object of *obtinuit*.<sup>r</sup>

*Mastum*, an adj., 1st and 2d dec., neut. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.<sup>s</sup>

The 2d is a participial clause, equivalent to *quum pavor tandem sedâtus esset*.<sup>t</sup>

*Pavore*, an abstract<sup>d</sup> verbal<sup>u</sup> noun, from *paveo*, 3d dec.,<sup>u</sup> masc. gen.,<sup>v</sup> sing. num., abl. case, absolute with *sedâto*.<sup>w</sup>

*Sedâto*, a perf. part. pass., from the act. verb *sedo*, of the 1st conj.,<sup>x</sup> [Principal parts in both voices], masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case,<sup>y</sup> agreeing with *pavore*.<sup>aa</sup>

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, modifying *sedâto*.<sup>bb</sup>

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, modifying *obtinuit* and *rediit*, and serving to connect the first and third clauses.<sup>cc</sup>

The grammatical subject of the 3d clause is *lux*, which is limited by *serena* and *tranquilla*. The grammatical predicate is *rediit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *die*. *Die* is modified by *turbido*, which is itself modified by *tam*.

*Lux*, a com. noun, 3d dec.,<sup>dd</sup> fem. gen.,<sup>ee</sup> sing. num., nom. case.

*Serena*, an adj., 1st and 2d dec., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*.<sup>ff</sup>

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, connecting *serena* and *tranquilla*.<sup>gg</sup>

*Tranquilla*, like *serena*.

*Rediit*, a neuter verb, from *redeo*, compounded of insep. prep. *red*.<sup>hh</sup> and *eo*.<sup>ii</sup> [Prin. parts], ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *lux*.<sup>jj</sup>

*Die*, a com. noun, 5th dec.,<sup>kk</sup> masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case after prep. *ex*.<sup>ll</sup>

*Turbido*, an adj. agreeing with *die*. *Tam*, an adverb, modifying *turbido*.<sup>mm</sup>

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and, like *postquam*, a connective, and a double modifier. It connects the fourth clause to the first, and limits the predicates *vidit* and *obtinuit*.<sup>nn</sup>

a § 277.	i § 211.	r § 229.	x § 105.	AA § 182.
b § 158.	k § 149.	s § 205.	aa § 205.	ii § 209.
c § 205.	l § 189, 2.	t § 257, REM. 1.	bb § 277.	kk § 90.
d § 26.	m § 157.	u § 102, 1.	cc § 277, REM. 8.	ll § 241.
e § 87.	n § 209.	v § 70.	dd § 78.	
f § 247.	o § 193, 6.	w § 58.	ee § 62.	
g § 72.	p § 277.	x § 257.	ff § 278.	
h § 62.	q § 46.	y § 149.	gg § 196, 14.	

The subject of the 4th clause is the same as that of the first, with which it is connected; it is therefore omitted.<sup>a</sup>

The grammatical predicate of the 4th clause is *vidit*: this is limited by its object, which is the 5th clause.<sup>b</sup>

*Vidit*, an act. verb, 2d conj. [Principal parts and formation], act. voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *pubes* understood.<sup>c</sup>

The 5th clause has no connective. Its grammatical subject is *sedem*, which is limited by *regiam*. Its grammatical predicate is (*esse*) *vacuam*, the former being understood.<sup>d</sup>

*Sedem*, a com. noun, 3d. dec., fem. gen., sing. num., acc. case.<sup>e</sup>

*Regiam*, a possessive adj., derived from *rex*, agreeing with *sedem*.

*Vacuam*, an adj., agreeing with *sedem*.

The 6th clause is connected to the leading clause by the concessive<sup>f</sup> conjunction *etsi*, to which the adversative<sup>g</sup> *tamen* corresponds in the first clause.

Its subject is the same as that of the leading clause.

Its grammatical predicate is *credebat*, which is limited by *satis* and *patribus*.

*Credēbat*, a neut. verb,<sup>h</sup> 2d conj. [Principal parts, and formations of 1st root], act. voice, ind. mood, imperf. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *pubes* understood.

*Satis*, an adverb of degree<sup>i</sup> modifying *credebat*.<sup>j</sup>

*Patribus*, a com. noun, 3d dec.,<sup>k</sup> masc. gen.,<sup>l</sup> plur. num., dat. case, depending upon *credebat*,<sup>m</sup> and modified by the relative clause following.<sup>n</sup>

The 7th clause, which is connected by *qui*<sup>o</sup> to the preceding one, is introduced to show the situation of those senators at the time of the removal of Romulus.

*Qui* is its grammatical subject, and is a relative pronoun,<sup>p</sup> masc. gen., plur. num., agreeing with *patribus* understood.<sup>q</sup>

*Stetērant*, a neut. verb,<sup>r</sup> 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root<sup>s</sup> [Principal parts, and formations of 2d root], act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, 3d pers. plur., agreeing with *qui*.<sup>t</sup>

*Proximī*, an adj. of the superlative degree<sup>u</sup> [Compare it], 1st and 2d dec., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, and also modifying *stetērant*.<sup>v</sup>

The 8th clause has no connective. It depends on the verb *credebat*. Its subject is *eum*, i. e. *Romūlum* understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*) which is modified by *sublimem* and *procellā*.

*Raptum* (*esse*), an act. verb, 3d conj.<sup>w</sup> [Principal parts in both voices, and formations of 3d root in the passive], pass. voice, infin. mood, perf. tense with the meaning of plup., depending on *credebat*.<sup>x</sup>

*Sublimem*, an adj. of 3d dec. and two terminations,<sup>y</sup> masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *Romūlum* understood,<sup>z</sup> and also modifying *raptum esse*.<sup>aa</sup>

*Procellā*, a com. noun, 1st dec.,<sup>ab</sup> fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case.<sup>ac</sup>

---

<sup>a</sup> § 209, REM. 2. (1.)	<sup>s</sup> § 198, 4.	<sup>m</sup> § 28.	<sup>r</sup> § 206.	<sup>w</sup> § 272.
<sup>b</sup> § 229, REM. 5.	<sup>h</sup> § 142.	<sup>n</sup> § 223.	<sup>s</sup> § 165.	<sup>x</sup> § 109.
<sup>c</sup> § 209.	<sup>i</sup> § 191, REM. 5.	<sup>o</sup> § 201, III. 4.	<sup>t</sup> § 126, 1.	<sup>y</sup> § 205.
<sup>d</sup> § 270, REM. 3.	<sup>k</sup> § 277.	<sup>p</sup> § 203, 4.	<sup>u</sup> § 205, REM. 15.	<sup>z</sup> § 41.
<sup>e</sup> § 239.	<sup>l</sup> § 71.	<sup>q</sup> § 136.	<sup>v</sup> § 169.	<sup>aa</sup> § 247.
<sup>f</sup> § 198, 3.				

PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A syllable is either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

A long syllable requires double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tenebræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either natural or accidental;—natural, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; accidental, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēsūti* it is long by accident, being followed by two consonants.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established rules, or, in cases not included in the rules, by the *authority* of the poets.

5. The rules of quantity are either general or special. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *mēus*, *patrīe*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacta ridet. Ovid.*

*Ipe etiam eximia laudis succensus amore. Virg.*

So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*. See § 2. Thus,

*De nihilo nihil, in nihilum nil posse reverti. Pers.*

Exc. 1. *Fio* has the *i* long, when not followed by *er*; as, *fiunt*, *fiēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam fiunt, fieri quæ posse negabam. Ovid.*

It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fieret* (Ter.), *fieri* (Plaut.)



Exc. 2. *E* is long, before *i* in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension ; as, *faciēi*. Thus,

Non radii solis, neque lucida tela *diēi*. *Lucr.*

But it is short in *spēi*, and both long and short in *rei* and *fidei*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *āi* of the first declension ; as, *aulāi*, *pictāi*.

So also are *a* and *e* in proper names in *atus* or *etus* ; as, *Cātus*, *Pompetus*. Thus,

Æthereum sensum, atque *aurāi* simplicis ignem. *Virg.*

Accipe, *Pompēi*, deductum carmen ab illo. *Ovid.*

Exc. 4. *I* is common in genitives in *ius* ; as, *unius*, *illius*. Thus,

*Illus* et nitido stillent unguenta capillo. *Tibull.*

*Illus* puro destillent tempora nardo. *Id.*

But in *alterius* it is always short ; in *alius* always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of, *ēheu* is long ; that of *Diāna*, *Io*, and *ohe*, is common.

Exc. 6. In many *Greek* words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another ; as,

*āer*, *Achāta*, *Achelōus*, *dia*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and other words compounded with *laos*.

(1.) Words which, in *Greek*, are written with *ei* before a vowel, and in *Latin* with *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long ; as, *Ænēus*, *Alexandria*, *Cassiopēa*, *Clio*, *Dartus*, *elegia*, *Galatēa*, *Medēa*, *Mausolēum*, *Penelopēa*, *Thalīa*.

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from *Greek* proper names, have the *e* long ; as, *Cytherēus*, *Pelopēus*.

Exc. *Academia*, *chorea*, *Malea*, *platea*, and some patronymics and patrials in *ets*, have the penult common ; as, *Nerets*.

(2.) *Greek* genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e* ; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa* ;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the *Ionian* dialect ; as, *Cephēos*, *Plionēa*.

(3.) *Greek* words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel ; as, *Nāis*, *Minōis*, *Grātus*, *Nerētus*, *Minōtus*, *Machāon*, *Ixon*. But *Thebāis*, *Simōis*, *Phāon*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

NOTE 1. *Greek* words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long ; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short ; as, *Amythāon*, *-āōnis* ; *Deucalion*, *-ōnis*.

NOTE 2. *Greek* proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, always have the *eu* a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the *Latin* poets.

II. A diphthong is long ; as, *aurum*, *fānus*, *Eubēa*. Thus,

*Thesāuros* ignotum argenti pondus et *auri*. *Virg.*

Inferni<sup>que</sup> lacus, *Ætæque* insula *Circæ*. *Id.*

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel ; as, *præustus, præcûsus*. Thus,

*Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. Virg.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong, at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short ; as,

*Insulâ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.*

REMARK. *U*, followed by another vowel, is, in prosody, not considered as a diphthong ; as, *quâtio, quëror, æquôr, linguâ, sanguis*.

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long ; as, *altus* for *alius* ; *côgo* for *coâgo* ; *nîl* for *nihil* ; *jânior* for *jûvênior*. Thus, *Titÿre cõge pecus, tu post carecta latëbas. Virg.*

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position ; as, *ârmc, bëllum, âxis, gâza, mâjor*. Thus,

*Pâscere opôrtet oves deductum dicere cârmen. Virg.*

*Nec myrtûs vincet corÿlos ; nec laurea Phœbi. Id.*

*At nobis, Pâz alma, veni, spicamque teneto. Tibull.*

*Rara juvant : primis sic mâjor gratia pomis. Mart.*

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jugum* have *i* short before *j* ; as, *bijûgus, quadrijûgus*. Thus,

*Interea bijûgis infert se Lucâgus albis. Virg.*

REMARK. The vowel is long by position when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it ; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short ; as,

*Tolle moras ; semper nocuit differre parâtis. Lucan.*

*Ferte citi ferrum ; date telâ ; scandite muros. Virg.*

*Ne tamen ignoret, quæ sit sententiâ scripto. Ovid.*

A short vowel at the end of a word, before a double consonant or *j*, is not lengthened.

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common ; as, *agris, pharetra, volucris, poplites, cochlear*. Thus,

*Et primò similis volûcri, mox vera volûcris. Ovid.*

*Natum ante ora pâtris, pâtreui qui obtruncat ad aras. Id.*

*Nox tenëbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenëbras. Id.*

REM. 1. If the vowel is naturally long, it continues so ; as, *salabris, ambulâcrum*.

REM. 2. A mute and liquid render the preceding short vowel common only when they are such as may begin a Latin word, or a word derived from the Greek. In compound words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position ; as, *abluo, obruo, sublëvo, quamobrem*.

REM. 3. A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word.

REM. 4. In Latin words, a short vowel is rendered common only before a mute with *l* or *r*; but, in words of Greek origin, also before a mute with *m* or *n*; as in *Atlas*, *Tecmessa*, *Progne*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

§ 284. Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

*ānīmal*, *ānīmātus*, from *ānīma*; *gēmēbundus*, from *gēmēre*; *fāmīlia*, from *fāmīlyus*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

REM. 1. Derivatives from increasing nouns of the third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

*funēbris*, from *funēris*; *virgīneus*, from *virgīnis*; *salūber*, from *salūtis*.

REM. 2. In verbs, the derived tenses agree in quantity with the special root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam*, *mōvēbo*, *mōveam*, *mōvērem*, *mōve*, *mōvēre*, *mōvens*, *mōvendus*, from *mōv*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram*, *mōvērim*, *mōvissem*, *mōvēro*, *mōvisse*, from *mōv*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus*, from *mōtu*, the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

*Sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum* have the first syllable short, as if from *sōluo*, *vōluo*. So *gēnui*, *gēnitum*, as if from *gēno*; and *pōtui*, from *pōtis sum* (*possum*).

*Arātrum*, *simulācrum*, have their penult long, as derived from the supines *arātum* and *simulātum*; *monīmentum* and *inīitum* have their antepenult short, as derived from the supines *monītum* and *inītum*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēni*, *vidi*, *fēci*, from *vēnio*, *video*, *fācio*; *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, from *cādo*, *mōveo*, *video*. But,

(1.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi* (from *findo*), *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*.

The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283); as, *rūi*.

(2.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cītum* (from *cīeo*), *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *qūtum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, and *stātum*.

So also the obsolete *fūtum*, from *fūo*, whence comes *fūturus*.

Exc. 2. Reduplicated perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*cēcīni*, *tētīgi*, *dīdīci*, from *cāno*, *tango*, *disco*. But the second syllable is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrdi*, *tētēndi*.

*Cēdi* (from *cēdo*) and *pēdi* also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. The *o* in *pōsui* and *pōsitum*, is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 4. The *a* in *dā*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in the other parts of the verb.

Exc. 5. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third special root from which they are formed, it is long ; as, *cānatūrio* from *cānāta*, the third root of *cāno*. So *partūrio*, *estūrio*, *nuptūrio*.

Exc. 6. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third special root of the first conjugation, have the *i* short ; as, *clāmito*, *volūto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 7. Many other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive.

Such are,

*Dēni*, from *dēcem*.

*Fōmes* and } from

*Fōmentum*, } *fōveo*.

*Hūmanus*, from *hōmo*.

*Laterna*, from *lāteo*.

*Macēro*, from *māceo*.

*Lex* (*lēgis*), from *lēgo*.

*Mōbilis*, from *mōveo*.

*Rēgula*, } from

*Rex* (*rēgis*), } *rēgo*.

*Sēcious*, from *sēcus*.

*Sēdes*, from *sēdeo*.

*Sēmen*, from *sēro*.

*Stipendium*, from *stips*

(*stīpis*).

*Tēgula*, from *tēgo*.

*Vox* (*vōcis*), from *vōco*.

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive.

Such are,

*Dīcax*, from *dīco*.

*Dīsertus*, from *dissēro*.

*Dux* (*dūcis*), from *dūco*.

*Fīdes*, from *fīdo*.

*Frāgor*, } from

*Frāgilis*, } *frango*.

*Mōlestus*, from *mōles*.

*Nāto*, from *nātu*.

*Nōto*, from *nōtu*.

*Quāsillus*, from *quālus*.

*Sāgax*, from *sāgio*.

*Sōpor*, from *sōpio*.

*Vādum*, from *vādo*.

Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists ; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK. Some of these irregularities have, perhaps, arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbilis* may have been *mōvībilis* ; *mōtum*, *mōvītum*, &c.

Sometimes the vowel in the derived word becomes short by dropping one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position ; as, *dīsertus*, from *dissēro*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is short before another vowel, it is sometimes made long by the insertion of a consonant ; as, *hibernus*, from *hīems*.

The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming from *liquor* or *liqueo* ; as,

*Crassāque conveniunt liquidis, et liquida crassis. Lucr.*

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them ; as,

*dēfēro*, of *dē* and *fēro* ; *ādōro*, of *ād* and *ōro*. So *dbōrior*, *āmōveo*, *circūmēo*, *cōmēdo*, *enītor*, *prōdūco*, *sūbōrno*.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity ; as,

*concido*, from *cādo* ; *concido*, from *cādo* ; *erigo*, from *rēgo* ; *reclado*, from *clādo* ; *iniquus*, from *æquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds :—*agnitus* and *cognitus*, from *nōtus* ; *dejero* and *prjero*, from *jaro* ; *hōdie*, from *hōc die* ; *nihilum* and *nihil*, from *hīlum* ; *semisōpitus*, from *sōpio* ; *causidicus*, and other compounds ending in *dicus*, from *disco*.

Exc. 2. *Imbecillus*, from *bācillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambitus* has the penult long from *itum*, but the nouns *ambitus* and *ambitio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba*, *pronūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short ; but in *connubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs.

NOTE. It may be observed, that prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§§ 294, 295, and 297) ; those which end in a single consonant are short (§§ 299 and 301).

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short :—*prōcella*, *prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōpēro*, and *prōtervus*. In the following, it is common :—*procūro*, *profundo*, *propāgo*, *propello*, *propino*, and *propulso*.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short ; as, *prōphēta*, *prōlōgus*.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* and *se* are long ; as, *disūco*, *sēpare*. But *di* is short in *dirīmo* and *disertus*.

REM. 3. The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short ; as, *rēmitto*, *rētero*, *rēdāmo*. But in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. Except in prepositions, *a*, ending the first part of a compound word, is long ; *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*, are short ; as,

*mālo*, *quāpropter*, *trādo* (trans do) ; *nēfas*, *valēdico*, *hujuscēmōdi* ; *biceps*, *omnipōtens*, *signīfico* ; *hōdie*, *quandōquīdē*, *phī'ōsōphus* ; *ducenti*, *locūples*, *Trojūgēna* ; *Polūdōrus*, *Eurypylus*, *Thrasylbulus*.

Exc. 1. *A*. In *quāsi*, *eādem* when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short ; as, *catāpulta*, *hexāmēter*.

Exc. 2. *E*. The *e* is long in *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquando*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitia* ; *mēmīt*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *vēcors*, *vēsānus*, *venēficus*, and *videlicet*, (see § 295) ;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *semi* ; as, *sēdēcim*, *sēmemstris*, *sēmōdius* ; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE. The *e* in *videlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

*E* is common in some verbs compounded with *facio* ; as, *liquefacio*, *patefacio*, *rarefacio*, *labefacio*, *tepefacio*.

Exc. 3. *I*. (1.) The *i* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296) ; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *quantūvis*, *quantūcunque*, *tantūdem*, *unicuique*, *eīdem*, *reipublica*, *qualicunque*, *utrique*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without

altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *ludimagister*, *lucrifacio*, *siquis*, *agricultura*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tibicen* for *tibicen*, from *tibia* and *cano*. See § 283, 111.

(4.) *I* is long in *bigæ*, *quadrigæ*, *ilicet*, *scilicet*, *binus*, *trimus*, *quadrinus*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ubique* and *utroque*, the second in *ibidem*, and the first in *nimirum*, are long. In *ubicumque* and *ubivis*, as in *ubi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *biduum*, *triduum*, *meridies*, *quotidie*, *quotidianus*, *pridie*, *postridie*.

NOTE. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short, unless it comes from the diphthong *ei*, or is made long or common by position; as, *Callimachus*.

Exc. 4. O. (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando* (except *quandouidem*;) is long; as, *controuersia*, *introduco*, *retrouedo*, *quandouque*. *O* is long also in *alioquin*, *ceterouquin*, *utrouque*, *utroubique*.

(2.) *O* is long also in the compounds of *quo*; as, *quomodo*, *quocunque*, *quominus*, *quocirca*, *quouis*, *quouque*; but in the conjunction *quodque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omega* have the *o* long; as, *geometra*, *Minotaurus*, *lagopus*.

Exc. 5. U. The *u* is long in *Jupiter*, *judez*, and *judicium*. The final *u* in the former part of *usucapio* and *usuenio* is regularly long. See § 298.

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax*, *pacis*; *sermo*, *sermonis*.

The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular.

But *iter*, *supellex*, compounds of *caput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jecur*, have two; as,

*iter*, *i-tin-ē-ris*;                      *anceps*, *an-cip-i-tis*;  
*supellex*, *su-pel-lec-ti-lis*;      *jecur*, *je-cin-ō-ris*.

The double increase of *iter*, &c., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete *neminatives*, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itiner*, &c.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

<i>rex</i> ,	Gen. <i>re-gis</i> ,	D. and Ab. <i>reg-i-bus</i> .
<i>sermo</i> ,	— <i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,	— <i>ser-mon-i-bus</i> .
<i>iter</i> ,	— <i>i-tin-ē-ris</i> ,	— <i>it-i-ner-i-bus</i> .

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the in-

crement. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult ; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second ; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment in all the other cases is the same as in the genitive singular ; as, *sermōnis, sermōni, sermōnem, sermōne, sermōnes, sermōnum, sermōnibus*. *Bōbus*, or *būbus*, from *bos, bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them ; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions. See § 283.

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension are short ; as,

*gener, genēri ; satur, satūri ; tener, tenēri ; vir, vīri*. Thus,

*O puīri ! ne tanta animis assuescīte bella. Virg.*

*Monstra sinunt : genēros externis affīre ab oris. Id.*

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius*, see § 283, Exc. 4.

### INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long ; those in *e, i, u*, and *y*, are short ; as,

*animāl, animālīs ; audax, audācis ; sermo, sermōnis ; ferox, ferōcis, opus, opēris ; celer, celēris ; miles, militis ; supplex, supplicis ; murmur, murmūris ; cicur, cicūris*. Thus,

*Pronāque cūm spectent animālīa cetēra terram. Ovid.*

*Hēc tum multiplīci popūlos sermōne replēbat. Virg.*

*Incumbent genēris lapsi sarcire ruinas. Id.*

*Qualem virgineo demessum pollice florem. Id.*

*Asplce, ventōsi ceciderunt murmūris auræ. Id.*

### Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short ; as, *Annībal, Annibālīs*.

*Par* and its compounds, and the following—*anas*, *mas*, *vas* (*vādis*), *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *lar*, *nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short ; as, *Arabs*, *Arābis*.

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ādis* or *ātis*) increase short ; as, *poēma*, *poēmātis* ; *lampas*, *lampādis*.

4. The following in *az* increase short :—*abaz*, *anthraz*, *Ataz*, *Atraz*, *climax*, *colaz*, *coraz*, *dropaz*, *fax*, *karpaz*, *panaz*, *phylaz*, *smilaz*, and *styrax*.

### Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short ; as, *marmor*, *marmōris* ; *corpus*, *corpōris* ; *ebur*, *ebōris*. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ador* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron* ; as, *Aēdon*, *Aedōnis* ; *Agamemnon*, *Agamemnōnis*. *Sidon*, *Orion*, and *Egeon*, have the increment common.

3. In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, *o* is generally short ; as,

*Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*. So, *Senōnes*, *Teutōnes*, &c.

But the following have *o* long :—*Eburōnes*, *Lacōnes*, *Iōnes*, *Nasamōnes*, *Spassōnes*, *Vettōnes*, *Burgundiōnes*. *Britones* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *tor* increase short ; as, *Hector*, *Hectōris* ; *rhetor*, *rhetōris*.

5. Compounds of *pūs* (*πῶς*), as *tripus*, *Polypus*, and also *arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lepus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short ; as,

*scrobs*, *scrōbis* ; *inops*, *inōpis*. But it is long in the increment of *Cercops*, *Cyclops*, and *Hydrops*.

7. The increment of *Allobroz*, *Cappadox*, and *præcox*, is also short.

### Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en*, *enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment ; as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*. So, *Aniēnis*, *Neriēnis*, from *Anio*, &c.

2. *Hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*—also *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *rez*, and *verrez*—*plebs*, *seps*, and *halec*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aēr* and *æther*) increase long ; as, *magnes*, *magnētis* ; *crater*, *cratēris*.

### Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Verbals in *trix*, and adjectives in *ix*, increase long ; as, *victrix*, *victricis* ; *felix*, *felīcis*.



2. The following nouns in *iz* also increase long :—*cervix*, *cicātrix*, *cornix*, *coturnix*, *lodix*, *matrīx*, *perdix*, *phœnix*, and *radix*. So also *vibex* (*vibicis*).

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis*, increase long ; as, *delphin*, *delphīnis* ; *Salāmis*, *Salamīnis*.

4. The following nouns in *is* increase long :—*dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *Nesis*, *Quiris*, and *Samnis*. The increment of *Psophis* is common.

### Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis*, *uris*, and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the penult long ; as,

*palus*, *palūdis* ; *tellus*, *tellāris* ; *virtus*, *virtūtis*. But *intercus*, *Ligus*, and *pecus*, increase short.

2. *Fur*, *frux* (obs.), *lux*, and *Pollux*, increase long.

### Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis*, increase long ; as, *Phorcyn*, *Phorcynis* ; *Trachys*, *Trachynis*.

2. The increment of *bombyx*, *Ceyx*, and *gryps*, is long ; that of *Beoryx* and *sandyx* is common.

## INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER

§ 288. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment ; as, *sa* in *musārum*, *no* in *dominōrum*, *pi* in *rupium* and *rupibus*.

In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short ; as,

*bonārum*, *animābus*, *rērum*, *rēbus*, *generōrum*, *ambōbus* ; *sermonibus*, *lacūbus*. Thus,

*Appia*, *longārum*, *teritur*, *regīna mārūm*. *Stat.*

*Sunt lacrymæ rērum*, et mentem mortalia tangunt. *Virg.*

Atque alii, *quōrum* comœdia prisca *virōrum* est. *Hor.*

*Portūbus* egredior, *ventisque ferenibus* usus. *Ovid.*

## IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active ; as, *das*, *dā-tis* ; *doces*, *dā-cē-mus*.

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

a-mas,	mo-nes,	au-dis,
a-mā-mus,	mo-nē-tur,	au-di-tis,
am-a-bā-mus,	mon-e-rē-tur,	au-di-ē-bas,
am-a-ve-rā-mus.	mon-e-bim-i-ni.	au-di-e-bam-i-ni.

A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

3. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice may be supposed, formed regularly from the same root.

Thus the increments of *la-tā-tur*, *lat-a-bā-tur*, &c., are reckoned from the supposed verb *lato*, *latas*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*amāre*, *monēre*, *faciōte*, *volūmus*, *regēbāmini*. Thus,  
*Et cantāre pares, et respondēre parāti. Virg.*  
*Sic equidem ducēbam animo, rebarque futurum. Id.*  
*Cūque loqui potērit, matrem faciōte salutet. Ovid.*  
*Scinditur interea studia in contraria vulgus. Virg.*  
*Nos numēros sūmus, et fruges consumēre nati. Id.*

#### Exceptions in Increments in A.

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus*, *dābāmus*, *circumdāre*, *circumdābāmus*.

#### Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. *E* before *r* is short in the first increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the second increment in *bēris* and *bēre*; as,

*regēre* (infin. and imperat.), *regēris* or *regēre* (pres. ind. pass.), *regērem* and *regērer* (imp. subj.); *amabēris*, *amabēre*; *monebēris*, *monebēre*.

NOTE. *Velim*, *velis*, &c., from *volo*, have the *e* short, according to § 284.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*amavēram*, *amavērat*, *amavērim*, *monuērimus*, *rexēro*, *audivēritis*.

NOTE. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram* for *flēvēram*.

For the short *e* before *runt*, in the perfect indicative, as, *stetērunt*, see *Systole*, § 307

*Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long ; as, *petivi, audivi, quæsiuit, audivimus, audiveram*.

2. *I* is long in the penult of polysyllabic supines from verbs whose perfects end in *ivi* ; as, *petitum, quæsitum*. See § 284, REM. 2.

3. The first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *imus* of the perfect indicative, is long ; as,

*audire, audirem, venimus*, but in the perfect *venimus*. So in the ancient forms in *ibam, ibo*, of the fourth conjugation ; as, *nutribat, lenibunt* ; and also in *ibam* and *ibo*, from *eo*.

When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283 ; as, *audiunt, audiebam*.

4. *I* is long in *simus, sitis, velimus, velitis*, and their compounds ; as, *possimus, adsimus, malimus, nolimus*, and *nolito, nolite, nolitote*.

5. *I* in *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common ; as,

*videritis* (Ovid), *dixeritis* (Id.), *fecerimus* (Catull.), *contigeritis* (Ovid) ; *egerimus* (Virg.).

*Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb ; as,

*secutus, solutus, secuturus, soluturus*.

## RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES OF WORDS OF CERTAIN TERMINATIONS.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus, icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult ; as,

*amaracus, Ægyptiacus, academicus, rusticus, triticum, viaticum*.

Except *meracus, opacus* ; *amicus, apricus, anticus, ficus, lumbricus, mendicus, posticus, pudicus, umbilicus, vicus, picus*.

2. Words ending in *abrum, ubrum, acrum, ucrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult ; as,

*candelabrum, delubrum, laocæcrum, involucrum, veratrum, lucrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult ; as,

*cloaca, apotheca, lorica, phoca, lactuca*.

Except *alica, brassica, dica, fulica, mantica, pedica, pertica, scutica, phalarica, sublica, tunica, vomica* ; and also some nouns in *ica*, derived from adjectives in *icus* ; as, *fabrica, grammatica, &c.* So *mantica*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult ; as, *Atlantiades, Priamides*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *es* ; as, *Atreides*, from *Atreus* ; *Neoclides*, from *Neocles* ; except, also, *Amphiarausdes, Belides, Japetionides, Lycurgides*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achâis*, *Chrysêis*, *Minôis*. Except *Phocêis* and *Thebâis*. The penult of *Nereis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vado*, *cêdo*, *formido*, *rôdo*, *testûdo*, *altitûdo*. Except *solîdo*, *comêdo*. *unêdo*, *câdo*, *divîdo*, *êdo* (to eat), *spâdo*, *trepîdo*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it; as,

*callîdus*, *perfidus*; *ladus*, *nadus*. Except *fidus*, *infidus*, *nîdus*, *sîdus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*collêga*, *sâga*, *rûga*, *imâgo*, *caligo*, *arâgo*. Except *callîga*, *tôga*, *harpâgo*, *ligo*. *plâga*, (a region,) *fûga*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crinâle*, *mantêle*, *ancile*; *âles*, *mîles*, *prôles*; *annâlîs*, *crudêlis*, *civîlis*, *curâlis*.

Except verbals in *ilis*; as, *agîlis*, *amabîlis*;—adjectives in *atîlis*; as, *aquatîlis*, *umbratîlis*;—and the following; *dapsîlis*, *dactylîs*, *gracîlis*, *humîlis*, *parîlis*, *simîlis*, *sterîlis*, *indôles*, *sobôles*, *mugîlis*, *strigîlis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as, *phasêlus*, *querêla*, *prêlum*. Except *gêlus*, *gêlum*, *scêlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in *ilus*, and those in *ulus* and *ula* of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

*urceôlus*, *filiôla*, *tuguriolum*, *lectûlus*, *rationcûla*, *corcûlum*; *rutilus*, *garrius*, *fabûla*. Exc. *asilus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fâma*, *poêma*, *rîma*, *axiôma*, *plûma*. Exc. *anîma*, *côma*, *lacryma*, *victîma*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*levâmen*, *grâmen*, *crîmen*, *flûmen*, *jûmentum*, *atrâmentum*.

Except *tâmen*, *colûmen*, *hÿmen*, *elêmentum*, and certain verbals of the second and third conjugations; as, *docûmentum*, *regîmen*, *tegîmen*, &c.

14. Words ending in *imus* or *ymus* shorten the penult; as,

*anîmus*, *finîtmus*, *fortissîmus*, *maxîmus*, *thÿmus*.

Except *bîmus*, *lîmus*, *mîmus*, *optîmus*, *quadrimus*, *sîmus*, *trimus*, and two superlatives, *îmus* and *primus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *decûmus*, *optûmus*, *maxûmus*, for *decîmus*, &c.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

*râmus*, *rêmus*, *extrêmus*, *prômus*, *dûmus*, *pônum*, *volênum*.

Except *atômus*, *balsâmum*, *cinnâmum*, *dômus*, *glômus*, *hûmus*, *postûmus*, *thalâmus*, *tômus*, *calâmus*, *nêmus*.

16. Words in *na*, *ne*, *nî*, and *nîs*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lâna*, *arêna*, *carîna*, *matrôna*, *lûna*, *mâne*, *anemône*, *septêni*, *octôni*, *indînis*, *finîs*, *immûnis*.

Except *gēna*, *sīne*, *cānis*, *ānis*, *juvēnis* ; and the following in *ina*,—*bučina*, *domīna*, *fiscīna*, *femīna*, *fuscīna*, *lamīna*, *machīna*, *pagīna*, *patīna*, *sarcīna*, *truīna*. So *indīgēna*, *bēne*.

17. Adjectives in *inus*, derived from names of trees, plants, and stones, and from adverbs of time, shorten the penult ; as, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *crocinus*, *hyacinthīnus*, *adamantīnus*, *crystallīnus* ; *crastīnus*, *diutīnus* ; also *annotīnus*, *bombycīnus*, and *elephantīnus*.

Other adjectives and words in *inus* lengthen the penult ; as, *canīnus*, *binus*, *festīnus*, *peregrīnus*, *marīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *supīnus*.

Except *actīnus*, *astīnus*, *cophīnus*, *domīnus*, *earīnus*, *facīnus*, *fraxīnus*, *pampīnus*, *sīnus*, *terminus*, *geminus*, *circīnus*.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long ; as, *urbānus*, *serēnus*, *prōnus*, *mūnus*, *venēnum*.

Except *galbānus*, *mānus*, *oceānus*, *platānus*, *tympanum* ; *ebēnus*, *gēnus*, *tēnus*, *Vēnus* ; *bōnus*, *ōfus*, *sōnus*, *tōnus*, *thrōnus*, *ānus*, *lagdnum*.

19. Words ending in *pa* shorten the penult ; as, *alpā*, *nēpa*, *crīpa*, *metōpa*, *lūpa*. Except *ripā*, *cēpa*, *scōpa*, *cūpa*, *pūpa*.

20. Words in *aris* and *are* lengthen the penult ; as, *alāris*, *altāre*. Except *hilāris*, *canthāris*, *cappāris*, and *māre*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *e* is short ; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long ; as, *tempēro*, *celēro*, *quēror* ; *spīro*, *ōro*, *figūro*, *mīror*.

Except *spēro*, *fōro*, *mōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *satūro* ; and derivatives from genitives increasing short ; as, *decōro*, *murmūro*, &c ; also *pēro*, *sōror*.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short ; the other vowels are long ; as,

*mērus*, *hedēra*, *celērum* ; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mārus* ; *hāra*, *spīra*, *ōra*, *natūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *galērus*, *plērus*, *sērus*, *sevērus*, *vērus*, *pēra*, *cēra*, *panthēra*, *statēra*, *procērus*.

2. *barbārus*, *cammārus*, *camūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *hellebōrus*, *nūrus*, *phosphōrus*, *spārus*, *tōrus* ; also *amphōra*, *anchōra*, *cithāra*, *mōra*, *purpūra*, *philōra*, and *fōrum*, *suppārum*, *gārum*, *pārum*. So *cināra*, *pīrus*, *scārus*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult ; as, *fumōsus*, *perniciōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult ; as, *piētas*, *civītas*.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* shorten it ; as,

*oppiddātim*, *virtūtim*, *tribūtūtim* ; *acrīter*. Except *stātūtim*, *affātūtim*, *perpētūtim*.

26. Words in *atis*, *itis*, *otis*, and *eta*, lengthen the penult ; as, *vātes*, *penātes*, *vitis*, *mitis*, *caryōtis*, *Icariōtis*, *mēta*, *poēta*. Except *itis*, *pōtis*, *drapēta*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *etum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult ; as, *lupātum*, *arborētum*, *aconitum*, *verūtum*.

Except *frētum*, *defrūtum*, *pulpitum*.

28. Words ending in *tus* lengthen the penult ; as,  
*barbātus, grātus, bolētus, factus, crinitus, peritus, agrōtus, tōtus, argātus, hirsūtus.*

Except *cātus, lātus* (-*ēris*), *impētus, mētus, vētus, anhelītus, serōitus, spiritus, antidōtus, tōtus* (so great), *quōtus, arbūtus* ; adverbs in *itus*, and derivatives from supines with a short penult ; as, *habitus*. So *inclūtus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long ; as,  
*clāva, olīva, dives, nāvis, civis, papāver, pāvo, privo, ovum, prāvus, astivus, fugitivus.*

Except *avis, brēvis, grāvis, lēvis, ovis* ; *cāvo, grāvo, jūvo, lāvo, lēvo, ovo* ; *āvus, cāvus, fāvus, nōvus, fāvor, pāvor, nōvem*.

30. Words ending in *dex, dix, mex, nix, lex, rex*, lengthen the penult ; as,

*cōdex, jūdex* ; *lōdix, rōdix* ; *cīmez, pūmez* ; *jūnix* ; *īlex* ; *cārez, mūrez*. Except *cūlez, sīlez, rūmez*.

## II. ANTEPENULTS.

§ 292. 1. Adjectives in *aceus* and *aneus* lengthen the antepenult ; as,

*credāceus, testāceus, momentāneus, subitāneus.*

2. Numerals in *ginti, ginta, gies*, and *esīmus*, lengthen the antepenult ; as,

*vīginti, quadrāginta, quinquāgies, trigēsīmus.*

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short ; as,

*vinōlentus, fraudūlentus.*

4. A vowel before final *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium*, is long ; as,

*ardēne, lineā, cāneo, mūnia, pūnio, Favōnius, patrimōnium.*

Except *castānea, tinea, māneo, mīneo, mōneo, lēneo, ignomīnia, vēnia, līnio, lānio, vēnio* ;—and words in *cinium* ; as, *lenocīnium*. So *luscīnia*.

5. Words ending in *areo, arius, arium, erium, orius*, lengthen the antepenult ; as,

*āreo, cibārius, plantārium, dictērium, censōrius*. Except *cāreo* and *vārius*, also *impērium*.

6. Adjectives in *atīcus, atīlis*, lengthen the antepenult ; as,  
*aquātīcus, pluviātīlis*. Except some Greek words in *mātticus* ; as, *grammātticus*.

7. *I* before final *tudo* is short ; as, *altītūdo, longītūdo*.

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult :—

ba,	che,	il,	les,	yris,	dus, <sup>14</sup>	arus,	usus,
ca, <sup>1</sup>	de,	on, <sup>7</sup>	anes,	os, <sup>11</sup>	gus, <sup>15</sup>	erus, <sup>19</sup>	atus, <sup>20</sup>
la, <sup>2</sup>	le, <sup>5</sup>	o, <sup>8</sup>	enes,	bua,	lus, <sup>16</sup>	yrus,	itus, <sup>21</sup>
ena, <sup>3</sup>	pe, <sup>6</sup>	er, <sup>9</sup>	lia, <sup>10</sup>	cua, <sup>12</sup>	mus, <sup>17</sup>	asus,	otus, <sup>22</sup>
be,	re,	mas,	aris,	chus, <sup>13</sup>	phus, <sup>18</sup>	osus,	eus, <sup>23</sup> (monosyl.)
ce, <sup>4</sup>	al,	ras,					

*Exceptions.*

1. Marica, Nasica, Ustica.
2. Eriphyla, Messala, Philomela.
3. Alcmēna, Amphisibēna, Athēnæ, Cæsēna, Camēna, Cattiēna, Picēnæ, Sophēnæ, Murēna.
4. Berenice, Elyce.
5. Eriphyle, Neobule, Perimēle.
6. Eurōpe, Sinōpe.
7. Alēmon, Cythēron, Chalcēdon, Damasitōn, Iāson, Philēmon, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon, Polygiton, Polyphēmon, Anthēdon.
8. Carthago, Cupāvo, Theano.
9. Meleager.
10. Bessalis, Eumēlis, Juvenālis, Martialis, Phasēlis, Stymphalis.
11. Cercyros, Cotytos, Pharsalos, Seriphos, Peparethos.
12. Benacus, Caycus, Granicus, Mossynēci, Olympionicus, Stratonicus, Trivicus, Numicus.
13. Ophiucus. [cus.
14. Abydus, Andrōdus.
15. Cethēgus.
16. Ætolus, Cleobulus, Eumēlus, Gætulus, Hanālus, Iulus, Mnasyllus, Neobulus, Pactolus, Pompilus, Sardanapalus, Stymphālus, Timōlus, Thrasybulus, Mausōlus, Pharsalus.
17. Some in *dēmus* and *phēmus*; as, Acadēmus, Cheridemus, Euphēmus, Menedēmus, Philodēmus, Polyphēmus.
18. Seryphus.
19. Homērus, Ibarus.
20. Aratus, Cæratus, Torquatus.
21. Heraclitus, Hermaphroditus.
22. Buthrōtus.
23. Enipeus, Menæceus, Oileus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana, <sup>1</sup>	sa,	num, <sup>7</sup>	tas,	nus, <sup>12</sup>	urus,	etus, <sup>17</sup>
ina, <sup>2</sup>	ta, <sup>4</sup>	tum,	des, <sup>9</sup>	pus, <sup>13</sup>	esut, <sup>16</sup>	utus,
ona, <sup>3</sup>	tæ, <sup>5</sup>	or, <sup>8</sup>	tes, <sup>10</sup>	irus, <sup>14</sup>	isus,	ytus, <sup>18</sup>
yna,	ene, <sup>6</sup>	nas,	tis, <sup>11</sup>	orus, <sup>15</sup>	ysus,	vus.

*Exceptions.*

1. Sequāna.
2. Asīna, Mutīna, Proserpīna, Rasīna, Ruspīna, Sarsīna.
3. Axōna, Matrōna.
4. Dalmāta, Massagēta, Prochŷta, Sarmāta, Sostrāta.
5. Galātæ, Jaxamētæ, Lapŷthæ, Macētæ, Sauromātæ.
6. Clymēne, Helēne, Melpomēne, Nyctimēne.
7. Arimīnum, Drepanum, Peucedanum.
8. Numitor.
9. Miltiades, Pylades, Sotades, Thucydides; patronymics in *des*, (§ 291, 4,) and plurals in *ades*.
10. Antiphātes, Amodytes, Cerētes, Charītes, Eterētes, Eurybātes, Harpocrātes, Ichnobātes, Massagētes, Menecrātes, Socrātes, Anaxarētes.
11. Dereētis.
12. Apōnus, Acindōnus, Acyndīnus, Ambēnus, Apidānus, Batīnus, Cællinus, Chrysogōnus, Cimīnus, Comagēnus, Concānus, Dardānus, Diadumēnus, Durānus, Eridānus, Helēnus, Fusīnus, Fuscīnus, Illibānus, Libānus, Lycīnus, Messalīnus, Morīni, Nebrophōnus, Periclymēnus, Poppeānus, Rhodānus, Solīnus, Stēphanus, Telegō-

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| nus, Termīnus, Therīnus,<br>Vertūnus. Mycōnus.                                | Carpophōrus, Mastigophōrus,<br>Phosphōrus, Stesichōrus. |
| 13. Cēdīpus.  | 16. Ephēsus, Vogēsus, Volēsus.                          |
| 14. Lamīrus.  | 17. Iapētus, Taygētus, Venētus.                         |
| 15. Pacōrus, and those in <i>chorus</i><br>and <i>phorus</i> ; as, Bosphōrus, | 18. Ep̄ytus, Anytus, Eur̄ytus,<br>Hippolytus.           |

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, Exc. 6.

Alexandria, Alphēus, Achelōus, Achilleus, Achillea, Amphiarus, Amphion, Enēas, Arion, Alcioneus, Alceus, Anchiseus, Atlantēus, Æthion, Amineus, Amphigenia, Amythæon, Antiochia, Bioneus, Cymodocæa, Calliopæa, Cassiopæa, Cydonēus, Cæsareæ, Calaurēus, Chremætæon, Cle-antheas, Cytheræa, Deidamia, Didymæon, Doliciæon, Darius, Elei, Enyo, Eous, Echion, Elēus, Endymioneus, Erebeus, Erecthēus, Hyperion, Galatæa, Gigantēus, Heraclæa, Hippodamia, Hypetæon, Iolaus, Iphigenia, Ixion, Ilithyia, Imaon, Laodamia, Lycæon, Latōus, Lesbōus, Machæon, Mausoleum, Medæa, Menelaus, Mathion, Methion, Myrtōus, Orion, Orithyia, Orphēus, Ophyon, Pallantæum, Penēus, Penthésilæa, Phæbeus, Pandion, Protesilaus, Pyrenēus, Sardōus, Paphagæa, Poppæa, Thalia.

NOTE. *Eus*, in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Bridæus*, *Ceneus*, *Enipeus*, *Idomēneus*, *Macæreus*, *Menæceus*, *Metæreus*, *Orpheus*, *Penthesileus*, *Perseus*, *Theseus*. See § 283, Exc. 6, NOTE 2. But in those which in Greek are written εἰος (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erebeus*, *Erecthēus*, *Orphēus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A final.

§ 294. 1. A final, in words declined, is short; as, *musă*, *templă*, *capîtă*, *Tydcă*. Thus,

*Musă* mihi causas memōra; quo numīne læso..... *Virg.*

Exc. A final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as,

*Musă*, *fundă*; O *Ænēă*, O *Pallă*. The vocative *Anchisă* (*Æn.* 3, 475), also, has the final a long.

2. A final, in words not declined, is long; as, *amă*, *frustră*, *anteă*, *ergă*, *intră*. Thus,

*Extră* fortunam est quidquid donatur amicis. *Mart.*

Exc. A final is short in *ejă*, *iă*, *quă*, and in *pută*, when used adverbially. It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *triginta*, &c. In *postea*, it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphă*, *betă*, &c.



**E final.**

§ 295. *E* final is short; as, *natē, patrē, ipsē, currē, regērē, nempē, antē*. Thus,

*Incipē, parvę puer, risu cognoscērę matrem. Virg.*

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

*Calliopę, Tydidę, fidę*. So also *rę* and *dię*, with their compounds *quarę, hodię, pridę, postridię, quotidię*. In like manner Greek vocatives in *e*, from nouns in *es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillę, Hippomęnę*. The *e* is also long in the ablative *famę*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek neuters plural; as, *cetę, melę, pelągę, Tempę*.

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *docę, monę*;—but it is sometimes short in *cave, vale*, and *vide*.

Exc. 4. In monosyllables, *e* final is long; as,

*ę, mę, tę, sę, nę* (lest or not); but the enclitics *que, ne, ve, ce, &c.*, as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nequę, hujuscę, suaptę*.

Exc. 5. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions; as,

*placidę, pulchrę, valdę* for *validę, maximę*; but it is short in *benę, malę, infernę*, and *supernę*.

Exc. 6. *Ferę, fermę*, and *ohę*, have the final *e* long.

**I final.**

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dominę, fili, classę, docęrę, si*. Thus,

*Quid dominę facient, audent cüm talia fures. Virg.*

Exc. 1. *I* final is common in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi*, and *ubi*.

In *nisi, quasi*, and *cui*, when a dissyllable, it is also common, but usually short. In *utinam* and *utique*, it is short, and rarely in *uti*.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Palladı, Menoidı, Tethyi*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in Greek vocatives singular of the third declension; as, *Alexı, Daphnı, Parı*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *is, -entos*; as, *Simoi*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *si*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryadı, heroiı, Trodsın*.

**O final.**

§ 297. *O* final is common; as, *virgo, amo, quando*. Thus,

*Ergő metu capıti Scylla est inimica paterno. Virg.*  
*Ergő sollicitę tu causa, pecunia, vitę es! Prop.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dā, prō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dominō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

It is also long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, meritō, eō, quō*; to which may be added *ergō* (for the sake of).

REM. 1. The gerund in *do*, in the later poets, has sometimes *o* short; as, *vigilandō*. Juv.

REM. 2. The final *o* in *cito* is short: in *modo*, it is common, but short in its compounds; as, *dummodō, postmodō, &c.* It is also common in *adeo, ideo, postrēmo, sero*, and *vero*. In *illico, profecto*, and *subito*, it is found short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *immō*, and common in *idcirco, porro*, and *retro*.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in Greek nouns written with an *omēga*, is long; as, *Clio, Dido; Athō* and *Androgeō* (gen).

NOTE. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of or near the Augustan age; they, however, shorten it in *scio, nescio*, and *spondeo*. Later poets make the *o* short in many other verbs.

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dictū*. Thus,

*Vultū quo cælum tempestatesque serēnat. Virg*

Exc. *Indu* and *nenu*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *us* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentū*, for *contentūs*. See § 305, 2.

### Y final.

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Molŷ, Tiphŷ*. Thus,

*Molŷ vocant sup̄eri: nigrā radice tenētur. Ovid.*

*Y*, in the dative *Tetŷy*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

### B, D, L, N, R, T, final.

§ 299. 1. Final syllables ending in *b, d, l, n, r*, and *t*, are short; as, *āb, illūd, consūl, carmēn, patēr, capūt*. Thus,

*Ipse docet quid agam. Fas est et āb hoste docēri. Ovid.*

*Obstupuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achates. Virg.*

*Nomēn Arionium Sicūlas impleverāt urbes. Ovid.*

*Dum loquor, horrōr habet; parsque est meminisse doloris. Id.*

Exc. 1. *L*. *Sal, sol*, and *nil*, are long.

Exc. 2. *N*. *En, non, quin*, and *sin*, are long.

Exc. 3. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on*, written with an *omicron*), masculine accusatives in *an*, masculine or feminine accusatives in *en*, and genitives plural in *ōn*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Tūdn, splēn, Salāmin, Orīōn, Phorcyn; Ænēdn, Anchisēn, Calliōpēn, epigrammātōn.*

Exc. 4. R. *Ær, æther*, and nouns in *er* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*crāter, vēr.* So also *Iber*; but the compound *Celtiber* has its last syllable common.

Exc. 5. *Far, lar, Nar, par, cur, and fur*, are long.

REM. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, or by position; as, *aut, abit* for *abiit, amant.* See § 283, II, III, IV.

### M final.

2. Final *m*, with the preceding vowel, is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthipsis*, § 305, 2.

Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

*Quam laudas, plumā? cocto nūm adest honor idem.* Hor.

Hence, the final syllables of *cum* and *circum*, in composition, are short; as, *cōmēdo, circūmāgo.*

### C final.

3. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *āc, illuc.* Thus,

*Macte novā virtute, puer; sic itur ad astra.* Virg.

Exc. *Nec, donec, fac*, are short, and sometimes the pronouns *hic* and *hoc* in the nominative and accusative.

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as, es, and os*, are long; as, *piētās, amās, quies, monēs, honōs, virōs.* Thus,

*Hās autem terrās, Italique hanc littōris oram.* Virg.

*Si modō dēs illis cultus, similesque parātus.* Ovid.

*Nec nōs ambitio, nec amor nōs tangit habendi.* Id.

Exc. 1. AS. *As* is short in *andēs*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *adis* or *ados*, and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *Arcās, Pallās, herōds, lampādās.*

To these may be added Latin nouns in *as, ados*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiās.*

Exc. 2. ES. Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospēs, limēs, hebēs.*

But it is long in *abies, aries, Ceres, paries, and pes.*

*Es*, in the present tense of *sum*, and in the preposition *penes*, is short.

*Es* is short in Greek neuters, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos*; as, *cacoēthēs, Arcādēs, Troēs, Amazōnēs.*

Exc. 3. OS. *Os* is short in *compos, impos, and os (ossis).*

In Greek nouns, *os* is short in words of the second declension (except those whose genitive is in *o*), in neuters, and in genitives singular; as, *Iliōs Tyrōs* (but *Atiōs*); *chaōs, epōs, Pallādōs, Tethyōs.*

IS, US, and YS, *final*.

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short ; as, *turrīs, militīs, amābīs ; pectūs, bonūs, amābūs ; Capys, Telhys*. Thus,

*Non apīs inde tulit collectos sedūla flores. Ovid.*

*Seriūs aut citiūs sedem properābūs ad unam. Id.*

At *Capys*, et quorum melior sententia menti. *Virg.*

Exc. I. *IS*. *Is* is long in plural cases ; as,

*musīs, nobīs ; omniīs, urbiīs, for omnēs, urbēs ; quīs, for quēs or quibus.*

*Is* is long in nouns whose genitives end in *itis, ius, or entis* ; as, *Samnīs, Salāmīs, Simois*.

*Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation ; as,

*audīs, nescīs*. So also in the second persons, *fīs, is, sīs, vīs, velīs*, and their compounds ; as, *possīs, quamvis, malīs, nolīs, &c.*

*Ris*, in the future perfect tense, is common ; as, *vidērīs*.

In the nouns *glis* and *vis*, and the adverb *gratis*, *is* is long.

Exc. II. *US*. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grūs, rūš, plūs*.

*Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension (§§ 89, REM., and 283, III.) ; as,

*tellūs, virtūs, incūs ;—fructūs*. But *palūs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

*Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ou* (ous), whether in the nominative or genitive ; as, nom. *Amāthūs, Opūs, Œdipūs, tripūs, Panthūs* ; gen. *Didūs, Supphūs*. But compounds of *pus* (πouς), when of the second declension, have *us* short ; as, *polypūs*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse (except the anapaestic, and the Ionic *a minōre*) may be either long or short, at the option of the poet.

By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead ; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required ; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one :—

*Sanguineaue manu crepitantia concutit armā. Ovid.*

*Non eget Mauri jaculis, nec arcu. Hor.*

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables ; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

### 1. Of two Syllables.

*Spondee*, ..... two long ; as, ..... *fundant*.  
*Pyrrhic*, ..... two short ; as, ..... *Dēus*.  
*Trochee*, or *choree*, ..... a long and a short ; as, ..... *ārmā*.  
*Iambus*, ..... a short and a long ; as, ..... *ērānt*.

### 2. Of three Syllables.

*Dactyl*, ..... a long and two short ; as, ..... *cōrpōrā*.  
*Anapæst*, ..... two short and a long ; as, ..... *dōmīni*.  
*Tribrach*, ..... three short ; as, ..... *fācērē*.  
*Molossus*, ..... three long ; as, ..... *cōntēndant*.  
*Amphibrach*, ..... a short, a long, and a short ; as, ..... *āmōrē*.  
*Amphimæcer*, or *Cretic*, a long, a short, and a long ; as, ..... *cāstītās*.  
*Bacchius*, ..... a short and two long ; as, ..... *Cātōnēs*.  
*Antibacchius*, ..... two long and a short ; as, ..... *Rōmāntis*.

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

*Dispondee*, ..... a double spondee ; as, ..... *cōnflīxērunt*.  
*Proceleusmatic*, ..... a double Pyrrhic ; as, ..... *hōmīnībūs*.  
*Ditrochee*, ..... a double trochee ; as, ..... *cōmprōbāvīt*.  
*Diambus*, ..... a double iambus ; as, ..... *āmāvērānt*.  
*Greater Ionic*, ..... a spondee and a Pyrrhic ; as, ..... *cōrrexīmūs*.  
*Smaller Ionic*, ..... a Pyrrhic and a spondee ; as, ..... *prōpērābānt*.  
*Choriambus*, ..... a choree and an iambus ; as, ..... *tērrificānt*.  
*Antispast*, ..... an iambus and a choree ; as, ..... *ādhusissē*.  
*First epitrit*, ..... an iambus and a spondee ; as, ..... *āmāvērānt*.  
*Second epitrit*, ..... a trochee and a spondee ; as, ..... *cōndītōrēs*.  
*Third epitrit*, ..... a spondee and an iambus ; as, ..... *discōrdīs*.  
*Fourth epitrit*, ..... a spondee and a trochee ; as, ..... *adduxissēs*.  
*First pæon*, ..... a trochee and a Pyrrhic ; as, ..... *tēmpōribūs*.  
*Second pæon*, ..... an iambus and a Pyrrhic ; as, ..... *pōtēntiā*.  
*Third pæon*, ..... a Pyrrhic and a trochee ; as, ..... *animātūs*.  
*Fourth pæon*, ..... a Pyrrhic and an iambus ; as, ..... *cēlērītās*.

Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times ; as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

## METRE.

§ 303. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

A *metre*, or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In *dactylic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic* metre, a measure consists of one foot; in the remainder, of two feet.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, &c.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *senarius*, consisting of six feet; *octonarius*, of eight feet; *monomëter*, consisting of one measure; *dimëter*, of two; *trimëter*, *tetramëter*, *pentamëter*, *hexamëter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, &c.;—and sometimes from other circumstances.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermeter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the species, the second to the number of metres, and the third to the ending; as, the *dactylic trimeter catalectic*.

5. A verse or portion of a verse (measured from the beginning of a line) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called the *trimimëris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called the *penthemimëris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, the *hepthemimëris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, the *ennehemimëris*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALŒPHA.

§ 305. 1. A final vowel or diphthong is cut off in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel. This is called *synalœpha*.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua* ; *Dardanidæ infensi*, *Dardanid' infensi* ; *vento huc*, *vent' uc*. So,

Quidve moror ? si omnes uno ordine habētis Achivos,.... *Virg.*

which is scanned thus—

Quidve moror ? s' omnes un' ordin' habētis Achivos.

The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, are not elided ; as,

*Ō* et de Latīā, *Ō* et de gente Sabīnā. *Ovid.*

But *Ō*, when not elided, is sometimes made short ; as,

Te Corydon *Ō* Alexi ; trahit sua quemque voluptas. *Virg.*

Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case they are commonly made short ; as,

Victor apud rapidūm Simoēta sub *Ilīō* alto. *Virg.*

Anni tempore eo quā *Etesiā* esse feruntur. *Lucr.*

Ter sunt conātī imponere *Peliō* Ossam. *Virg.*

*Glauco* et *Panopēā*, et Inōo Melicertæ. *Id.*

Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision ; as,

Et vera incessu patuit *dēd*. Ille ubi matrem.... *Virg.*

For *synalœpha* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. Final *m*, with the preceding vowel, is cut off when the following word begins with a vowel. This is called *ecthlipsis*. Thus,

*O* curas homīnum, *O* quantum est in rebus inane ! *Pers.*  
which is thus scanned,

*O* curas homīn' *O* quant' est in rebus inane.

*Monstrum horrendum*, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Virg.*  
This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets ; as,

*Corpōrū* officium est quoniam premere omnia deorsum. *Lucr.*

See § 299, 2.

Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant ; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque* ; *omnibu' rebus*. (*Lucr.*) So,

Tum *laterālī* dolor, *certissimū* nunciu' mortis *Lucil*.

For *ecthlipsis* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Two vowels which are usually separated, are sometimes contracted into one syllable. This is called *synæresis*.

Thus, in such case,

*Phæthōn* is pronounced *Phæthōn* ; *alveo, alvo* ; *Orphea, Orpha*. So,

*Aurēā* percussū virgā, versumque venēnis. *Virg.*

*Eosdem* habuit secum, quibus est elata, capillos. *Prop.*

(1.) *Synæresis* is frequent in *ii, idem, iisdem, dii, diis, dein, deinceps, deinde, deest, deerrat, deero, deërit, deesse* ; as,

*Præcipitatur aquis, et aquis nox surgit ab isdem. Ovid.*

*Sint Mæcenates ; non deërent, Flacce, Marones. Mart.*

*Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter ; as, *e* in *anleambulo, anteiŕe, antehac, dehinc, mehercule, &c.*, and *a* in *contraire*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of two vowels often retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short ; as, *abiēte, ariēte, abiēgne, vindemiātor, omnia ; genua, tenuis, pituita, fluviorum, &c.* In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *o* ; as, *abyēte, omn-ya, tenois, pituita, &c.* ; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

In *Statius*, the word *tenuiore* occurs, in which three vowels are united in pronunciation ; thus, *ten-oiō-re*.

(4.) Sometimes, after a *synalæpha*, two vowels suffer *synæresis* ; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called *crasis* ; as, *di, consilî*, for *dii, consilii*.

DIÆRESIS.

2. A syllable is often divided into two syllables. This is called *diæresis*. Thus,

*aulât, Trōia, silûa, suadent* ; for *aulæ, Trōia* or *Troja, silva, suadent*. So,

*Æthereum sensum, atque aurât simplicis ignem. Virg.*

*Et claro silûas cernes Aquilone moveri. Id.*

*Grammatici certant ; et adhuc sub iudice lis est. Hor.*

So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong ; as, *elegeta*, for *legia*.

SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. A syllable which is long by nature or by position, is sometimes shortened. This is called *systole* ; as,

*vidē'n*, for *videsne*, in which *e* is naturally long ; *sati'n*, for *satisne*, in which *i* is long by position ;—*hōdie*, for *hoc die* ; *multimōdis*, for *multis modis*. So,

*Ducere multimōdis voces, et flectere cantus. Lucr.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab, ad, ob, sub, and re*, in compound



words, those prepositions retain their short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *abici, adici, obici, &c.* Thus,

Si quid nostra tuis *adici* vexatio rebus. *Mart.*

In like manner, by rejecting the consonant of the preposition, *aperio, operio, omitto, &c.*, are formed by systole.

(2.) The third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *steterunt, tulerunt, &c.*; but others believe that these irregularities have arisen from the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

#### DIASTOLE.

2. A syllable naturally short, is sometimes lengthened. This is called *diastole*.

It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Priamides, religio, &c.* Thus,

Hanc tibi *Priamides* mitto, *Ledæa*, salutem. *Ovid.*

*Religione* patrum multos servata per annos. *Virg.*

Some editors double the consonant after *re*.

Diastole is sometimes called *ectasis*.

#### SYNAPHEIA.

3. Verses are sometimes connected together so that the first syllable of a verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalæpha, or ecthipsis. See §§ 283 and 305. This is called *synapheia*.

This figure was most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

Præceptis silvas montesque *fugit*

Citus Actæon. *Sen.*

The *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants.

Omnia Mercurio similis vocemque coloremque

Et flavos..... *Virg.*

Dissidens plebi numero beatorum

Eximit virtus. *Hor.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalæpha are combined; in the latter, synapheia and ecthipsis.

By synapheia, the parts of a compound word were sometimes divided between two verses; as,

..... si non offendêret unum-

Quemque poetarum limæ labor et mora.... *Hor.*

**REM.** The poets, also, often make use of some other figures, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis, aphæresis, syncöpe, epenthesis, apocöpe, paragöge, tmesis, antithesis, and metathesis*. See § 322.

#### ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. In pronouncing the syllables of verse, the voice rises and falls alternately at regular intervals. This regular

alternate elevation and depression of the voice is called *rhythm*. The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms sometimes, also, designate the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot : consequently, in a foot composed wholly of long, or of short syllables, considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined. But when another foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, the arsis of the former is determined by that of the latter.

Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable ; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — ∪ ∪, and anapæst, ∪ ∪ —, they are equal ; in the trochee, — ∪, and iambus, ∪ —, they are unequal. This difference in the duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus.

NOTE 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved ; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalæpha and ecthlipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

## CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

*Cæsura* is of three kinds :—1, of the *foot* ; 2, of the *rhythm* ; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. *Cæsura* of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed ; as,

Silves- | trem tenu- | i Mu- | sam medi- | tãris a- | vênã. *Virg.*

2. *Cæsura* of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding line.

Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus* ; as,

Pectori- | būs inhi- | ans spi- | rantia | consūlit | exta. *Virg.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed ; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

REMARK. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter*, or heroic verse, consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee ; as,

At tūbā | terrībī- | lēm sōnī- | tūm prēcūl | ærē cā- | nōrō. *Virg.*

Intōn- | sī crī- | nēs lōn- | gā cēr- | vicē flū- | ēbant. *Tibull.*

Ludērē | quæ vël- | lēm cālā- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ā- | grēstī. *Virg.*

The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic* ; as,

Carā dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs māg- | nūm Jōvīs | Incrē- | mētūm. *Virg.*

In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls ; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees ; as,

Quadrūpe- | dante pu- | trem sōnī- | tu quatit | ungūla | campum. *Virg.*

Illi in- | ter se- | se mag- | nā vi | brachia | tollunt. *Id.*

Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables.

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose ; as,

Romæ | mœnia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis. *Enn.*

4. The *cæsural* pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as *the heroic cæsura*. Thus,

At domus | interi- | or || re- | gâli | splendida | luxu. *Virg.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a *cæsura* in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic ; as,

Infan- | dum re- | gina || ju- | bes reno- | vâre do- | lôrem. *Virg.*

Inde to- | ro pater | *Ænê-* | as || sic | orsus ab | alto. *Id.*

When the *cæsural* pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot ; as,

Prima te- | net, || plau- | sâque vo- | lat || fremi- | tâque se- | cundo. *Virg.*

6. The *cæsura* after the third foot was least approved ; as,

Cui non | dictus Hy- | las puer || et La- | tonia | Delos. *Virg.*

The *cæsural* pause between the fourth and fifth feet is termed the *bucolic cæsura*.

NOTE 1. The *cæsura* after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine cæsura* ; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes.

NOTE 2. In the principal *cæsura* of the verse, poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to, in order to determine the place of the *cæsural* pause. For in the common place for the *cæsura* in the third foot, there is often a *cæsura of the foot* ; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal *cæsura*, and distinguished accordingly ; as,

Belli | ferrâ- | tos pos- | tes, || por- | tasque re- | frâgit. *Hor.*

II. The *Priapæan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth foot, and an amphimacer in the third ; as,

Ô cō- | lōnîâ | quā cūpîs || pōntē | ludērē | lōngō. *Catull.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapæan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each ; as,

Tertia | pars pa- | tri data | pars data | tertia | patri. *Catull.*

See above, 6.

§ 311. III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees,

followed by a long syllable ; the last of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable ; as,

Nata- | rē sēquī- | tūr || sēmīnā | quisquē sū- | æ. *Prop.*  
Carmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs || tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | īs. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee ; the third is always a spondee ; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts ; as,

Nata- | rē sēquī- | tūr || sēm- | īnā quīs- | quē sūæ.  
Carmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs || tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēīs.

2. The cæsure, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penhemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac verse*. Thus,

Flebīlis indignos, Elegeṛa, solve capillos.  
Ah nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit ! *Ovid.*

§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl ; as,

Garrulā | pār rā- | mōs āvīs | ōbstrēpīt. *Sen.*

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter ; as,

Ibimūs, | ō sōcī- | ī, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter ; as,

Gratū | Pýrrhā sūb | āntro. *Hor.*

But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian penhemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first two feet are commonly dactyls ; as,

Pulvis ēt | ūmbrā sū- | mus. *Hor.*

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee ; as,

Risīt X- | pollo. *Hor.*

#### ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monometer* consists of two anapæsts ; as,

Ūlulās- | sē cānēs. *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

Phārétrā- | quē grāvēs | dātē sē- | vā fērō.... *Sen.*

The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

## IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. (I. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as/

Phāsē- | lūs il- | lē, || quēm | vidē- | tīs, hūs- | pītēs.... *Catull.*

The cæsure commonly occurs after the fifth semi-foot.

The pure iambic measure was seldom used. To give to this metre greater slowness and dignity, spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places; and in every foot except the last, which was always an iambic, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus; as,

Quō, quō | scēlēs- | tī rūi- | tīs ? aūt | eūr dēx- | tēris.... *Hor.*

Āliti- | būs at- | quē cāni- | būs hōmī- | cida Hēc- | tōrēm..... *Id.*

Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

II. The *scæzon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth; as,

Cūr in | thēa- | trūm, Cātō, | sēvē- | rē vē- | hīstī ?

Ān iđē- | ō tām- | tūm vēm- | ērās | ūt ēx- | īrēs ? *Mart.*

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic trimeter*.

III. The *iambic tetrameter*, or *octonarius*, called also *quadratus*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nunc hīc | dīēs | ālīām | vītām af- | fērt, ālī- | ōs mō- | rēs pōs- | tūlat. *Ter.*

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic*, or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēm- | sē nā- | vīs in | mārī | vēsā- | nīēm- | tē vēm- | to. *Catull.*

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vōcā- | tūs at- | quē nōn | vōcā- | tūs at- | dit. *Hor.*  
Trāhūnt- | quē sic- | cās mäch- | Inēs | cārī- | nas. *Id.*

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Fōrti | sēquē- | mūr pēc- | tōre. *Hor.*  
Canīdī- | ā trāc- | tavīt | dāpēs. *Id.*  
Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmum. *Id.*

The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdē- | gīt ad | vērōs | tīmō- | rēs. *Hor.*

Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nūn | ēbūr | nēque āū- | réum..... *Hor.*

This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ūt tī- | grīs ōr- | bā gnā- | tīs. *Sen.*

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

The first foot is generally a spondee or an anapest; the catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sūpēr al- | tā vēc- | tūs Ā- | tīs || cēlēri | rātē mā- | rīa. *Catull.*

The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

## TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 315. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambs. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* is the most common trochaic metre. It consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the odd places, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the even places, besides the

tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jussûs | est in- | ermîs | Irē : || purûs | Irē | jussûs | est. *Catull.*

Rômû- | læas | ipsâ | fecit || cûm Sâ- | binis | nupti- | as. *Id.*

Dănăi- | dēs, cō- | Itē ; | vēstrās || hīc dī- | es quæ- | rit mǎ- | nūs. *Sen.*

The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

The complete trochaic tetrameter properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalectic tetrameter; as,

Ipsē | summîs | sâxîs | fixûs | aspē- | rîs, ē- | viscē- | râtûs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tē, || scēlē- | rîsquē | purûs. *Hor.*

Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the fifth semi-foot.

NOTE. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows; as,

Labī- | tūr rī- | pā Jōvē | nōn prō- | bānte ux-  
orīûs | amnis. *Hor.*

This occurs only in Catullus and Horace; and it has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—the first a spondee, the second a dactyl, and the three others trochees; as,

Nōn est | vivērē, | sēd vā- | lērē | vitā. *Mart.*

Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not exclusively belong to it.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, but admitting in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ē- | būr nē- | que aūrē- | um. *Hor.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

## CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tu nē | quæsiērîs, | scîrē nēfās | quēm mîhî, quēm | tîbî.... *Hor.*



II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius ; as,

Omne nemus | cum fluvio, | omne canat | profundum. *Claud.*

In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus ; as,

Tē deos ē- | rē, Sybārīa | cur prōpērēs | amandē.... *Hor.*

III. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus ; as,

Mēcē- | nās, ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ūbus. *Hor.*

This form is invariably observed by Horace ; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Mēcē- | nās, ātā- | vīs || ēdītē | rēgībūs.

IV. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus ; as,

Sic tē | divā pōtēns | Cypri.... *Hor.*

The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

When the first foot is a spondee, the other feet are sometimes scanned as dactyls. Thus,

Sic tē | divā pō- | tēns Cypri.

V. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable ; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb ān- | trō. *Hor.*

The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an iambus.

When the first foot is a spondee, this measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius ; as,

Lýdīā dic | pēr ōmnēs. *Hor.*

## IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic* (from the poet Sotades), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and a long syllable into two short ones ; as,

Hās, cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē, | dēdicat cā- | tēnas,  
Saturnē, tī- | bi Zōilūs, | ānnūlōs prī- | ōrēs. *Mart.*

II. The *Ionic a minōre* consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics *a minōre* ; as,

Puēr alēs, | ūbī telās, | ōpērōsē- | quē Mīnērvæ.... Hor.

### COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre consists of a dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.) and an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.) ; as,

Scribēre | vēsīcū- | lōs || āmō- | rē pār- | cūsum | grāvī.... Hor.

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order ; as,

Nīvēs- | quē dē- | ducunt | Jōvēm : || nūc mārē, | nūc silū- | æ. Hor.

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of two iambic feet, and a long catalectic syllable followed by a choriambus, and an iambus ; as,

Vīdēs | ūt al- | tā || stēt nīvē can- | dīdum. Hor.

The first foot is often a spondee.

The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic*, or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 312), followed by three trochees ; as,

Solvītūr | acris hī- | ēms grā- | tā vīcē || vēris | ēt Fā- | vōnī. Hor.

The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter*, or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees ; as,

Lēviā | pārōnū- | ērē | sāxā. Hor.

### COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse.

A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon* ; that which has two kinds, *dicōlon* ; that which has three kinds, *tricōlon*.

When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrōphon* ; when after the third line, *tristrōphon* ; and when after the fourth, *tetrastrōphon*.

The several verses which occur before the poem returns to

the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicolon distrophon*, (see § 320, Syn. 3;) when it contains three, *dicolon tristrophon*, (Auson. Profess. 21;) when four, *dicolon tetrastrophon*, (Syn. 2;) and when five, *dicolon pentaströphon*.

A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricolon tristrophon*, (Syn. 15;) when four, *tricolon tetrastrophon*, (Syn. 1.)

### HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

#### SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, V.); as,

Vides, ut alta stät nivē candīdum  
Sōractē, nec jam sustinēant ōnūs  
Silvæ laborāntes, gelūquē  
Flūminā constitērint acūto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jam sātis tērris nivīs atquē diræ  
Grandinis misit pātēr, et, rūbentē  
Dextērā sacrās jācūlātūs arces,  
Terrūit urbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sic tē Divā pōtēns Cypri,  
Sic fratrēs Hēlēnæ, lucidā sidēra.... (Lib. 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ibis Līburnis intēr altā nāvium,  
Amicē, prōpugnācula. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scriberis Vārīo fūrtīs, et hōstīum  
Victōr, Mæōnī cārminis alitī,  
Quām rēm cūmqū fērōx nāvībūs aut ēquis  
Milēs, tē dūcē, gēssērit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Dianam, tēnērē, dicītē virgīnes : Διαναν  
Intōnsūm, pūēri, dicītē Cynthiūm,  
Latōnamquē sup̄remo  
Dilēctam pēnitūs Jōvi. (Lib. 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,  
Mēcēnas ātavis edītē rēgibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriorē* (§ 312, V.); as,

Laudabunt alii claram Rhōdōn, aut Mitylēnen,  
Aut Ephēsūm, bimārisvē Cōrinthi.... (Lib. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,  
Tu nē quēsieris, scirē nēfās, quē mihī, quē tibi.... (Lib. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Nūx erat, et cōlo fulgebāt lunā sērēno  
Intēr minōrā sidēra. (Epod. 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) alone; as,  
Jam, jam effīcācī dō mādus sciētīæ. (Epod. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

Lydiā, dic, pēr omnes  
Tē Deōs orō, Sybārīn cūr prōpēras āmando.... (Lib. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.); as,

Altērā jam tēritūr bellis civilibūs ætas;  
Sūis et ipsā Rōmā viribūs ruit. (Epod. 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.); as,

Diffugērē nīvēs : rēdēunt jam grāmīnā campis,  
Ārbōribusquē cōmæ. (Lib. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Pettī, nīhil mē, sicūt antēā, jūvat  
Scribērē versiculōs,  
Amōrē pērculsūm grāvi. (Epod. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, I.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.); as,

Horrīdā tēpēstās oclūm cōntraxīt; et imbres  
Nīvēsque dēducunt Jōvem :  
Nunc mārē, nunc silvā.... (Epod. 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Solvitur acris hiems grata vice veris et Favoni,  
Trahuntque siccas machinæ carinas. (Lib. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Non esur neque aureum  
Mæa renidet in domo lacunar. (Lib. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minore* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,

Miserarum est neque amoris dare ludum, neque dulci.... (Lib. 3, 12.)

### § 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.

<i>Æli, vetusto</i> .....No. 1	<i>Ikci, beatis</i> .....No. 1
<i>Æquam memento</i> .....1	<i>Ille et nefasto</i> .....1
<i>Albi, ne doleas</i> .....5	<i>Impios parvæ</i> .....2
<i>Altæra jam teritur</i> .....13	<i>Inclusam Danaën</i> .....5
<i>Angustam, amici</i> .....1	<i>Intactis opulentior</i> .....3
<i>At, O deorum</i> .....4	<i>Intæger vitæ</i> .....2
<i>Audivère, Lyce</i> .....6	<i>Intermissa, Venus, diu</i> .....3
<i>Bacchum in remotis</i> .....1	<i>Jam jam efficaci</i> .....11
<i>Beatus ille</i> .....4	<i>Jam pauca aratro</i> .....1
<i>Cælo supinas</i> .....1	<i>Jam satis terris</i> .....2
<i>Cælo tonantem</i> .....1	<i>Jam veris comites</i> .....5
<i>Cùm tu, Lydia</i> .....3	<i>Justum et tenacem</i> .....1
<i>Cur me querelis</i> .....1	<i>Laudabunt alii</i> .....8
<i>Delicta majorem</i> .....1	<i>Lupis et agnis</i> .....4
<i>Descende cælo</i> .....1	<i>Lydia, dic, per omnes</i> .....12
<i>Dianam, teneræ</i> .....6	<i>Mæcenas atavis</i> .....7
<i>Diffugere nives</i> .....14	<i>Malâ soluta</i> .....4
<i>Dive, quem proles</i> .....2	<i>Martis celebs</i> .....2
<i>Divis orte bonis</i> .....5	<i>Mater sæva Cupidinum</i> .....3
<i>Donarem patris</i> .....7	<i>Mercûri, facunde</i> .....2
<i>Donec gratus eram</i> .....3	<i>Mercûri, nam te</i> .....2
<i>Eheu! fugaces</i> .....1	<i>Miserarum est</i> .....19
<i>Est mihi nonum</i> .....2	<i>Mollis inertia</i> .....10
<i>Et thure et fidibus</i> .....3	<i>Montium custos</i> .....2
<i>Exegi monumentum</i> .....7	<i>Motum ex Metello</i> .....1
<i>Extremum Tanaim</i> .....5	<i>Musis amicus</i> .....1
<i>Faune, nympharum</i> .....2	<i>Natis in usum</i> .....1
<i>Festo quid potius die</i> .....3	<i>Ne forte credas</i> .....1
<i>Herculis ritu</i> .....2	<i>Ne sit ancillæ</i> .....2
<i>Horrida tempestas</i> .....16	<i>Nolis longa feræ</i> .....5
<i>Ibis Liburnis</i> .....4	<i>Nondum subacta</i> .....1

Non ebur neque aureum ... No. 18	Quando repostum ..... No. 4
Non semper imbres ..... 1	Quantum distet ab Inächo ..... 3
Non usitata ..... 1	Quem tu, Melpomäne ..... 3
Non vides, quanto ..... 2	Quem virum aut heröa ..... 2
Nox erat ..... 10	Quid bellicosus ..... 1
Nullam, Vare, sacrä ..... 9	Quid dedicatum ..... 1
Nullus argento ..... 2	Quid fles, Asterie ..... 6
Nunc est bibendum ..... 1	Quid immerentes ..... 4
O crudelis adhuc ..... 9	Quid obseratis ..... 11
O diva, gratum ..... 1	Quid tibi vis ..... 8
O fons Bandusiæ ..... 6	Quis desiderio ..... 5
O matre pulchrä ..... 1	Quis multa gracilis ..... 6
O nata mecum ..... 1	Quo me, Bacche ..... 3
O navis, refèrent ..... 6	Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis ..... 4
O sæpe mecum ..... 1	Rectius vives ..... 2
O Venus, regina ..... 2	Rogare longo ..... 4
Odi profanum ..... 1	Scriberis Vario ..... 5
Otium Divos ..... 2	Septimi, Gades ..... 2
Parcius junctas ..... 2	Sic te Diva potens ..... 3
Parcus Deorum ..... 1	Solvitur acris hiems ..... 17
Parentis olim ..... 4	Te maris et terræ ..... 8
Pastor quum traheret ..... 5	Tu ne quæsiëris ..... 9
Percicos odi, puer ..... 2	Tyrrhena regum ..... 1
Petti, nihil me ..... 15	Ulla si juris ..... 2
Phœbe, silvarumque ..... 2	Uxor pauperis Ibyci ..... 3
Phœbus volentem ..... 1	Velox amœnum ..... 1
Pindarum quisquis ..... 2	Vides, ut alta ..... 1
Poscimus: siquid ..... 2	Vile potabis ..... 2
Quæ cura patrum ..... 1	Vitas hinnuleo ..... 6
Qualem ministrum ..... 1	Vixi puellis ..... 1

## APPENDIX.

## GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

## I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasms*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word ; as, *gnatus*, for *nutus* ; *tetuli*, for *tuli*. Yet these were anciently the customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, '*st*, for *est* ; *rhabōnem*, for *arrhabōnem*.

3. *Epenthesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word ; as, *alituum*, for *altum*.

4. *Syncöpe* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word ; as, *deum*, for *deorum* ; *meum factum*, for *meorum factorum* ; *sæcla*, for *sæcula* ; *flesti*, for *flevisti* ; *repositus*, for *repositus* ; *aspris*, for *aspreis*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one ; as, *cogo*, for *codgo* ; *nil*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragöge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *med*, for *me* ; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocöpe* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word ; as, *men'*, for *mene* ; *Antöni*, for *Antonii*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another ; as, *olli*, for *illi* ; *optimus*, for *optimus* ; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v* ; as, *voltus*, for *vultus* ; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu* ; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word ; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

§ 323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enalläge*, and *hyperbäton*.

1. *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence ; as,

*Aiunt*, sc. *homines*. *Darius Hystaspis*, sc. *filius*. *Cano*, sc. *ego*. *Quid multa* ? sc. *dicam*.

*Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, *prolepsis*, and *synecdöche*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of a conjunction; as, *abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, sc. *et*. Cic.

(2.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns, or two infinitives, to a verb, which is applicable only to one of them; as, *Pacem an bellum gerens* (Sall.), where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fugâ versabimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

*Nego* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Negant Cæsarem mansurum, postulâtque interposita esse, for dicuntque postulata....* Cic.

When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*; as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algâ est*. Hor. *Caper tibi salvus et hædi*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candida esses*. Id.

(3.) *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, *Attoniti novitate parent* Baucis, *timidusque* Philémon. Ovid. *Procumbit uterque pronus humi*, i. e. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Id.—*Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum fratre adesse jussimus*. Id.—*Projectisque amictulo et littëris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R.E.M. 2, and 209, R.E.M. 12, (3,) and (7.)

*Zeugma*, in the latter sense above mentioned, is by some included under *syllepsis*.

(4.) *Prolepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam ciebant, ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Romanis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Boni quoniam convenimus umbo, tu calamos inflare, ego dicere versus*. Virg.

(5.) *Synecdöche* is the use of an accusative of the part affected, instead of an ablative; as, *Expleri mentem nequit*. Virg. See § 234, II.

2. *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locuta est*. Virg. *Qui magis verè vincere quàm diu imperdre malit*. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic.

Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendiädys*, and *periphrasis*.

(1.) *Pare'con* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egömet, agëdum, fortussean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Polysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Undâ Eurusque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendiädys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Patëris libâmus et auro*, for *aureis patëris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri subëre clausam*, for *libro subëris*. Id.

(4.) *Periphrasis* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tenëri fetus ovium*, i. e. *agni*. Virg.

3. *Enalläge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.



Enallage includes *antimeria*, *heterosis*, *antiptosis*, *synesis*, and *anacoluthon*.

(1.) *Antimeria* is the use of one part of speech for another; as, *Nostrum istud vivere triste*, for *nostra vita*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjugium videbit?* for *conjugem*. Virg. *Placitam paci nutritor olivam*, for *nutrito*. Id.

(2.) *Heterosis* is the use of one form of a noun, pronoun, verb, &c., for another; as, *Ego quoque una pereo*, quod *mihi* est carius, for *qui mihi sum carior*. Ter. *Romanus praelio victor*, for *Romani victores*. Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla*, *corda*, *ora*, &c. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat*, for *sustulisset*. Hor.

(3.) *Antiptosis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognomen Iulo*, for *Iulus*. Virg. *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxorem*. Hor.

(4.) *Synesis*, or *synthesis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Subeunt Tegæa juvenus auxilio tardi*. Stat. *Concursus populi mirantium quid rei est*. Liv. *Pars in crucem acti*. Sall. *Ubi illic est scelus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui sum natu maximus*. Id.

(5.) *Anacoluthon* is when the latter part of a sentence does not agree in construction with the former; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus labor, omne quod est interea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*.

4. *Hyperbaton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

Hyperbaton includes *anastrophe*, *hysteron protëron*, *hypallage*, *synchysis*, *tnesis*, and *parenthesis*.

(1.) *Anastrophe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et remos, for per transtra*. Virg. *Collo dare brachia circum*, for *circumdare*. Id. *Nox erit una super*, for *supererit*. Ovid. *Et facit are*, for *arefacit*. Lucr.

(2.) *Hysteron protëron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriämur, et in media arma ruämus*. Virg. *Valeat atque vivit*. Ter.

(3.) *Hypallage* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas corpöra*, for *corpöra mutata in novas formas*. Ovid. *Dare classibus Austros*, for *dare classes Austris*. Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis*, is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali, mediis quæ in fluctibus, aras*, for *quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus, Itali vocant aras*. Virg.

(5.) *Tnesis* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta triöni gens*, for *septentriöni*. Virg. *Quæ me cunque vocant terræ*. Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, gratum feceris*. Cic.

(6.) *Parenthesis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence which interrupt the natural connection; as, *Tityre dum redeo, (brevis est via,) pasce capellas*. Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hel-lenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulat*,

for *aule*; *senāti*, for *senātūs*; *fuat*, for *sit*; *prohibesso*, for *prohibuēro*; *impetrassere*, for *impetraturum esse*; *furter*, for *furi*; *nenu*, for *non*; *endo*, for *in*;—*Opēram abulitur*, for *opēra*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Helēne*, for *Helēna*; *Antiphon*, for *Antiphō*; *aurās* (gen.), for *auræ*; *Pallādos*, *Pallādu*, for *Pallādīs*, *Pallādem*; *Troāsin*, *Troādas*, for *Troādibus*, *Troādes*;—*Abstinetō irarum*. Hor. *Tempus desistere pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope*.

1. A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas aurea*, The golden age. Ovid.

*Catachrēsis* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir gregis ipse caper*. Virg. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections, &c.; as, *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Virg. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit patēram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina corōnant*, i. e. *patēram*. Id. *Necte ternos colōres*, i. e. *tria fila diversi colōris*. Id. *Cedant arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcula mitescent*, i. e. *homīnes in sæculis*. Virg. *Vivat Pacuvius vel Nestora totum*. Juv.

3. *Synecdōche* is putting a genus for a species, a whole for a part, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; as, *Mortales*, for *homīnes*. Virg. *Fontem ferebant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *domus*. Id. *Armato milite complent*, for *armatis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gladius*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve, bone vir, curāsti probè*. Ter. *Egregiam verò laudem, et spolia ampla refertis, tuque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hyperbōle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse ardeus, altāque pulsat sidēra*. Virg. *Ociō Euro*. Id.

6. *Metalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, this for *æstātes*, and this for *annos*.

7. *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *Claudite jam rivos, pueri: sat prata bibērunt*. Virg. *O navis, referent in mare te novi fluctus*. Hor.

An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*.

8. *Antonomasia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subitō, qui modō Cræsus erat*, for *pauper* and *dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*. Hor.

### Enalläge and *anacol*

(1.) *Anti*  
*istud* *vivē*  
*videbit?* &

(2.) /  
another  
carior  
word  
cord  
tuli

97  
3

308 APPENDIX.—TROPES AND FIGURES.—  
mode of expressing something by denying the contrary;  
i. e., *Non inanis verba*. Virg.  
—The opposite to its proper meaning;

10. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsari*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Nerōnem? Sustulit hic matrem, sustulit matrem*. Cicero's famous saying, *Incidendum est, si curētur ne quid insit amari*. Cic.

13. *Anaphora*, or *epanaphora*, is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilia, nihil timor populi, &c.* Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, solo in litore sacum, te, veniente die, te, decedente, canebat.* Virg.

14. *Epistrophe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pænos populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit.* Cic.

*Chiasmus* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end of successive clauses; as, *Quisquis seipsum, quærit, non seipsum, sed patriam, quærit.* Cic.

15. *Symplōce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus: Quis majorem populi partem suffragiis privavit? Rullus: Quis comitiis praeiit? Idem Rullus. Cic.*

16. *Epanalepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after a parenthesis. Virg. Geor. II. 4—7.

17. *Anadiplōsis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Hic tamen vivit: Vivit? imo verò, etiam in senatū venit.* Cic. This is sometimes called *epanastrōphe*.

18. *Epanadiplosis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.* Juv.

19. *Epanādos* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crudelis mater magis, an puer imprōbus ille? Imprōbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque, mater.* Virg.

20. *Epizeuris* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis*. Cic. *Ah Corydon, Corydon, quae te dementia cepit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is when each successive clause of a sentence begins with the conclusion of the preceding, the sense being thus *gradually* amplified: as, *Quæ reliqua spes manet libertatis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod liceat possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est.* Cic.

22. *Incrementum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Facinus est, vinciri civem Romanum; scelus, verberari; prope parricidium, necari, quid dicam in crucem tolli?* Cic. When the sense is gradually heightened, it is called *anabasis*, and when it falls or decreases, *catubdsis*.

23. *Polyptoton* is a repetition of the same word in different cases, genders, numbers, &c.; as, *Jam clypeus clypeis, umbone repellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspidē cuspis.* Stat.

24. *Paregmēnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non potest, quin ejusdem hominis sit, qui imprōbos probet, probos improbare.* Cic.

25. *Paronomasia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnominatio*.

26. *Homæoprophèron*, or *alliteration*, is when several words beginning with the same letter occur in a sentence ; as, *O Tite, tute Tati, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Neu patriæ validas in viscera vertite vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithesis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast ; as, *Hujus orationis difficilius est exitum quàm principium invenire*. Cic. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur ; integritate vitæ Cato*. Sall.

28. *Oxymoron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction ; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Cum tacent, clamant*. Cic.

29. *Synonymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import ; as, *Non feram, non putiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*. Id.

30. *Parabola*, or *simile*, is the comparison of one thing with another ; as, *Repente te, tanquam serpens e latibulis, oculis eminentibus, inflato collo, tumidis cervicibus, intulisti*. Cic.

31. *Erotesis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary ; as, *Creditis avectos hostes ?* Virg. *Heu ! quæ me æquora possunt accipere ?* Id.

32. *Epanorthosis* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead ; as, *Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo : ah ! quid dixi ? me habere ? Imò habui*. Ter.

33. *Aposiopesis* is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind ; as, *Quos ego—sed præstat motos componere fluctus*. Virg.

34. *Prosopopæia*, or *personification*, represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present ; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum Catilina sic agit*. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*. Hor.

35. *Apostrophe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing ; as, *Vi potitur : quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames !* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style :—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody ; as, *rigorbusus*, for *rigidus* or *severus* ; *domminus*, for *dominus* ; *davi*, for *dedi* ; *alterius*, for *alterius*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax ; as, *Venus pulcher ; vos invidemus*.

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity ; as, *murdrum*, a murder ; *constabularius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words ; as, *Jam vos aciem, et prælia, et hostem poscitis*. Sil.

5. *Amphibolia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions ; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Æucidu, Romanos vincere posse*. Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages : thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiorem*, is an Anglicism.

## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING..

## I. OF TIME..

§ 326. 1. The calendar of the Romans agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each; but, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, they had three points from which their days were counted—the *calends*, the *nones*, and the *ides*. The *calends* were always the first day of the month. The *nones* were the fifth, and the *ides* the thirteenth; except in March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* occurred on the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

2. They always counted forwards, from the day whose date was to be determined to the next *calends*, *nones*, or *ides*, and designated the day by its distance from such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *nones*; after the *nones*, so many days before the *ides*; after the *ides*, so many before the *calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto nonas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, sc. *die ante*; the third, *tertio nonas*; the fourth, *pridie nonas*; and the fifth, *nonis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo idus*; the seventh, *septimo idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the *ides* fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigesimo calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*; and so on to the end of the month.

3. The day preceding the *calends*, *nones*, and *ides*, was termed *pridie calendas*, &c., sc. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the *calends*, &c., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the *calends*, &c., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, &c.

4. To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the day, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the *nones* or *ides* fell.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. nonas Januarias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the *nones* fell: this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. idus Aprilis*: the *ides* of April falling upon the 13th, we take 5 from 13, which leaves 8: the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

In reckoning the days before the *calends*, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to add one to the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. cal. Quintiles* is  $(30+1) 31-14=17$ , or the 17th of June.

To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the same method is to be pursued.

Thus, the 22d of December is  $(31+1) 32-21=11$ , i. e. *XI. cal. Jan.*

5. In leap-year, both the 24th and 25th of February were denoted by *sexto calendas Martias* or *Martii*. The latter of these was called *dies bissextus*, and the year itself *annus bissextus*.

The day after the calends, &c., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, &c.

The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood. Before the times of the emperors, July was called *Quintilis*, and August, *Sextilis*. The names *Julius* and *Augustus* were given in honor of the Cæsars.

6. The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	MAR. JUL.	MAY. OCT.	JAN. DEC.	AUG. NOV.	APR. SEPT.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.		Calendæ.		Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. nonas.		IV. nonas.		IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.
3	V. "		III. "		III. "	III. "
4	IV. "		Pridie "		Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "		Nonæ.		Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie "		VIII. idus.		VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.
7	Nonæ.		VII. "		VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. idus.		VI. "		VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "		V. "		V. "	V. "
10	VI. "		IV. "		IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "		III. "		III. "	III. "
12	IV. "		Pridie "		Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "		Idus.		Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie "		XIX. cal.		XVIII. cal.	XVI. cal.
15	Idus.		XVIII. "		XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. cal.		XVII. "		XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "		XVI. "		XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "		XV. "		XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "		XIV. "		XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "		XIII. "		XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "		XII. "		XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "		XI. "		X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "		X. "		IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "		IX. "		VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "		VIII. "		VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "		VII. "		VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "		VI. "		V. "	III. "
28	V. "		V. "		IV. "	Pridie "Mar.
29	IV. "		IV. "		III. "	
30	III. "		III. "		Pridie "	
31	Pridie "		Pridie "			

7. The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, &c., *calendas*, &c., but also *ante diem tertium*, &c., *calendas*, &c.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. cal.*, &c.

The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as,

*Consul Latinus ferias in ante diem tertium idus Sextilis edixit*, The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octobres*. Id. So, *Ad pridie nonas Maias*. Cic.

## II. OF MONEY.

§ 327. 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by Attic *talents*.

2. The *as* was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished in succeeding ages, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a pound. It is divided into twelve parts, called *unciae*.

The names of the several parts are, *uncia*,  $\frac{1}{12}$ ; *sextans*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ ; *quadrans*,  $\frac{1}{48}$ ; *triens*,  $\frac{1}{16}$ ; *quincunx*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ ; *semis*, or *semissis*,  $\frac{1}{12}$ ; *septunx*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ ; *bes*, or *bessis*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ ; *dodrans*,  $\frac{1}{12}$ ; *dextans*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ ; *deunx*,  $\frac{1}{24}$ .

3. The *denarius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *denarius* was equal to sixteen *asses*. Its value is usually estimated at about  $14\frac{1}{2}$  cents of our money.

The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *denarius*, or two *asses* and a half (*semistertius*), and was hence denoted by IIS, or HS. When the *denarius* was worth 16 *asses*, the *sestertius* was worth 4. The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

Half a *denarius* was a *quinarius*; one tenth of a *denarius*, a *libella*.

The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *denarii*, or 100 sesterces.

The talent is variously estimated, from \$860 to \$1020.

4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille*, *millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified a thousand sesterces. Thus they said *quadraginta millia*.

*sestertiūm*, or *quadraginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiūm*, *millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiūm centum*, sc. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *decies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *decies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *decies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquagies sestertia*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

The different combinations were thus distinguished:—HS. X. denoted *decem sestertii*; HS.  $\bar{X}$ , *decem sestertia*; HS.  $\bar{X}$ , *decies sestertiūm*. But this distinction was not always observed.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius Cicerō</i> .	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> .	M', <i>Manius</i> .	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cneus</i> .	Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Decimus</i> .	N., <i>Numerius</i> .	Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .
L., <i>Lucius</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .		Ti., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i>
<hr/>		
A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .	F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F., <i>Marci filius</i> .	Pont. Max., <i>pontifex maximus</i> .
A. U. C., <i>anno urbis conditæ</i> .	Ictus, <i>jurisconsultus</i> .	Pr., <i>prætor</i> .
Cal., or kal., <i>calendæ</i> .	Id., <i>idus</i> .	Proc., <i>proconsul</i> .
Cos., <i>Consul</i> .	Imp., <i>imperator</i> .	Resp., <i>respublica</i> .
Coss., <i>Consules</i> .	J. O. M., <i>Jovi, optimo maximo</i> .	S., <i>salutem, sacrum, or senatus</i> .
D., <i>Divus</i> .	N., <i>nepos</i> .	S. D. P., <i>salutem dicit plurimam</i> .
D. D., <i>dono dedit</i> .	Non., <i>nonæ</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Senatus populusque Romanus</i> .
D. D. D., <i>dat; dicat, dedicat, or dono dicat, dedicat</i> .	P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .	S. C., <i>senatus consultum</i> .
Des., <i>designatus</i> .	Pl., <i>plebis</i> .	Tr., <i>tribunus</i> .
D. M., <i>diis manibus</i> .	Pop., <i>populus</i> .	
Eq. Rom., <i>eques Romanus</i> .	P. R., <i>populus Romanus</i> .	

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c.*, *caput*, chapter; *cf.*, *confer*, compare; *l. c.*, *loco citato*; *l. l.*, *loco laudato*, in the place quoted; *v.*, *versus*, verse.



## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, hardly a vestige remains. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden*, *silver*, *brazen*, and *iron* ages.

2. The golden age is generally reckoned from about the year 514 of the city to the death of Augustus, A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

## WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronicus.	C. Decius Laberius.	Atta.
Lævius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Cassius Hemina.
C. Nævius.	Varro Attacinus.	Fenestella.
Statius Cæcilius.	Titinius.	Claud. Quadrigarius.
Q. Ennius.	L. Pomponius.	us.
M. Pacuvius.	A. Serenus.	Cælius, or Cælius.
L. Accius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Gracchus.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpillius.	Santra.	L. Piso.
L. Afranius.	Cn. Matius.	Valerius Antias.
L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.	Tiro Tullius, and others.
P. Nigidius Figulus.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovanus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
G. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hirtius, or Oppius.
Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicero.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævola.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabinus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

#### WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.	M. Annæus Lucanus.	M. Fabius Quintilianus.
P. Velleius Paterculus.	T. Petronius Arbiter.	Sex. Julius Frontinus.
L. Junius Moderatus Columella.	C. Plinius Secundus.	C. Cornelius Tacitus.
Pomponius Mela.	C. Silius Italicus.	C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus.
A. Persius Flaccus.	C. Valerius Flaccus.	L. Annæus Florus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.	C. Julius Solinus.	C. Suetonius Tranquillus.
M. Annæus Seneca.	D. Junius Juvenalis.	
L. Annæus Seneca.	P. Papinius Statius.	
	M. Valerius Martialis.	

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rufus.	Scribonius Largus.	L. Fenestella.
Valer. Probus.	Sulpitia.	Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

#### WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.	L. Coelius Lactantius.
L. Apuleius.	Ælius Donatus.
Q. Septimius Tertullianus.	C. Vettus Juvencus.
Q. Serenus Sammonicus.	Julius Firmicus.
Censorinus.	Fab. Marius Victorinus.
Thascius Cæcilius Cyprianus.	Sex. Rufus, or Rufus Festus.
T. Julius Calpurnius.	Ammianus Marcellinus.
M. Aurelius Nemesianus.	Vegetius Renatus.
Ælius Spartianus.	Aurel. Theodorus Macrobius.
Julius Capitolinus.	Q. Aurelius Symmachus.
Ælius Lampridius.	D. Magnus Ausonius.
Vulcatius Gallicanus.	Paulinus Nolanus.
Trebellius Pollio.	Sex. Aurelius Victor.
Flavius Vopiscus.	Aurel. Prudentius Clemens.
Cælius Aurelianus.	Cl. Claudianus.
Flavius Eutropius.	Marcellus Empiricus.
Rhemnius Fannius.	Falconia Proba.
Ænobarbatus Afer.	

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

Valerius Maximus.	Minutius Felix.	Fl. Avienus, or Avianus.
Justinus.	Sosipater Charisius.	
Terentianus Maurus.		

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Proculus.	Salvius Julianus.	Sex. Pomponius.
Neratius Priscus.	Caius.	Venuleius Saturninus.
P. Juventius Celsus.	Callistratus.	Ælius Marcianus.
Priscus Jabolenus.	Æmilius Papinianus.	Ælius Gallus, and others.
Domitius Ulpianus.	Julius Paulus.	
Herennius Modestinus.		

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmilianus.	Catalecta Virgilii et Ovidii.	Interpres Darëtis Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretenensis.
Æmilius Macer.	Auctor orationis Salustii in Cic. et Ciceronis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antiquam iret in exsilium</i> .	Scholiastæ Vetères.
Messala Corvinus.		Grammatici Antiqui.
Vibius Sequester.		Rhetores Antiqui.
Julius Obséquens.		Medici Antiqui.
L. Ampelius.		Catalecta Petroniana.
Apicius Cœlius.		Pervigilium Venëris.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.	Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavianum.	Poemata et Epigrammata vetëra a Pithæo collecta.
Probus (auctor Notarum.)	Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisōnem.	Monumentum Ancyrænum.
Fulgentius Planciades Hyginus.	Declamationes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliano, Porcio Latroni, Calpurnio Flacco.	Fasti Consulares.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.		Inscriptiones Vetères.
P. Victor.		
P. Vegetius.		
Auctores Priapeiorum.		

## WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatianus.	Latinus Pacatus.	Arator.
Servius Honoratus.	Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetères.	M. Aurelius Cassiodorus.
D. Hieronimus.		Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
D. Augustinus.	Alcimus Avitus.	Venantius Fortunatus.
Sulpicius Severus.	Manl. Severinus Boëthius.	Isidorus Hispalensis.
Paulus Orosius.	Priscianus.	Anonymus Ravennas.
Cœlius Sedulius.	Nonius Marcellus.	Aldhelmus or Althelmus.
Codex Theodosianus.	Justiniani Institutiones et Codex.	Paulus Diaconus
Martianus Capella.		
Claudianus Mamertus.		
Sidonius Apollinarius.		

# INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the *sections*, and their divisions: *n.* stands for *remark*, *n.* for *note*, and *n.* for *exception*.

*alpha*

**A**, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66; genitive of, 68—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plural, 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 294.

**A**, *ab*, *abs*, how used, 195, R. 2.

Abbreviations, 328.

**Abdico**, construction of, 251, R. 2.

**Ablative**, 37—sing., 3d dec., 82; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113 and 114—plur., 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 84; 4th dec., 89, 5—used adverbially, 192, I., II.—of character, quality, &c., 211, R. 6—after prepositions, 241—of situation, &c., after *sum*, 245, III.—after participles denoting origin, 246—of cause, &c., 247—of agent, 248—of a noun, *with* which, &c., 249; in accordance with which, 249, II.—of accompaniment, 249, III.—denoting *in what respect*, 250—after adjectives of plenty or want, 250—after verbs of abounding, &c., 250—with *facio* and *sum*, 250, R. 3—after verbs of depriving, &c., 251—of price, 252—of time, 253—of place, where, 254; whence, 255—after comparatives, 256—after *alius*, 256, R. 14—of degree of difference, 256, R. 16—absolute, 257; do., without a participle, 257, R. 7; do., with a clause instead of a noun, 257, R. 8.

**Abounding and wanting**, verbs of, with abl., 250—with gen., 220, (3.)

**Abstract nouns**, 26—formation of, 101 and 102.

**Abus**, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.

**Ac si** with subj., 263, 2.

**Acatalectic verse**, 304.

**Accents**, 5.

**Accentuation**, 14.

**Accompaniment**, abl. of, 249, III.

**Accordance**, abl. of, 249, II.

**Accusative**, 37—sing., 3d dec., 79; of Greek nouns, 80—plur., 3d dec., 85—neuter, used adverbially, 192, II., 4, and 205, R. 10—after verbs, 229–234—omitted, 229, R. 4—infinitive instead of, 229, R. 5—of a person, after *misere*, &c., 229, R. 6; after *juvat*, &c., 229, R. 7—after neuter verbs, 232—after compound verbs, 233—after verbal nouns, 233, R.—of part affected, 234, II.—after prepositions, 235—of time and space, 236—of place, 237—after adverbs and interjections, 238—as subject, 239.

**Accusatives**, two, after what verbs, 230—latter of, after passive voice, 234.

**Accusing and acquitting**, verbs of, with gen., 217.

**Acephalous verse**, 304.

**Active voice**, 141.

—verb, 141—object of, 229—two cases after, 229, R. 1—omitted, 229, R. 3.

**Adjectives**, 104–131—classes of, 104—declension of, 105—gen. sing. of, 112, 114—abl. sing. of, 113, 114—nom. and gen. plur. of, 113, 114—irregular, 115, 116—derivation of, 128—verbal, 129—participial, 130—adverbial, 130—prepositional, 130—composition of, 131—how modified, 201, III., R. 2—agreement of, 205—either modifiers or predicates, 205, R. 1—with two or more nouns, 205, R. 2—with a collective noun, 205, R. 3—sing. with a plur. noun, 205, R. 4—dat. of, for acc., 205, R. 6—without a noun, 205, R. 7—with infinitives, clauses, &c., 205, R. 8—with gen. instead of their own case, 205, R. 9, and 212, R. 3—used participatively, gender of, 205, R. 12—instead of adverbs, 205, R. 15—*primus*, *medi*

- us, &c., signification of, 205, R. 17—agreeing with relative instead of antecedent, 206, (7.)—gen. after, 213—gen. or abl. after, 213, R. 5—dat. after, 222—gen. or dat. after, 213, R. 6, and 222, R. 2—of plenty or want, with abl., 250—followed by infin., 270, R. 1—place of, 279, 7.
- Adjective pronouns, 134–139—classes of, 134—agreement of, 205.
- Admonishing, verbs of, with gen., 218.
- Adorning and arraying, verbs of, with abl., 249.
- Adonic verse, 312.
- Adverbial adjectives, 130.
- Adverbs, 190–194—numeral, 119—of place, mutual relation of, 191, R. 1—derivation of, 192—composition of, 193—comparison of, 194—how modified, 201, III. R. 4—used as adjectives, 205, R. 11—with gen., 212, R. 4—with dat., 228, (1.)—with acc., 238—use of, 277—two negatives, force of, 277, R. 3–5—equivalent to phrases, 277, R. 8—of likeness, as connectives, 278, R. 1—place of, 279, 15.
- Ænigma, 324, 7.
- Affection of the mind, verbs denoting, with gen., 220.
- Agent, dative of, 225, II., III.—when wanting, 225, III. R. 1—abl. of, 248.
- Ages of Roman literature, 329.
- Agnominatio, 324, 25.
- Agreement, defined, 203, 6—of adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, 205—of relatives, 206.
- Al, genitive in, 43—quantity of the *a* in, 283, R. 3.
- Alo, 183, 4—its place in a sentence, 279, 6.
- Al, nouns in, abl. of, 82—increment of, 287, E. (A.) 1.
- Alcaic—greater, 318, III.—lesser, 318, IV.
- Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter, 312.
- Alis, aris, attis, adj. in, 128, 2.
- Aliquis, declined, 138—how used, 207, R. 30.
- Alius, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 32—with abl., 256, R. 14.
- Allegory, 324, 7.
- Alliteration, 324, 26.
- Alter, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 32, and 212, R. 2, N. 1.
- Ambo, how declined, 118.
- Amphibolia, 325, 5.
- Amplificatives, nouns, 100, 4—adjectives, 104, and 128, 4.
- Anabasis, 324, 22.
- Anacoluthon, 323, 3, (5.)
- Anacreontic iambic dimeter, 314, IX.
- Anadiplosis, 324, 17.
- Analysis of sentences, 281.
- Anapestic metre, 313, 303—monometer, 313—dimeter, 313.
- Anaphora, 324, 13.
- Anastrophe, 323, 4, (1.)
- Ante diem cal., &c., 326, 7.
- Antanaclasses, 324, 12.
- Antecedent, 136—understood, 206, (3,) (4.)—its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, (3.)—in the case of the relative, 206, (6.)
- Antepenult, 13—quantity of, 292.
- Autquam, by what mood followed, 263, 3.
- Antimeria, 323, 3, (1.)
- Antiphrasis, 324, 10.
- Antiplosis, 323, 3, (3.)
- Antithesis, 322, and 324, 27.
- Antonomasia, 324, 8.
- Apoge, 183, 10.
- Aphaeresis, 322.
- Apocope, 322.
- Apodosis, 261.
- Aposiopesis, 324, 33.
- Apostrophe, 324, 35.
- Appendix, 322–329.
- Apposition, 204—to two or more nouns, 204, R. 5—to nouns connected by cum, 204, R. 5—to proper names of different genders, 204, R. 5—gen. instead of, 204, R. 6—abl. with gen., 204, R. 7—of parts with a whole, 204, R. 10, and 212, R. 2, N. 5—nouns in, place of, 279, 9.
- Aptotes, 94.
- Ar, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67—gen. of, 70, 71—abl. of, 82—increment of, 287, E. (A.) 1.
- Archaism, 323, R. (1.)
- Archilochian, penthemimeris, 312—iambic trimeter, 314, V.—do. dimeter, 314, VII.—heptameter, 318, IV.
- Arium, nouns in, 100, 8.
- Arius, adj. in, 128, 3.
- Arrangement of words, 279—of clauses, 280.
- Arsis and thesis, 308.
- As, genitives in, 43—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 62; gen. of, 72—and amus, adj. in, 128, 6—final, quantity of, 300.
- As, Roman, value of, 327—how divided, 327.
- Asclepiadic tetrameter, 316, III.
- Asking, demanding, and teaching, verbs of, two acc. after, 231.
- Assuesco, with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, II., R. 1.
- Asyndeton, 323, 1, (1.)
- Attraction, 206, (6.)
- Audeo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2.

*Audiens*, construction of, 222, n. 1.  
*Aureus*, value of, 327, 3.  
*Ausim*, 183, n. 1.  
 Authority, quantity determined by, 232, 4.  
*Av* and *atu*, in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 164.  
*Ave*, 183, 8.  
*Ar*, adj. in, 129, 6—verbals in, with gen., 213, n. 1.

## B. E T O

*B* final, quantity of, 299.  
 Barbarism, 325, 1.  
*Belli*, construction of, 221, n. 3.  
*Bitis*, adjectives in, 129, 3—with dative, 222.  
*Bos*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, and 286, 5.  
 Brachycatalectic verse, 304.  
 Brazen age, 329, 4.  
 Bucolic cæsura, 310, 6.  
*Bundus*, adjectives in, 129, 1—with acc., 233, n.

## C.

*C*, sound of, 10—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70—final, quantity of, 299.  
 Cæsura, 309—different kinds of, 309—in hexameter verse, 310, 3—6—in pentameter verse, 311, 2—in iambic verse, 314, I. and X.—in trochaic verse, 315, I.—in choriambic verse, 316, III.  
 Cæsural pause, 309, 3.  
 Calends, 326.  
 Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.  
 Cases of nouns, 36 and 37.  
 Catabasis, 324, 22.  
 Catachræsis, 324, 1.  
 Catalectic verse, 304.  
 Cause, abl. of, 247—acc. of with prepositions, 247, n. 1.  
*Ce* and *cine*, enclitic, 134, n. 4.  
*Cedo*, 183, 11.  
*Celo*, with two accusatives, 231.  
*Ceu*, with subjunctive, 263, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, n. 6.  
 Choliambus, 314, II.  
 Choriambic, metre, 316 and 303—pentameter, 316, I.—tetrameter, 316, II.—trimeter, 316, IV.—trimeter catalectic, 316, V.—dimeter, 316, VI.  
*Clam*, government of, 235, (5.)  
 Clause, as a logical subject, 201, IV.  
 Clauses, 203—how connected, 203, 4, and 278, n. 3—arrangement of, 280.  
 Climax, 324, 21.

*Coepi*, 183, 2.  
 Collective nouns, 26—number of their verbs, 209, n. 11.  
 Common, nouns, 26—gender, 30—syllable, 282, 2.  
 Comparative degree, 123—formation of, 124.  
 Comparatives, declined, 110—with gen., 212, n. 2—denoting one of two, 218, n. 2, n. 1—with abl. 256.  
 Comparison, of adjectives, 122—127—termination, 124—of adverbs, 194—irregular, 125—defective, 126—by *magis* and *maxime*, 127.  
 Composition, of nouns, 103—of adj., 131—of verbs, 183—of adverbs, 193.  
 Compound, subject, 201—predicate, 202, II.—sentence, 203—metres, 318.  
 Compound words, how divided, 23—quantity of, 285.  
*Con*, adjectives compounded with, with gen., 222—verbs do., with dat., 224.  
 Concretes, 101, 2.  
 Condemning and convicting, verbs of, with gen., 217.  
*Confido*, with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, n. 1.  
*Confiti*, 183, 12, and 180, n.  
 Conjugation, 149—first, 155 and 156—second, 157—third, 158 and 159—fourth, 160—of deponent verbs, 161—periphrastic, 162—general rules of, 163—third, list of verbs in, 172—of irregular verbs, 178—182—of defective verbs, 183—of impersonal verbs, 184.  
 Conjugations, how characterized, 149—remarks on, 162.  
 Conjunctions, 198—classes of, 198—enclitic, 198, n. 2—copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; may connect different moods, 278, n. 4 and 5; repeated, 278, n. 7.  
 Connection, of tenses, 258—of words by conjunctions, 278—of clauses by do., 278, n. 3.  
 Connecting vowel, 150, 5—omitted in 2d root, 163, 2.  
 Connectives, place of, 279, 3.  
 Consonants, sounds of, 10—12.  
*Consto*, with abl., 245, II.  
*Contentus*, with abl., 244.  
 Contracted syllables, quantity of, 203, III.  
 Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 163, 7.  
 Copula, 140.  
 Crasis, 306, (5,) and 322.  
 Crime, gen. of, after verbs, 217.  
*Cujus*, how declined, 139.  
*Cujus*, how declined, 187, n. 5.  
*Cum* annexed to abl., 153, n. 4, and 186, n. 1.

*Cum*, by what mood followed, 263, 5.  
*Cundus*, adjectives in, 129, 1.  
*Cunque*, its force, 191, R. 4.

## ΔΕΛΤΑ

*D* final, quantity of, 299.  
 Dactylic, metre, 310 and 303—trimeter, 312—dimeter, 312.  
 Dactylico-iambic metre, 318, I.  
 Dactylico-trochaic, heptameter, 318, IV.  
   —tetrameter, 318, V.  
 Dative, 37—sing., 3d dec., 79—plural, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 84; 4th dec., 89, 5—used for gen., 211, R. 5—after adjectives, 222—different constructions instead of, 222, R. 4 and 6—after *idem*, 222, R. 7—after verbs, 223—227—after verbs compounded, with *ad*, *ante*, &c., 224; with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*, 224, R. 1 and 2; with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, 225—of the agent, 225, II. III.—of the possessor after *est*, 226—after particles, 228.  
 Datives, two, after *sum*, &c., 227.  
 Declension, of nouns, 38—40—rules of, 40—first, 41—45; exc. in, 43—second, 46—54; exc. in, 52—third, 55—86; exc. in, 68—85—fourth, 87—89; exc. in, 89; formed by contraction, 89—fifth, 90; exc. in, 90—of adjectives, first and second, 105—107; third, 108—111.  
 Declensions, tabular view of, 39.  
 Degrees of comparison, 123.  
 Defective, nouns, 94—96—adjectives, 115—verbs, 183.  
*Defit*, 183, 13, and 180, π.  
*Dem*, enclitic, 134, R. 6.  
 Demonstrative pronouns, 134—construction of, 207—in apposition with a clause, 207, R. 22, and 206, (13,)—used for reflexives, 208, (6,)—place of, 279, 7.  
 Denarius, its value, 327—divisions of, 327.  
 Denominatives, adj., 128—verbs, 187, I.  
 Dependence defined, 203, 8.  
 Dependent clauses, 203.  
 Deponent verbs, 142, R. 4—conjugated, 161—participles of, 162, 17—lists of, 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174; 4th conj., 177—increment of, 289, 3.  
 Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 251.  
 Derivation, of nouns, 100—of adjectives, 128—of verbs, 187—of adverbs, 192.  
 Derivative words, quantity of, 284.  
 Desiderative verbs, 187, II. 3, and 176, π.—quantity of the *u* in, 284, E. 5.  
*Deus* declined, 53.

*Diserēsis*, 306, 2—mark of, 5.  
*Diastole*, 307, 2.  
*Dic*, imperative, 162, 4.  
*Dicolon*, 319.  
*Dicto audiens*, with dat., 222, R. 1.  
 Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256, R. 16.  
*Digne*, with abl., 244.  
*Dignor*, with abl., 245.  
*Dignus, indignus*, &c., with abl., 244—with gen., 244, R. 2—with relative and subjunctive, 264, 9.  
 Diminutive, nouns, 100, 3—adjectives, 104, and 128, 5—verbs, 187, II. 4.  
 Diphthongs, 4—sounds of, 9—quantity of, 283, II.  
 Diptotes, 94.  
*Distich*, 304.  
 Distributive numbers, 119 and 120.  
*Diströphon*, 319.  
*Do*, increment of, 290, E., and 284, E. 4.  
*Domus*, declined, 39—construction of, gen., 221, R. 3; acc., 237, R. 4; abl., 255, R. 1.  
*Donec*, with subjunctive, 263, 4.  
 Double letters, 3.  
 Doubtful gender, 30.  
*Duc*, imperative, 162, 4.  
*Dum*, with subjunctive, 263, 4—and *dummodo* with *do*, 263, 2.  
*Duo* declined, 118.  
*Dus*, participle in, with dat., 225, III.—with acc., 234, R. 2—its signification, 274, 2, R. 8—used for a gerund, 275, II.

## Ε. ΨΙ ΛΟ V

*E*, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66; gen. of, 68; abl. of, 82—adverbs in, 192, II.—and *ex*, how used, 195, R. 2—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 295.  
*Eapae*, &c., 135, R. 3.  
*Eccum, eccillum*, &c., 134, R. 2, and 238, 2.  
*Ecquis*, how declined, 137, R. 3.  
 Ecclipsis, 305, 2.  
*Edo* and *etas*, abstracts in, 101.  
*Edo* (to eat) conjugated, 181.  
*Ego*, declined, 133.  
*Ela*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
 Elegiac verse, 311, 3.  
 Ellipsis, 323. See *Omission*.  
 Emphatic word, place of, in a sentence, 279, 2, and 16.  
 Enallage, 323, 3.  
 Enclitics, in accentuation, 15—conjunctions, 198, R. 2.

- Enehemimétris**, 304, 5.  
**Ensis**, adjectives in, 128, 6.  
**Eo**, conjugated, 182—compounds of, 182, R. 3—with supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 2.  
**Epanadiplosis**, 324, 18.  
**Epanādos**, 324, 19.  
**Epanalepsis**, 324, 16.  
**Epanaphōra**, 324, 13.  
**Epanastrophe**, 324, 17.  
**Epanorthōsis**, 324, 32.  
**Epenthēsis**, 322.  
**Epistrophe**, 324, 14.  
**Epizeuxis**, 324, 20.  
**Epūlor**, with abl., 245, II.  
**Equality**, how denoted, 122.  
**Er**, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 58 and 60; gen. of, 70 and 71—adjectives in, superlative of, 125—annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.  
**Erotēsis**, 324, 31.  
**Es**, nouns in, of 3d dec., increasing in gen., gender of, 58 and 61; gen. of, 73; not increasing in gen., gender of, 62; gen. of, 73—final, sound of, 8, R. 2; quantity of, 300.  
**Est**, with dat. of a possessor, 216.  
**Etum**, nouns in, 100, 7.  
**Etymology**, 24—199.  
**Eu** and *etu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
**Euphemism**, 324, 11.  
**Eus**, adjectives in, 128, 1—Greek proper names in, 283, R. 2.

## F.

- Fac**, 162, 4—with subj. for imperat., 267, R. 3.  
**Facile**, with superlatives, &c., 277, R. 7.  
**Facio**, (and compounds,) passive of, 180—with abl., 250, R. 3—with *ut* and the subj., 273, 1—with participle, 273, 1.  
**Fari**, 183, 6.  
**Faxo** and *faxim*, 162, 8, and 183, R. 1.  
**Feet**, 302—isochronous, 302.  
**Feminine nouns**, of 3d dec., 62; exc. in, 62—65.  
**Fer**, imperative, 162, 4.  
**Fero**, conjugated, 179.  
**Fido**, how conjugated, 142, R. 2—with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, II. R. 1.  
**Figures**, of prosody, 305—307—of orthography and etymology, 322—of syntax, 323—of rhetoric, 324.  
**Filling**, verbs of, with abl., 249—with gen., 220, (3.)  
**Fio**, conjugated, 180—quantity of its *i*, 283, R. 1.

- Follow**, in what sense used, 203, 9.  
**Forem, fore**, 154, 3.  
**Frequentative verbs**, 187, II.—quantity of the *i* in, 284, R. 6.  
**Fretus**, with abl., 244.  
**Fruor**, with abl., 245.  
**Fungor**, with abl., 245.  
**Future tense**, 145, III.  
**Future perfect tense**, 145, VI.

## G. γμμα

- G**, sound of, 10.  
**Galliambus**, 314, X.  
**Gaudeo**, how conjugated, 142, R. 2—with abl., 245, II.—with acc., 245, II., R. 1.  
**Gender**, general rules of, 27—34—natural and grammatical, 27—masc. from signification, 28—fem. from do., 29—common and doubtful, 30—epicene, 33—neuter, 34—of 1st dec., 41; exc. in, 42—of 2d dec., 46; exc. in, 49—of 3d dec., 58, 62, and 66; exc. in, 59—67—of 4th dec., 87; exc. in, 88—of 5th dec., 90; exc. in, 90.  
**Genitive**, 37—sing., 1st dec., exc. in, 43; of adjectives, 3d dec., 112—plur., 1st dec., contracted, 43; 2d dec., do., 53; 3d dec., 83; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113 and 114—after nouns, 211—what relations it denotes, 211, R. 1—subjective and objective, 211, R. 2—of substantive pronouns, 211, R. 3—possessive adjective used for, 211, R. 4—dative used for, 211, R. 5—of character or quality, 211, R. 6—noun limited by, omitted, 211, R. 7; wanting, in the predicate after *sum*, 211, R. 8; in other cases, 211, R. 8, (6.)—omitted, 211, R. 9—how translated, 211, R. 12—after partitives, 212—after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, R. 3—after adverbs, 212, R. 4—after adjectives, 213; different constructions instead of, 213, R. 4—after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, R. 2—after verbs, 214—220—after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214—of crime, 217—after verbs of admonishing, 218—after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220—of place, 221—after particles, 221, II., III.—plur. depending on a gerund, 275, R. 1, (3.)—place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.  
**Genitives**, two, limiting the same noun, 211, R. 10.  
**Gerundives**, how used, 275, II.  
**Gerunds**, 148, 2—by what cases followed, 274—and gerundives, gen. of,



275, R. 1; dat. of, 275, R. 2; acc. of, 275, R. 3; abl. of, 275, R. 4; infin. for, after adj., 275, R. 2, (4.)  
*Glorior*, with abl., 245, III.  
 Glyconic verse, 316, IV.  
 Golden age, 329, 2.  
 Government defined, 203, 7.  
 Grammatical, subject, 201; cases of, 201, IV., 3—predicate, 202—figures, 322.  
 Greek nouns, gender of, 34, R.—1st dec., 44—2d dec., 54—acc. of, in 3d dec., 80—declension of, in do., 86.

### H.

*H*, its nature, 2—in prosody, 283.  
*Habeo*, &c., with perfect participles, 274, 2, R. 4.  
 Hellenism, 323, R. (2.)  
 Hemistich, 304.  
 Hendiädys, 323, 2, (3.)  
 Hephthemimëris, 304, 5.  
 Heroic cæsura, 310, 4 and 5.  
 Heteroclit nouns, 93.  
 Heterogeneous nouns, 92.  
 Heterösis, 323, 3, (2.)  
 Hexamëter verse, 310—Priapean, 310, II.  
 Hiatus, 279, 18.  
*Hic*, declined, 134—and *ille* distinguished, 207, R. 23.  
 Hipponactic, trimëter, 314, II.—tetramëter, 314, IV.  
*Homo* and *homines* omitted, 209, R. 2.  
 Homœoprophëron, 324, 26.  
 Horace, key to the odes of, 321.  
 Horatian metres, 320.  
*Humi*, construction of, 221, R. 3.  
 Hypallage, 323, 4, (3.)  
 Hyperbäton, 323, 4.  
 Hyperbole, 324, 5.  
 Hypercatalectic, or hypermëter verse, 204.  
 Hystëron protëron, 323, 4, (2.)

### I. C T A

*I*, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 68—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 296.  
 Iambic, metre, 314 and 303—trimëter, 314, I.; catalectic, 314, V.—tetramëter, 314, III.; catalectic, 314, IV.—dimëter, 314, VI.; hypermëter, 314, VII.; acephalous, 314, VIII.; catalectic, 314, IX.  
 Iambico-dactylic metre, 318, II.

*Ibam*, *ibar*, *ido*, *idor*, 162, 2.  
*Icius*, *icus*, *ilis*, and *ius*, adjectives in, 128, 2.  
*Icius* or *itius*, verbal adjectives in, 129, 5.  
*Ictus*, 308, 3.  
*Idem*, declined, 134, R. 6—how used, 207, R. 27—with dative, 222, R. 7—how otherwise construed, 222, R. 7.  
 Ides, 326.  
 Idiotism, 325, 6.  
*Idus*, adjectives in, 129, 2.  
*Ies*, adverbs in, 192, II., 3.  
*It*, in gen., contracted, 52.  
*Ille*, nouns in, 100, 9.  
*Illis*, adjectives in, 129, 4.  
*Ille*, declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 24—with *hic*, 207, R. 23.  
*Illic*, how declined, 134, R. 3.  
*Im*, in pres. subj., 162, 1—adverbs in, 192, I. and II.  
*Imonium*, nouns in, 100, 6—and *imonia*, verbs in, 102, 3.  
 Imperative, 143, 3—its time, 145, R. 3—how used, 267.  
 Imperfect tense, 145, II.  
 Impersonal verbs, 184—list of in 2d conj., 169—their construction, 209, R. 3.  
*In*, government of, 235, (2.)  
 Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2—list of, 173.  
 Increment, of nouns, 286; sing. num., 287; plur. num., 288—of verbs, 289.  
 Incrementum, 324, 22.  
 Indeclinable, nouns, 94—adjectives, 115, 3.  
 Indefinite, adjectives, 104—pronouns, 138—adverbs, 191, R. 4.  
 Independent clauses, 203.  
 Indicative mood, 143, 1—its tenses, 145—how used, 259—its tenses used one for another, 259.  
 Indirect questions, subj. in, 265.  
*Induo* and *exuo*, construction of, in pass., 234; in act., 251, R. 2.  
 Inferiority, how denoted, 122.  
 Infinitive, 143, 4—its tenses, 145, R. 4—as a logical subject, 201, IV.—how modified, 202, III.—with subject-nom., 209, R. 5—for gen., 213, R. 4—its subject, 239—construction and meaning of its tenses, 268—subject of a verb, 269—depending on a verb, 270; on an adjective or noun, 270, R. 1—omitted, 270, R. 3—without a subject, after what verbs used, 271—with a subject, after what verbs used, 272 and 273—how translated, 272, R. 3—used like a noun, 273, R.—its place, 279, 11.  
*Infit*, 183, 14, and 180, R.  
 Inflection, 25.  
*Inquam*, 183, 5—its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

**Instrument**, abl. of, 247.

**Intensive**, pronouns, 135—verbs, 187, II. 5.

**Interdico**, construction of, 251, R. 2.

**Interest**. See *Refert*.

**Interjections**, 199—with nom., 209, R.

13—with dat., 228, (3.)—with acc., 238,

2—with voc., 240—*O*, *heu*, &c., not elided, 305.

**Intermediate clauses**, subj. in, 266.

**Interrogative**, adjectives, 104 and 121—pronouns, 137; when indefinite, 137, R.

**Itus**, adjectives in, 128, 1, 2, and 6.

**Io**, verbals in, 102, 7.

**Ionic**, metre, 317 and 303—a *major*e, 317,

1.—a *minor*e, 317, II.

**Ipse**, declined, 135—how used, 207, R.

28—used reflexively, 208, (4.)—with *inter*, 208, (5.)

**Iri**, with supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 3.

**Iron age**, 329, 4.

**Irony**, 324, 4.

**Irregular**, nouns, 92—adjectives, 115—verbs, 178—182.

**Is**, nouns in, gender of, 62 and 63; gen. of, 74—final, quantity of, 301.

**Is**, declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 26.

**Iste**, how declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 25.

**Istic and illic** declined, 134, R. 3.

**Itas, ia, itia, ities, imonia, itūdo, itus**, and **tus**, abstracts in, 101.

**Iter**, declined, 57—with acc. of place, 237, R. 1—increments of, 286, 2.

**Iter and er**, adverbs in, 192, II. and IV.

**Itus**, adverbs in, 192, I. and II.

**Ium**, verbals in, 102, 2.

— or **itium**, nouns in, 100, 5.

**Ius**, genitives in, how pronounced, 15— in what adjectives found, 107—quantity of *i* in, 283, I., R. 4.

**Io and iu**, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 175.

## J. K. T. Q.

**Jacto**, with abl., 245, II.

**Jubeo**, construction of, 223, R. 2, (2.) and 273, 2.

**Jugum**, quantity of its compounds, 283, IV.

**Jupiter** declined, 85.

**Jusjurandum** declined, 91.

**Juvat**, &c., acc. after, 223, R. 7.

## K. Q. N. R.

**K**, when used, 2.

**Key to the odes of Horace**, 321.

27 \*

## L. a. m. p. d. a.

**L**, nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70—final, quantity of, 299.

**Lætor, gaudeo**, &c., with abl., 245, II.

**Latin grammar**, its divisions, 1.

**Leading clause**, subject and verb, 203, 3.

**Lentus**, adjectives in, 128, 4.

**Letters**, 2—division of, 3—sounds of, 7—numeral, 118, 7.

**Licet**, with subjunctive, 263, 2.

**Liquids**, 3.

**Litotes**, 324, 9.

**Loading**, verbs of, with abl., 249.

**Logical**, subject, 201—predicate, 202.

**Long syllable**, 282, 2.

## M. V.

**M** final, quantity of, 299, 2—elided, 305, 2.

**Malo** conjugated, 178, 3.

**Manner**, adverbs of, 191, III.—abl. of, 247; with prep. 247, R. 3.

**Masculine**, nouns of 3d des., 58; exc. in, 59—61—cæsura, 310, R. 1.

**Materfamilias** declined, 91.

**Means**, abl. of, 247—acc. of, with prep., 247, R. 4.

**Measure or metre**, a, 303.

**Memini**, 183, 3—with gen. or acc. 216.

**Men or mentum**, verbals in, 102, 4.

**Met**, enclitic, 133, R. 2.

**Metalepsis**, 324, 6.

**Metaphor**, 324, 1.

**Metathesis**, 322.

**Metonymy**, 324, 2.

**Metre**, 303—how divided, 303—different kinds of, 310—317.

**Metres**, compound, 318—Horatian, 320.

**Meus**, how declined, 139.

**Militia**, construction of, 221, R. 2.

**Mille**, its use, 118, 6.

**Mino and minor**, in obsolete imperatives, 162, 5.

**Misceo**, with abl., 245, II.

**Miseror, miseresco**, &c., with gen., 215.

**Misereor**, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.

**Modi**, annexed to pronouns, 134, R. 5.

**Modified**, subject, 201, III.; itself modified, 201, III., R. 6—predicate, 202, III.

**Modify or limit**, in what sense used, 201, H., R.

**Modò**, with subjunctive, 263, 2.

**Money**, mode of reckoning, 327.

**Monocölon**, 319.

**Monoptotes**, 94.

**Monosyllables**, in *e*, quantity of, 295, R.

4—in *o*, do, 297, *x*. 1—their place, 279, 8.

Moods, 143.

Motion or tendency, verbs of, their construction, 225, 4, and 237, *r*. 3.

Mutes, 3—and liquids in prosody, 283, IV., *x*. 2.

*Muto*, with abl., 245, II.

## N.

*N*, nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70 and 71—final, quantity of, 299.

Names of persons, order of, 279, 9.

*Nascor*, with abl., 246, *r*. 1.

*Natus*, &c., with abl., 246.

*Ne*, with subj., 262—omitted after *cave*, 262, *r*. 6—after *metuo*, &c., 262, *r*. 7—with subj., denoting a command, &c., 260, *r*. 6—with imperat., 267, *r*. 1—followed by *quidem*, 279, 3.

Negatives, two, their force, 277, *r*. 3-5.

*Nemo*, for *nullus*, 207, *r*. 31.

Neoterism, 325, 3.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, *r*. 3.

*Nequis*, how declined, 138, 2.

Neuter, nouns, 34; of 3d dec., 66; exc. m., 66 and 67—adjectives and adj. pronouns, with gen., 212, *r*. 3; acc. of, with another acc. after active verbs, 231, *r*. 5—verbs, with acc., 232; with abl. of agent, 248, *r*. 2—passive verbs, 142, *r*. 2; participles of, 162, 18.

Neuter, how declined, 107—use of, with gen., 212, *r*. 2, *n*. 1.

Neutral passive verbs, 142, *r*. 3.

*Nitor*, with abl., 245, II.

*Nolo* conjugated, 178, 2.

Nominative, 37—construction of, 209 and 210—after interjections, 209, *r*. 13—plural, 3d dec., 83; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113. See *Subject-nominative* and *Predicate-nominative*.

*Non*, omitted after *non modo*, &c., 277, *r*. 5.

Nones, 326.

*Nostras*, how declined, 139.

*Nostrum* after participles, 212, *r*. 2, *n*. 2.

Nouns, 26-103—proper, common, abstract, and collective, 26—gender of, 27-34—number of, 35—cases of, 36 and 37—declension of, 38-40—of 3d dec., mode of declining, 55—compound, 91—irregular, 92—variable, 92—defective, in case, 94; in number, 95 and 96—differing in meaning in different numbers, 97—redundant, 99—verbal, 102—derivation of, 100-102—composition of, 103—how modified, 201, III., *r*. 1—used as adjectives, 205, *r*. 11.

*Ns*, participials and participles in, construction of, 213, *r*. 1 and 3.

Number, of nouns, 35—of verbs, 146.

Numbers, cardinal, 117 and 118—ordinal, 119 and 120—distributive, 119 and 120.

Numerals—adjectives, 104; classes of, 117; with gen., 212, *r*. 2—letters, 118, 7—adverbs, 119—multiplicative, 121—proportional, 121—temporal, 121—interrogative, 121.

*Nunquid*, how declined, 137, *r*. 3.

## O.

*O*, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, gender of, 58 and 59; gen. of, 69—adverbs in, 192—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 297.

*O! si*, with subjunctive, 263.

Oblique cases, what, 37—their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, with gen. or acc., 216.

Object of an active verb, 229.

Objective genitive, 211, *r*. 2—dative used instead of, 211, *r*. 5.

Octonarius, iambic, 314, III.

*Odi*, 183, 1.

*Oldi*, for *illi*, 134, *r*. 1.

Omission, of *ar* in gen. plur., 1st dec., 43—of *i* in gen. sing., 2d dec., 52—of *e* in voc. sing., 2d dec., 52—of *or* in gen. plur., 2d dec., 53—of *e*, in gen. of nouns in *ter* and *ber*, 71—of connecting vowel, 150, 5—of *n*, &c., *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, in second root, 162, 7—of reduplication in compound verbs, 163, 4, *x*. 1—of pronoun in case of apposition, 204, *r*. 4—of a noun to which an adj. belongs, 205, *r*. 7, and 252, *r*. 3—of the antecedent, 206, (3) and (4)—of *meus*, &c., used reflexively, 207, *r*. 38—of nominative, 209, *r*. 2 and 3—of verb, 209, *r*. 4, and 229, *r*. 3—of a noun limited by gen., 211, *r*. 8—of gen., 211, *r*. 9—of a partitive, 212, *r*. 1, *n*. 3—of subject acc., 239 and 269, *r*. 1—of acc. after an active verb, 229, *r*. 4—of prep. 232, (2), 235, *r*. 5, 241, *r*. 4, and 248, *r*. 3—of voc., 240—of *quidam*, 256—of participle in abl. absolute, 257, *r*. 7—of *ut* with subj., 262, *r*. 4—of *ne* after *cave*, 262, *r*. 6—of *non* after *non modo*, &c., 277, *r*. 6—of conjunctions, 278, *r*. 6—of *j* in composition, 307.

*Opus* and *usus*, with gen. and acc., 211, *r*. 11—with abl., 243—how used, 243, *r*. 2.

- Or**, nouns in, gender of, 58 and 61; genitive of, 70 and 71—verbals in, 102, 1.
- Oratio obliqua**, 266, 1 and 2, and 273, 3—tenses of, 266, 2, R. 4.
- Order**, adverbs of, 191, I.
- Ordinal numbers**, 119 and 120.
- Orism**, verbals in, 102, 8.
- Orthoëpy**, 6-23.
- Orthography**, 2-5.
- Os**, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 58 and 61; gen. of, 75—final, sound of, 8, E. 3; quantity of, 300.
- Osus**, adjectives in, 128, 4.
- Ovat**, 183, 15.
- Oxymōron**, 324, 28
- P. C**
- Parabōla**, 324, 30.
- Paradigms**, of nouns, 1st dec., 41; 2d dec., 46; 3d dec., 57; 4th dec., 87; 5th dec., 90—of adjectives, 1st and 2d dec., 105-107; 3d dec., 108-111—of verbs, *sum*, 153; 1st conj., 155 and 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158 and 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic conj., 162; defective, 183; impersonal, 184.
- Paragōge**, 322.
- Paregmēnon**, 324, 24.
- Pareicon**, 323, 2, (1.)
- Parenthesis**, 323, 4, (6.)
- Paronomasia**, 324, 25.
- Participial adjectives**, 130.
- Participles**, 148, 1—in *us*, how declined, 105—in *ns*, *do*, 111—of neuter verbs, 162, 16—of deponent verbs, 162, 17—of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18—in *rus*, gen. plur. of, 162, 19—compound with *in*, 162, 21—when they become adjectives, 162, 22—how modified, 201, III., R. 3—agreement of, 205; with predicate-nom., instead of subject, 205, R. 5—perfect, denoting origin, with abl., 246—their government, 274—their time, how determined, 274, 2—their various significations, 274, 2 and 3—perfect, with *habeo*, &c., 274, 2, R. 4—for a verbal noun, 274, 2, R. 5—for clauses, 274, 3.
- Particles**, 190.
- Partitive adjectives**, 104.
- Partitives**, with plural verbs, 209, R. 11—gen. after, 212—omitted, 212, R. 2, N. 3—acc. or abl. after, 212, R. 2, N. 4.
- Parts of speech**, 24.
- Passive voice**, 141—with latter of two acc., 234—construction of, 234.
- Patrial**, nouns, 100, 2—adjectives, 104—pronouns, 139.
- Patronymics**, 100—quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.
- Pentameter verse**, 311.
- Pentaptotes**, 94.
- Penthemimēris**, 304, 5.
- Penult**, 13—quantity of, 291; of proper names, 293.
- Perfect tense**, 145, IV.
- Perfects of two syllables**, quantity of, 284, E. 1.
- Period defined**, 280.
- Periphrasis**, 323, 2, (4.)
- Periphrastic conjugations**, 162, 14 and 15.
- Personal terminations of verbs**, 147, 3.
- Personification**, 324, 34.
- Persons of verbs**, 147—with nominatives of different persons, 209, R. 12, (7.)
- Phalæcian verse**, 315, III.
- Pherecratic verse**, 316, V.
- Piget**, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
- Place**, adverbs of, 191, I.—gen. of, 221—acc. of, 237; dat. for, 237, R. 3—where, abl. of, 254—whence, abl. of, 255.
- Plenty or want**, adj. of, with abl., 250.
- Pleonasm**, 323, 2.
- Pluperfect tense**, 145, V.
- Plural nouns used for singulars**, 98.
- Plus declined**, 110.
- Pœnitet**, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
- Polypitōton**, 324, 23.
- Polysyndeton**, 323, 2, (2.)
- Position in prosody**, 283, IV.
- Positive degree**, 123.
- Possessive**, adjectives, 104—pronouns, 139; how used, 207, R. 36; when reflexive, omission of, 207, R. 36; used for subjective and possessive gen., 211, R. 3; *mea*, *tua*, &c., after *refert* and *interest*, 219, R. 1.
- Possum conjugated**, 154, 6.
- Post**, how pronounced, 8, E. 4.
- Potior**, with abl., 245—with gen., 220, (4.)
- Præ in composition**, its quantity, 283, II., E. 1.
- Præditus**, with abl., 244.
- Predicate of a proposition**, 200 and 202.
- Predicate-nominative**, 210—differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, R. 2—after what verbs, 210, R. 3 and 4.
- Predicate-accusative**, 210—dative, 210.
- Prepositional adjectives**, 130.
- Prepositions**, 195-197—in composition, 196; force of, 197; change of, 103, 5—inseparable, 197—with an acc., 195

and 235—with an abl., 195 and 241—with an acc. and abl., 195, and 235, (2)–(5)—how modified, 201, III., R. 5—verbs compounded with, with dative, 224; with acc., 233; with abl., 242—omitted, 232, (2), 235, R. 5, and 241, R. 4—their place, 279, 10—quantity of *di*, *se*, and *red*, 285, R. 2 and 3.

Present tense, 145, I.

Preterite verbs, 183, I.

Priapean verse, 310, II.

Price, ablative of, 252—expressed by *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *minoris*, 252.

*Primus*, *medius*, &c., signification of, 205, R. 17—their place, 279, 7.

*Priusquam*, by what mood followed, 263, 3.

*Pro*, in composition, quantity of, 285, E. 5.

*Procul*, with abl., 241, R. 2.

Prolepsis, 323, I, (4.)

Pronouns, 132–139—simple, 132—neuter with gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1.

Proper nouns, 26.

*Propior* and *proximus*, with acc., 222, R. 5.

Proposition, 200—analysis of, 281.

Prosody, I, and 282–321—figures of, 305–307.

Prosopopœia, 324, 34.

Prosthesis, 322.

*Prosum*, 154, 5.

Protasis and apodosis, 261.

*Pte*, enclitic, 133, R. 2, and 139.

*Pudet*, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.

Punctuation, 5.

Punishment, words denoting, construction of, 217, R. 3.

Purpose denoted, by *ut* with subj., 262—by participles, 274, 2, R. 2, 6 and 7—by infin., 271—by gerund, 275, R. 2—by supine in *um*, 276, II.

Q.

*Quæso*, 183, 7.

Quality, adverbs of, 191, III.

*Quam*, with the superlative, 127—omitted after *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, &c., 256, R. 6 and 7.

*Quamvis*, with the subj., 263, 2.

Quantity, adjectives of, with gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214—adverbs of, with gen., 212, R. 4.

Quantity, marks of, 5—in orthoëpy, 13—in prosody, 282, I—general rules of, 283—special rules of, 284—of penults, 291—of antepenults, 292—of penults

of proper names, 293—of final syllables, 294.

*Quasi*, with subj., 263, 2.

*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, R. 3.

*Qui*, declined, 136—interrogative, 137—person of, 209, R. 6—with subjunctive, 264.

*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, R. 2—how used, 207, R. 29.

*Quidam*, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 33.

*Quidem*, place of, 279, 3.

*Quilibet*, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 34.

*Quin*, with subj., 262 and *ib.*, R. 10.

*Quis*, declined, 137—and *qui*, for *aliquis*, &c., 137, R. (c.)

*Quisnam*, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.

*Quispiam*, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 30.

*Quisquam*, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 31.

*Quisque*, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 35—its place, 279, 14.

*Quisquis* declined, 136, R. 2.

*Quivis*, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 34.

*Quo* and *quominus*, with subjunctive, 262 and *ib.*, R. 9.

*Quoad*, with subj., 263, 4.

*Quod* referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14.)

*Quoque*, place of, 279, 3.

## R. O

*R* final, quantity of, 299.

*Reapse*, 135, R. 3.

*Recordor* and *reminiscor*, with gen. or acc., 216.

Reckoning, Roman mode of, 326 and 327.

Redundant, nouns, 99—adjectives, 116—verbs, 185.

Reduplication, 163, R.—quantity of, 284, E. 2.

*Refert* and *interest*, with gen., 214 and 219—with the adj. pronouns *mea*, &c., 219, R. 1.

Reflexive pronouns, 139, R. 2—how used, 208—for demonstratives, 208, (6)—omitted, 229, R. 3—in oratio obliqua, 266, R. 3.

Relative pronouns, 136.

Relatives, agreement of, 206—omitted, 206, (5)—in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6)—referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9) to a proposition, 206, (13)—agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11)—adjectives,

construction of, 206, (16.)—with subjunctive, 264—their place, 279, 13.  
 Responsives, case of, 204, R. 11.  
*Respublica* declined, 91.  
 Rhetoric, figures of, 324.  
 Rhythm, 308.  
*Rimus* and *ritis*, quantity of, 290, R. (1.) 4.  
 Root of words inflected, 40, 10.  
 Roots of verbs, 150, 1—special, 150, 2—second and third, how formed, 150, 3—first, its derivatives, 151, 1; second, do., 151, 2; third, do., 151, 3—second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164–166; 2d conj., 167–170; 3d conj., 171–174; 4th conj., 175–177—second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.  
*Rus*, how construed, in acc., 237, R. 4—in abl., 254 and 255.  
*Rus*, participle in, its signification, 162, 14, and 274, 2, R. 6.

S. *ly* ma

**S**, sound of, 11—preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62 and 64; gen. of, 77—final, elided, 305, 2.  
*Salve*, 183, 9.  
 Sapphic verse, 315, II.  
*Salago*, with gen., 215, (2.)  
*Satis*, *bene*, and *male*, verbs compounded with, with dat., 225.  
 Scanning, 304, 6.  
 Scazon, 314, II.  
*Se* with *inter*, 208, (5.)  
 Senarius, iambic, 314.  
 Sentences, 203—analysis of, 281.  
 Sentiments of another in dependent clauses, by what mood expressed, 266, 3.  
 Separating, verbs of, with abl. 251.  
*Sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Seastertius*, its value, 327—how denoted, 327—mode of reckoning, 327.  
 Short syllable, 282, 2.  
 Silver age, 329, 3.  
 Simile, 324, 30.  
 Simple, subject; 201, II.—predicate, 202, II.—sentences, 203.  
*Simul*, with abl., 241, R. 2.  
*Siquis*, how declined, 138, 2.  
*Sis*, for *si vis*, 183, R. 3.  
*So* and *sim*, ancient forms of tenses in, 162, 8.  
*Sodes*, for *si audes*, 183, R. 3.  
 Solecism, 325, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107—with relative and subj., 264, 10.

Stodiac verse, 317, I.  
 Space, acc. of, 236.  
 Spondaic, verse, 310—tetrameter, 312.  
 Stanza, 319.  
*Sto*, with abl., 245, II.  
 Strophe, 319.  
*Sub*, in composition, force of, 122—government of, 235, (2.)  
 Subject, of a verb, 140—of a proposition, 200 and 201; modified, 201, III.; its place in a sentence, 279, 2.  
 Subject-nominative, 209—when omitted, 209, R. 1 and 2—when wanting, 209, R. 3—with infinitive, 209, R. 5—two or more with plural verb, 209, R. 12; with sing. verb, 209, R. 12.  
 Subject-accusative, 239—when omitted, 239.  
 Subjective genitive, 211, R. 2—possessive pronoun used for, 211, R. 3.  
 Subjunctive, 143, 2—its tenses, 145, R. 2—how used, 259—its tenses, various uses of, 259—for imperative, 260, R. 6—in conditional clauses, 261—after particles, 262 and 263—after *qui*, 264—in indirect questions, 265—in intermediate clauses, 266—in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2—after what verbs used, 273.  
 Substantive pronouns, 132, 133—as subject-nom., omitted, 209, R. 1—dative of, redundant, 223, R.  
*Subter*, government of, 235, (4.)  
*Sui*, declined, 133—use of, 208.  
*Sultis*, for *si vultis*, 183, R. 3.  
*Sum*, conjugated, 153—compounds of, do., 154, 5 and 6—with a gen. in expressions denoting part, property, duty, &c., 211, R. 8, (3), and 275, R. 1, (5.)—denoting degree of estimation, 214—with two datives, 227—with abl. of situation, 245, III.—with abl. denoting in respect to, 250, R. 3.  
*Super*, government of, 235, (3.)  
 Superiority, how denoted, 123.  
 Superlative degree, 123—formation of, 124—with *quisque*, 207, R. 35—with gen., 212, R. 2, and R. 4, N. 7.  
 Supines, 148, 3—few in number, 162, 11—in *um*, by what cases followed, 276; on what verbs they depend, 276, II.; with *eo*, 276, II., R. 2 and 3—in *u*, with what adjectives used, 276, III.; after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., R. 2—of two syllables, quantity of, 284, R. 1.  
*Suus*, use of, 208—referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7.)—for *hujus*, when a noun is omitted, 208, (7.)—denoting fit, &c., 208.  
 Syllabication, 17–23.

Syllables, quantity of first and middle, 284; of penult, 291; of antepenult, 292; of final, 294.  
 Syllepsis, 323, 1, (3).  
 Symplœce, 324, 15.  
 Synæresis, 306.  
 Synalœpha, 305.  
 Synapheia, 307, 2.  
 Synchysis, 323, 4, (4).  
 Syncope, 322.  
 Synecdoche, 234, II., 323, 1, (5) and 324, 3.  
 Synæsis, or synthæsis, 323, 3, (4).  
 Synonymia, 324, 29.  
 Synopsis of Horatian metres, 320.  
 Syntax, 1, and 200-281.  
 Systole, 307.

## T. G. V.

**T**, sound of, 12—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 78—final, quantity of, 299.  
*Tædet*, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.  
 Talent, value of, 327.  
*Tanquam*, with subj., 263, 2.  
*Tanti, quanti, &c.*, denoting price, 252.  
*Tantum*, with gen. plur. and plural verb, 209, R. 11.  
 Tautology, 325, 4.  
*Te*, enclitic, 133, R. 2.  
 Tenses, 144—connection of, 258—similar and dissimilar, 258, I. and II.—of indicative mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259; used for subj. in apodæsis, 259, R. 4—of subj. mood, their use, 260, I., R. 1, and II., R. 1—in protasis and apodæsis, 261—of infin. mood, use of, 268.  
*Tenus*, with gen., 221, III.—with abl., 241, R. 1—place of, 279, 10.  
 Terminations, of words inflected, 40—of nouns, 1st dec., 41; 2d dec., 46; 3d dec., 55; 4th dec., 87; 5th dec., 90—personal, of verbs, 147, 3—verbal, 150—table of verbal, 152.  
 Tetraméter, *a priore*, 312—*a posteriore*, 312.  
 Tetraptotes, 94.  
 Tetrastrôphon, 319.  
*That*, sign of what moods, 273.  
 Thesis, 303.  
 Time, adverbs of, 191, II.—acc. of, 236—abl. of, 253—expressed by *id*, with a gen., 253, R. 3—mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.  
 Tmesis, 323, 4, (5).  
*Tor* and *trix*, verbals in, 102, 6.  
 Towns, names of, construction of; see *Place*.

Tricolon, 319.  
 Triemimêris, 304, 5.  
 Triméter catalectic, 312, VII.  
 Triptotes, 94.  
 Tristrôphon, 319.  
 Trochaic or feminine cæsura, 310, R. 1.  
 Trochaic, metre, 315 and 303—tetraméter catalectic, 315—diméter catalectic, 315, IV.  
 Tropes, 324.  
*Tu*, declined, 133.  
*Tus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

## U.

**U**, sound of, 7 and 8—in gen. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54—dative in, 89—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 298.  
*U* and *itu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Ubus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.  
*Ullus*, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 31.  
*Ulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
*Um*, adverbs in, 192, II.  
*Undus*, participles in, 162, 20.  
*Unus*, declined, 107—*et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, R. 12—with relative and subj., 264, 10.  
*Unusquisque*, how declined, 133, 4.  
*Ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66 and 67; gen. of, 70 and 71.  
*Ura*, verbals in, 102, 7.  
*Us*, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66 and 67; gen. of, 76—verbals in, 102, 7—final quantity of, 301.  
*Usque*, with acc., 235, R. 3.  
*Usus*; see *Opus*.  
*Ut*, with subjunctive, 262—its correlatives, 262, R. 1—omitted, 262, R. 4—after *metuo*, &c., its meaning, 262, R. 7.  
*Ut si*, with subj., 263, 2.  
*Uter*, how declined, 107—use of with gen., 212, R. 2, R. 1.  
*Utinam* and *uti*, with subj., 263.  
*Utor, fruor, &c.*, with abl., 245—with acc., 245, I., R. 1.

## V.

**V** changed to *u*, 163, 2.  
*Valeo*, with acc., 252, R. 4.  
 Valuing, verbs of, with gen., 214.  
*Vapûlo*, 142, R. 3.  
 Variable nouns, 92.  
*Velut si*, and *velûtî*, with subj., 263, 2.  
*Veneo*, 142, R. 3.

W. D. Lee  
Salem Mass

Yes

April 11<sup>th</sup> 1848

Wm. D.

Wm. D.



